REA: THE LEADER IN CLEP TEST PREP

6th Edition

CLEP* HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES I

EARLY COLONIZATION TO 1877

We The People
insure domestic Tranquility, provide for the common
and our Posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitu
Rhode

EARN COLLEGE CREDIT WITH CLEP

- Online diagnostic pinpoints your strengths & weaknesses
- Comprehensive review with test-taking tips
- 2 full-length practice tests with detailed answers available both online and in the book

*CLEP is a registered trademark of the College Board, which was not involved in the production of, and does not endorse, this product.

REA: THE LEADER IN CLEP TEST PREP

CLEP® HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES I EARLY COLONIZATION TO 1877

Editors of
Research & Education Association

Research & Education Association
Visit our website at: www.rea.com/studycenter

Research & Education Association
61 Ethel Road West
Piscataway, New Jersey 08854
E-mail: info@rea.com

CLEP History of the United States I: Early Colonization to 1877

Copyright © 2013 by Research & Education Association, Inc.
Prior editions copyright © 2004, 2002, 2001, 1998, 1996. All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced in any form without permission of the publisher.

Printed in the United States of America

Library of Congress Control Number 2012933550

eISBN-13: 978-0-7386-7128-4

All trademarks cited in this publication are the property of their respective owners.

LIMIT OF LIABILITY/DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY: Publication of this work is for the purpose of test preparation and related use and subjects as set forth herein. While every effort has been made to achieve a work of high quality, neither Research & Education Association, Inc., nor the authors and other contributors of this work guarantee the accuracy or completeness of or assume any liability in connection with the information and opinions contained herein and in REA's software and/ or online materials. REA and the authors and other contributors shall in no event be liable for any personal injury, property or other damages of any nature whatsoever, whether special, indirect, consequential or compensatory, directly or indirectly resulting from the publication, use or reliance upon this work.

REA® is a registered trademark of
Research & Education Association, Inc.

CLEP® HISTORY OF
THE UNITED STATES I

Access Your Online Exams
by following the instructions
found at the back of this book.

CONTENTS

About Research & Education Association
Acknowledgments

CHAPTER 1
Passing the CLEP History of the United States I Exam
Getting Started
The REA Study Center
An Overview of the Exam
All About the CLEP Program
Options for Military Personnel and Veterans
SSD Accommodations for Candidates with Disabilities
6-Week Study Plan
Test-Taking Tips
The Day of the Exam
Online Diagnostic Test ***www.rea.com/studycenter***

CHAPTER 2
American History Review: 1500–1877
1. The Colonial Period (1500–1763)
2. The American Revolution (1763–1787)
3. The United States Constitution (1787–1789)
4. The New Nation (1789–1824)
5. Jacksonian Democracy and Westward Expansion (1824–1850)
6. Sectional Conflict and the Causes of the Civil War (1850–1860)
7. The Civil War and Reconstruction (1860–1877)

Practice Test 1 **(also available online at** ***www.rea.com/studycenter*****)**
Answer Key
Detailed Explanations of Answers

Practice Test 2 **(also available online at** ***www.rea.com/studycenter*****)**
Answer Key
Detailed Explanations of Answers

Glossary

Index

ABOUT RESEARCH & EDUCATION ASSOCIATION

Founded in 1959, Research & Education Association (REA) is dedicated to publishing the finest and most effective educational materials—including software, study guides, and test preps—for students in middle school, high school, college, graduate school, and beyond.

Today, REA's wide-ranging catalog is a leading resource for teachers, students, and professionals.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We would like to thank Pam Weston, Publisher, for setting the quality standards for production integrity and managing the publication to completion; John Paul Cording, Vice President, Technology, for coordinating the design and development of the REA Study Center; Larry B. Kling, Vice President, Editorial, for his supervision of revisions and overall direction; Diane Goldschmidt and Michael Reynolds, Managing Editors, for coordinating development of this edition; Transcend Creative Services for typesetting this edition; and Weymouth Design and Christine Saul, Senior Graphic Designer, for designing our cover.

CHAPTER 1

Passing the CLEP History of the United States I Exam

CHAPTER 1

PASSING THE CLEP HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES I EXAM

Congratulations! You're joining the millions of people who have discovered the value and educational advantage offered by the College Board's College-Level Examination Program, or CLEP. This test prep covers everything you need to know about the CLEP History of the United States I exam, and will help you earn the college credit you deserve while reducing your tuition costs.

GETTING STARTED

There are many different ways to prepare for a CLEP exam. What's best for you depends on how much time you have to study and how comfortable you are with the subject matter. To score your highest, you need a system that can be customized to fit you: your schedule, your learning style, and your current level of knowledge.

This book, and the online tools in the CLEP package, allow you to create a personalized study plan through three simple steps: assessment of your knowledge, targeted review of exam content, and reinforcement in the areas where you need the most help.

Let's get started and see how this system works.

Test Yourself & Get Feedback	Score reports from your online diagnostic and practice tests give you a fast way to pinpoint what you already know and where you need to spend more time studying.
Review with the Book	Study the topics tested on the CLEP exam. Targeted review chapters cover everything you need to know.
Improve Your Score	Armed with your score reports, you can personalize your study plan. Review the parts of the book where you're weakest and study the answer explanations for the test questions you answered incorrectly.

THE REA STUDY CENTER

The best way to personalize your study plan and focus on your weaknesses is to get feedback on what you know and what you don't know. At the online REA Study Center, you can access two types of assessment: a diagnostic exam and full-length practice exams. Each of these tools provides true-to-format questions and delivers a detailed score report that follows the topics set by the College Board.

Diagnostic Exam

Before you begin your review with the book, take the online diagnostic exam. Use your score report to help evaluate your overall understanding of the subject, so you can focus your study on the topics where you need the most review.

Full-Length Practice Exams

These practice tests give you the most complete picture of your strengths and weaknesses. After you've finished reviewing with the book, test what you've learned by taking the first of the two online practice exams. Review your score report, then go back and study any topics you missed. Take the second practice test to ensure you have mastered the material and are ready for test day.

If you're studying and don't have Internet access, you can take the printed tests in the book. These are the same practice tests offered at the REA Study Center, but without the added benefits of timed testing conditions and diagnostic score reports. Because the actual exam is computer-based, we recommend you take at least one practice test online to simulate test-day conditions.

AN OVERVIEW OF THE EXAM

The CLEP History of the United States I exam consists of 120 multiple-choice questions, each with five possible answer choices, to be answered in 90 minutes.

The exam covers the period of American History from the Spanish and French colonizations to the end of Reconstruction. The primary emphasis of the exam is on the English colonies and the early period of nationhood.

The approximate breakdown of topics is as follows:

35% Political institutions and behavior and public policy

25% Social developments

10% Economic developments

15% Cultural and intellectual developments

15% Diplomacy and international relations

Approximately one-third of the questions focus on the period from 1500 to 1789, while the rest deal with the period from 1790 to 1877.

ALL ABOUT THE CLEP PROGRAM

What is the CLEP?

CLEP is the most widely accepted credit-by-examination program in North America. CLEP exams are available in 33 subjects and test the material commonly required in an introductory-level college course. Examinees can earn from three to twelve credits at more than 2,900 colleges and universities in the U.S. and Canada. For a complete list of the CLEP subject examinations offered, visit the College Board website: *www.collegeboard.org/clep*.

Who takes CLEP exams?

CLEP exams are typically taken by people who have acquired knowledge outside the classroom and who wish to bypass certain college courses and earn college credit. The CLEP program is designed to reward examinees for learning—no matter where or how that knowledge was acquired.

Although most CLEP examinees are adults returning to college, many graduating high school seniors, enrolled college students, military personnel, veterans, and international students take CLEP exams to earn college credit or to demonstrate their ability to perform at the college level. There are no prerequisites, such as age or educational status, for taking CLEP examinations. However, because policies on granting credits vary among colleges, you should contact the particular institution from which you wish to receive CLEP credit.

Who administers the exam?

CLEP exams are developed by the College Board, administered by Educational Testing Service (ETS), and involve the assistance of educators from throughout the United States. The test development process is designed and implemented to ensure that the content and difficulty level of the test are appropriate.

When and where is the exam given?

CLEP exams are administered year-round at more than 1,200 test centers in the United States and can be arranged for candidates abroad on request. To find the test center nearest you and to register for the exam, contact the CLEP Program:

CLEP Services
P.O. Box 6600
Princeton, NJ 08541-6600
Phone: (800) 257–9558 (8 a.m. to 6 p.m. ET)
Fax: (609) 771–7088
Website: *www.collegeboard.org/clep*

OPTIONS FOR MILITARY PERSONNEL AND VETERANS

CLEP exams are available free of charge to eligible military personnel and eligible civilian employees. All the CLEP exams are available at test centers on college campuses and military bases. Contact your Educational Services Officer or Navy College Education Specialist for more information. Visit the DANTES or College Board websites for details about CLEP opportunities for military personnel.

Eligible U.S. veterans can claim reimbursement for CLEP exams and administration fees pursuant to provisions of the Veterans Benefits Improvement Act of 2004. For details on eligibility and submitting a claim for reimbursement, visit the U.S. Department of Veterans Affairs website at *www.gibill.va.gov/pamphlets/testing.htm*.

CLEP can be used in conjunction with the Post-9/11 GI Bill, which applies to veterans returning from the Iraq and Afghanistan theaters of operation. Because the GI Bill provides tuition for up to 36 months, earning college credits with CLEP exams expedites academic progress and degree completion within the funded timeframe.

SSD ACCOMMODATIONS FOR CANDIDATES WITH DISABILITIES

Many test candidates qualify for extra time to take the CLEP exams, but you must make these arrangements in advance. For information, contact:

College Board Services for Students with Disabilities
P.O. Box 6226
Princeton, NJ 08541-6226
Phone: (609) 771–7137 (Monday through Friday, 8 a.m. to 6 p.m. ET)
TTY: (609) 882–4118
Fax: (609) 771–7944
E-mail: ssd@info.collegeboard.org

6-WEEK STUDY PLAN

Although our study plan is designed to be used in the six weeks before your exam, it can be condensed to three weeks by combining each two-week period into one.

Be sure to set aside enough time—at least two hours each day—to study. The more time you spend studying, the more prepared and relaxed you will feel on the day of the exam.

Week	Activity
1	Take the Diagnostic Exam. The score report will identify topics where you need the most review.
2–4	Study the review chapters. Use your diagnostic score report to focus your study.
5	Take Practice Test 1 at the REA Study Center. Review your score report and re-study any topics you missed.
6	Take Practice Test 2 at the REA Study Center to see how much your score has improved. If you still got a few questions wrong, go back to the review and study any topics you may have missed.

TEST-TAKING TIPS

Know the format of the test. CLEP computer-based tests are fixed-length tests. This makes them similar to the paper-and-pencil type of exam because you have the flexibility to go back and review your work in each section.

Learn the test structure, the time allotted for each section of the test, and the directions for each section. By learning this, you will know what is expected of you on test day, and you'll relieve your test anxiety.

Read all the questions—completely. Make sure you understand each question before looking for the right answer. Reread the question if it doesn't make sense.

Annotate the questions. Highlighting the key words in the questions will help you find the right answer choice.

Read all of the answers to a question. Just because you think you found the correct response right away, do not assume that it's the best answer. The last answer choice might be the correct answer.

Work quickly and steadily. You will have 90 minutes to answer 120 questions, so work quickly and steadily. Taking the timed practice tests online will help you learn how to budget your time.

Use the process of elimination. Stumped by a question? Don't make a random guess. Eliminate as many of the answer choices as possible. By eliminating just two answer choices, you give yourself a better chance of getting the item correct, since there will only be three choices left from which to make your guess. Remember, your score is based only on the number of questions you answer correctly.

Don't waste time! Don't spend too much time on any one question. Remember, your time is limited and pacing yourself is very important. Work on the easier questions first. Skip the difficult questions and go back to them if you have the time.

Look for clues to answers in other questions. If you skip a question you don't know the answer to, you might find a clue to the answer elsewhere on the test.

Acquaint yourself with the computer screen. Familiarize yourself with the CLEP computer screen beforehand by logging on to the College Board website. Waiting until test day to see what it looks like in the pretest tutorial risks injecting needless anxiety into your testing experience. Also, familiarizing yourself with the directions and format of the exam will save you valuable time on the day of the actual test.

Be sure that your answer registers before you go to the next item. Look at the screen to see that your mouse-click causes the pointer to darken the proper oval. If your answer doesn't register, you won't get credit for that question.

THE DAY OF THE EXAM

On test day, you should wake up early (after a good night's rest, of course) and have breakfast. Dress comfortably, so you are not distracted by being too hot or too cold while taking the test. (Note that "hoodies" are not allowed.) Arrive at the test center early. This will allow you to collect your thoughts and relax before the test, and it will also spare you the anxiety that comes with being late. As an added incentive, keep in mind that no one will be allowed into the test session after the test has begun.

Before you leave for the test center, make sure you have your admission form and another form of identification, which must contain a recent photograph, your name, and signature (i.e., driver's license, student identification card, or current alien registration card). You will not be admitted to the test center if you do not have proper identification.

You may wear a watch to the test center. However, you may not wear one that makes noise, because it may disturb the other test-takers. No cell phones, dictionaries, textbooks, notebooks, briefcases, or packages will be permitted, and drinking, smoking, and eating are prohibited.

Good luck on the CLEP History of the United States I exam!

CHAPTER 2

American
History Review:
1500–1877

CHAPTER 2

AMERICAN HISTORY REVIEW: 1500–1877

The following American History review covers the period of time from the earliest colonizations in America through 1877, the end of Reconstruction. The review is divided into seven time periods, as follows:

1: **The Colonial Period** (1500–1763)

2: **The American Revolution** (1763–1787)

3: **The United States Constitution** (1787–1789)

4: **The New Nation** (1789–1824)

5: **Jacksonian Democracy and Westward Expansion** (1824–1850)

6: **Sectional Conflict and the Causes of the Civil War** (1850–1860)

7: **The Civil War and Reconstruction** (1860–1877)

By thoroughly studying this course review, you will be well-prepared for the material on the CLEP History of the United States I exam.

1. THE COLONIAL PERIOD (1500–1763)

THE AGE OF EXPLORATION

The Treaty of Tordesillas

Excited by the gold Columbus had brought back from America,* Ferdinand and Isabella, joint monarchs of Spain, sought formal confirmation of their ownership of these new lands. They feared the interference of Portugal, which was at that time a powerful seafaring nation and had been active in overseas exploration. At Spain's urging the pope drew a "Line of Demarcation" 100 leagues west of the Cape Verde Islands dividing the heathen world into two equal parts—that east of the line for Portugal and that west of it for Spain.

Because this line tended to be unduly favorable to Spain, and because Portugal had the stronger navy, the two countries worked out the Treaty of Tordesillas (1494), by which the line was moved farther west. As a result, Brazil eventually became a Portuguese colony, while Spain maintained claims to the rest of the Americas. As other European nations joined the hunt for colonies, they tended to ignore the Treaty of Tordesillas.

The Spanish Conquistadores

To conquer the Americas the Spanish monarchs used their powerful army, led by independent Spanish adventurers known as *conquistadores*. At first the conquistadores confined their attentions to the Caribbean islands, where the

European diseases they unwittingly carried with them devastated the local Indian populations, who had no immunities against such diseases.

After about 1510 the conquistadores turned their attention to the American mainland. In 1513 Vasco Nunez de Balboa crossed the isthmus of Panama and became the first European to see the Pacific Ocean. The same year Juan Ponce de Leon explored Florida in search of gold and a fabled fountain of youth. He found neither but claimed Florida for Spain. In 1519 Hernando (Hernan) Cortes led his dramatic expedition against the Aztecs of Mexico. Aided by the fact that the Indians at first mistook him for a god, and armed with firearms, armor, horses, and (unknown to him) smallpox germs, all previously unknown in America, Cortes destroyed the Aztec empire and won enormous riches. By the 1550s other such fortune seekers had conquered much of South America.

In North America the Spaniards sought in vain for riches. In 1528 Panfilio de Narvaez led a disastrous expedition through the Gulf Coast region from which only four of the original 400 men returned. One of them, Cabeza de Vaca, brought with him a story of seven great cities full of gold (the "Seven Cities of Cibola") somewhere to the north. In response to this, two Spanish expeditions explored the interior of North America. Hernando de Soto led a 600-man expedition (1539–1541) through what is now the southeastern United States, penetrating as far west as Oklahoma and discovering the Mississippi River, on whose banks de Soto was buried. Francisco Vasquez de Coronado led an expedition (1540–1542) from Mexico, north across the Rio Grande and through New Mexico, Arizona, Texas, Oklahoma, and Kansas. Some of Coronado's men were the first Europeans to see the Grand Canyon. While neither expedition discovered rich Indian civilizations to plunder, both increased Europe's knowledge of the interior of North America and asserted Spain's territorial claims to the continent.

New Spain

Spain administered its new holdings as an autocratic, rigidly controlled empire in which everything was to benefit the parent country. Tight control of even mundane matters was carried out by a suffocating bureaucracy run directly from Madrid. Annual treasure fleets carried the riches of the New World to Spain for the furtherance of its military-political goals in Europe.

As population pressures were low in sixteenth-century Spain, only about 200,000 Spaniards came to America during that time. To deal with the consequent labor shortages and as a reward to successful conquistadores, the Spaniards developed a system of large manors or estates (*encomiendas*) with Indian slaves ruthlessly managed for the benefit of the conquistadores. The *encomienda* system was later replaced by the similar but somewhat milder *hacienda* system. As the Indian population died from overwork and European diseases, Spaniards began importing African slaves to supply their labor needs. Society in New Spain was rigidly stratified, with the highest level reserved for natives of Spain (*peninsulares*) and the next for those of Spanish parentage born in the New World (*creoles*). Those of mixed (Mestizo) or Indian blood occupied lower levels.

English and French Beginnings

In 1497 the Italian John Cabot (Giovanni Caboto), sailing under the sponsorship of the king of England in search of a Northwest Passage (a water route to the Orient through or around the North American continent),

became the first European since the Viking voyages more than four centuries earlier to reach the mainland of North America, which he claimed for England.

In 1524 the king of France authorized another Italian, Giovannia da Verrazzano, to undertake a mission similar to Cabot's. Endeavoring to duplicate the achievement of Portugal's Ferdinand Magellan, who had five years earlier found a way around the southern tip of South America, Verrazzano followed the American coast from present-day North Carolina to Maine.

Beginning in 1534, Jacques Cartier, also authorized by the king of France, mounted three expeditions to the area of the St. Lawrence River, which he believed might be the hoped-for Northwest Passage. He explored up the river as far as the site of Montreal, where rapids prevented him—or so he thought—from continuing to China. He claimed the area for France before abandoning his last expedition and returning to France in 1542. France made no further attempts to explore or colonize in America for 65 years.

England showed little interest in America as well during most of the sixteenth century. But when the English finally did begin colonization, commercial capitalism in England had advanced to the point that the English efforts were supported by private rather than government funds, allowing the English colonists to enjoy a greater degree of freedom from government interference.

Partially as a result of the New World rivalries and partially on account of differences between Protestant and Catholic countries, the sixteenth century was a violent time both in Europe and in America. French Protestants, called Huguenots, who attempted to escape persecution in Catholic France by settling in the New World were massacred by the Spaniards. One such incident led the Spaniards, nervous about any possible encroachment on what they considered to be their exclusive holdings in America, to build a fort that became the beginning of a settlement at St. Augustine, Florida, the oldest European settlement in what is now the United States. Spanish priests ventured north from St. Augustine, but no permanent settlements were built in the interior.

French and especially English sea captains made great sport of and considerable profit from plundering the Spaniards of the wealth they had first plundered from the Indians. One of the most successful English captains, Francis Drake, sailed around South America and raided the Spanish settlements on the Pacific coast of Central America before continuing on to California, which he claimed for England and named Nova Albion. Drake then returned to England by sailing around the world. England's Queen Elizabeth, sister and Protestant successor to Mary, had been quietly investing in Drake's highly profitable voyages. On Drake's return from his round-the-world voyage, Elizabeth openly showed her approval.

Angered by this as well as by Elizabeth's support of the Protestant cause in Europe, Spain's King Philip II in 1588 dispatched a mighty fleet, the Spanish Armada, to conquer England. Instead, the Armada was defeated by the English navy and largely destroyed by storms in the North Sea. This victory established England as a great power and moved it a step closer to overseas colonization, although the war with Spain continued until 1604.

Gilbert, Raleigh, and the Roanoke Settlers

English nobleman Sir Humphrey Gilbert believed England should found colonies and find a Northwest Passage. In 1576 he sent English sea captain Martin Frobisher to look for such a passage. Frobisher scouted along the inhospitable northeastern coast of Canada and brought back large amounts of a yellow metal that turned out to be fool's gold. In 1578 Gilbert obtained a charter allowing him to found a colony with his own funds and guaranteeing the prospective colonists all the rights of those born and residing in England, thus setting an important precedent for future colonial charters. His attempts to found a colony in Newfoundland failed, and while pursuing these endeavors he was lost at sea.

With the queen's permission, Gilbert's work was taken up by his half-brother, Sir Walter Raleigh. Raleigh turned his attention to a more southerly portion of the North American coastline, which he named Virginia, in honor of England's unmarried queen. He selected as a site for the first settlement Roanoke Island, just off the coast of present-day North Carolina.

After one abortive attempt, a group of 114 settlers—men, women, and children—were landed in July 1587. Shortly thereafter, Virginia Dare became the first English child born in America. Later that year the expedition's leader, John White, returned to England to secure additional supplies. Delayed by the war with Spain he did not return until 1590, when he found the colony deserted. It is not known what became of the Roanoke settlers. After this failure, Raleigh was forced by financial constraints to abandon his attempts to colonize Virginia. Hampered by unrealistic expectations, inadequate financial resources, and the ongoing war with Spain, English interest in American colonization was submerged for 15 years.

THE BEGINNINGS OF COLONIZATION

Virginia

In the first decade of the 1600s, Englishmen, exhilarated by the recent victory over Spain and influenced by the writings of Richard Hakluyt (who urged American colonization as the way to national greatness and the spread of the gospel), once again undertook to plant colonies.

Two groups of merchants gained charters from James I, Queen Elizabeth's successor. One group of merchants was based in London and received a charter to North America between what are now the Hudson and the Cape Fear rivers. The other was based in Plymouth and was granted the right to colonize in North America from the Potomac to the northern border of present-day Maine. They were called the Virginia Company of London and the Virginia Company of Plymouth, respectively. These were joint-stock companies, which raised their capital by the sale of shares of stock. Companies of this sort had already been used to finance and carry on English trade with Russia, Africa, and the Middle East.

The Plymouth Company, in 1607, attempted to plant a colony in Maine, but after one winter the colonists became discouraged and returned to Britain. Thereafter, the Plymouth Company folded.

The Virginia Company of London, in 1607, sent out an expedition of three ships with 104 men to plant a colony some 40 miles up the James River from Chesapeake Bay. Like the river on which it was located, the new settlement was named Jamestown in honor of England's king. It became the first permanent English settlement in North America, but for a time it appeared to be going the way of the earlier attempts. During the early years of Jamestown,

the majority of the settlers died of starvation, various diseases, or hostile action by Indians. Though the losses were continuously replaced by new settlers, the colony's survival remained in doubt for a number of years.

There were several reasons for these difficulties. The entire colony was owned by the company, and all members shared the profits regardless of how much or how little they worked; thus, there was a lack of incentive. Many of the settlers were gentlemen, who considered themselves too good to work at growing the food the colony needed to survive. Others were simply unambitious and little inclined to work in any case. Furthermore, the settlers had come with the expectation of finding gold or other quick and easy riches and wasted much time looking for these while they should have been providing for their survival.

For purposes of defense, the settlement had been sited on a peninsula formed by a bend in the river; but this low and swampy location proved to be a breeding ground for all sorts of diseases and, at high tide, even contaminated the settlers' drinking supply with sea water. To make matters worse, relations with Powhatan, the powerful local Indian chief, were at best uncertain and often openly hostile, with disastrous results for the colonists.

In 1608 and 1609 the dynamic and ruthless leadership of John Smith kept the colony from collapsing. Smith's rule was, "He who works not, eats not." After Smith returned to England in late 1609, the condition of the colony again became critical.

In 1612, a Virginia resident named John Rolfe discovered that a superior strain of tobacco, native to the West Indies, could be grown in Virginia. There was a large market for this tobacco in Europe, and Rolfe's discovery gave Virginia a major cash crop.

To secure more settlers and boost Virginia's shrinking labor force, the company moved to make immigration possible for Britain's poor who were without economic opportunity at home or financial means to procure transportation to America. This was achieved by means of the indenture system, by which a poor worker's passage to America was paid by an American planter (or the company itself), who in exchange, was indentured to work for the planter (or the company) for a specified number of years. The system was open to abuse and often resulted in the mistreatment of the indentured servants.

To control the workers thus shipped to Virginia, as well as the often lazy and unruly colonists already present, the company gave its governors in America dictatorial powers. Governors such as Lord De La Warr, Sir Thomas Gates, and Sir Thomas Dale made use of such powers, imposing a harsh rule.

For such reasons, and its well-known reputation as a death trap, Virginia continued to attract inadequate numbers of immigrants. To solve this, a reform-minded faction within the company proposed a new approach, and under its leader Edwin Sandys made changes designed to attract more settlers. Colonists were promised the same rights they had in England. A representative assembly, the House of Burgesses, was founded in 1619—the first in America. Additionally, private ownership of land was instituted.

Despite these reforms, Virginia's unhealthy reputation kept many Englishmen away. Large numbers of indentured servants were brought in, especially young, single men. The first Africans were brought to Virginia in 1619 but were treated as indentured servants rather than slaves.

Virginia's Indian relations remained difficult. In 1622 an Indian massacre took the lives of 347 settlers. In 1644 the Indians struck again, massacring some 300 more. Shortly thereafter, the coastal Indians were subdued and no longer presented a serious threat.

Impressed by the potential profits from tobacco growing, King JamesI determined to have Virginia for himself. Using the high mortality and the 1622 massacre as a pretext, in 1624 he revoked the London Company's charter and made Virginia a royal colony. This pattern was followed throughout colonial history; both company colonies and proprietary colonies tended eventually to become royal colonies. Upon taking over Virginia, James revoked all political rights and the representative assembly—he did not believe in such things—but 15 years later his son, Charles I, was forced, by constant pressure from the Virginians and the continuing need to attract more settlers, to restore these rights.

New France

Shortly after England returned to the business of colonization, France renewed its interest in the areas previously visited by such French explorers as Jacques Cartier. The French opened with the Indians a lucrative trade in furs, plentiful in America and much sought after in Europe.

The St. Lawrence River was the French gateway to the interior of North America. In 1608 Samuel de Champlain established a trading post in Quebec, from which the rest of what became New France eventually spread.

Relatively small numbers of Frenchmen came to America, and partially because of this they were generally able to maintain good relations with the Indians. French Canadians were energetic in exploring and claiming new lands for France.

French exploration and settlement spread through the Great Lakes region and the valleys of the Mississippi and Ohio rivers. In 1673 Jacques Marquette explored the Mississippi Valley, and in 1682 Sieur de la Salle followed the river to its mouth. French settlements in the Midwest were not generally real towns, but rather forts and trading posts serving the fur trade.

Throughout its history, New France was handicapped by an inadequate population and a lack of support by the parent country.

New Netherlands

Other countries also took an interest in North America. In 1609 Holland sent an Englishman named Henry Hudson to explore for them in search of a Northwest Passage. In this endeavor Hudson discovered the river that bears his name.

Arrangements were made to trade with the Iroquois Indians for furs, especially beaver pelts for the hats then popular in Europe. In 1624 Dutch trading outposts were established on Manhattan Island (New Amsterdam) and at the site of present-day Albany (Fort Orange). A profitable fur trade was carried on and became the main source of revenue for the Dutch West India Company, the joint-stock company that ran the colony.

To encourage enough farming to keep the colony supplied with food, the Dutch instituted the patroon system, by which large landed estates would be given to wealthy men who transported at least 50 families to New Netherlands. These families would then become tenant farmers on the estate

of the patroon who had transported them. As Holland's home economy was healthy, few Dutch felt desperate enough to take up such unattractive terms.

New Netherlands was, in any case, internally weak and unstable. It was poorly governed by inept and lazy governors; and its population was a mixture of people from all over Europe as well as many African slaves, forming what historians have called an "unstable pluralism."

The Pilgrims at Plymouth

Many Englishmen came from England for religious reasons. For the most part, these fell into two groups, Puritans and Separatists. Though similar in many respects to the Puritans, the Separatists believed the Church of England was beyond saving and so felt they must separate from it.

One group of Separatists, suffering government harassment, fled to Holland. Dissatisfied there, they decided to go to America and thus became the famous Pilgrims.

Led by William Bradford, they departed in 1620, having obtained from the London Company a charter to settle just south of the Hudson River. Driven by storms, their ship, the *Mayflower*, made landfall at Cape Cod in Massachusetts; and they decided it was God's will for them to settle in that area. This, however, put them outside the jurisdiction of any established government; and so before going ashore they drew up and signed the *Mayflower Compact*, establishing a foundation for orderly government based on the consent of the governed. After a difficult first winter that saw many die, the Pilgrims went on to establish a quiet and modestly prosperous colony. After a number of years of hard work, they were able to buy out the investors who had originally financed their voyage and thus gain greater autonomy.

The Massachusetts Bay Colony

The Puritans were far more numerous than the Separatists. Contrary to stereotype, they did not dress in drab clothes and were not ignorant or bigoted. They did, however, take the Bible and their religion seriously and felt the Anglican church still retained too many unscriptural practices left over from Roman Catholicism.

King James I had no use for the Puritans but refrained from bringing on a confrontation with their growing political power. His son, Charles I, determined in 1629 to persecute the Puritans aggressively and to rule without the Puritan-dominated Parliament. This course would lead eventually (ten years later) to civil war, but in the meantime some of the Puritans decided to set up a community in America.

To accomplish their purpose, they sought in 1629 to charter a joint-stock company to be called the Massachusetts Bay Company. Whether because Charles was glad to be rid of the Puritans or because he did not realize the special nature of this joint-stock company, the charter was granted. Further, the charter neglected to specify where the company's headquarters should be located. Taking advantage of this unusual omission, the Puritans determined to make their headquarters in the colony itself, 3,000 miles from meddlesome royal officials.

Under the leadership of John Winthrop, who taught that a new colony should provide the whole world with a model of what a Christian society ought to be, the Puritans carefully organized their venture and, upon arriving

in Massachusetts in 1630, did not undergo the "starving time" that had often plagued other first-year colonies.

The government of Massachusetts developed to include a governor and a representative assembly (called the General Court) selected by the "freemen" —adult male church members. As Massachusetts' population increased (20,000 Puritans had come by 1642 in what came to be called the Great Migration), new towns were chartered, each town being granted a large tract of land by the Massachusetts government. As in European villages, these towns consisted of a number of houses clustered around the church house and the village green. Farmland was located around the outside of the town. In each new town the elect—those who testified of having experienced saving grace—covenanted together as a church.

Rhode Island, Connecticut, and New Hampshire

Puritans saw their colony not as a place to do whatever might strike one's fancy, but as a place to serve God and build His kingdom. Dissidents would only be tolerated insofar as they did not interfere with the colony's mission.

One such dissident was Roger Williams. A Puritan preacher, Williams was received warmly in Massachusetts in 1631; but he had a talent for carrying things to their logical (or sometimes not so logical) extreme. When his activities became disruptive he was asked to leave the colony. To avoid having to return to England—where he would have been even less welcome—he fled to the wilderness around Narragansett Bay, bought land from the Indians, and founded the settlement of Providence (1636), soon populated by his many followers.

Another dissident was Anne Hutchinson, who openly taught things contrary to Puritan doctrine. Called before the General Court to answer for her teachings, she claimed to have had special revelations from God superseding the Bible. This was unthinkable in Puritan theology and led to Hutchinson's banishment from the colony. She also migrated to the area around Narragansett Bay and with her followers founded Portsmouth (1638). She later migrated still farther west and was killed by Indians.

In 1644 Roger Williams secured from Parliament a charter combining Providence, Portsmouth, and other settlements that had sprung up in the area into the colony of Rhode Island. Through Williams' influence the colony granted complete religious toleration. Rhode Island tended to be populated by such exiles and troublemakers as could not find welcome in the other colonies or in Europe. It suffered constant political turmoil.

Connecticut was founded by Puritans who had slight religious disagreements with the leadership of Massachusetts. In 1636 Thomas Hooker led a group of settlers westward to found Hartford. Hooker, though a good friend of Massachusetts Governor John Winthrop, felt he was exercising somewhat more authority than was good. Others also moved into Connecticut from Massachusetts. In 1639 the *Fundamental Orders of Connecticut*, the first written constitution in America, were drawn up, providing for representative government.

In 1637 a group of Puritans led by John Davenport founded the neighboring colony of New Haven. Davenport and his followers felt that Winthrop, far from being too strict, was not being strict enough. In 1662 a new charter combined both New Haven and Connecticut into an officially recognized colony of Connecticut.

New Hampshire's settlement did not involve any disagreement at all among the Puritans. It was simply settled as an overflow from Massachusetts. In 1677 King Charles II chartered the separate royal colony of New Hampshire. It remained economically dependent on Massachusetts.

Maryland

By the 1630s, the English crown was taking a more direct interest in exercising control over the colonies, and therefore turned away from the practice of granting charters to joint-stock companies, and towards granting such charters to single individuals or groups of individuals known as proprietors. The proprietors would actually own the colony and would be directly responsible for it to the king, in an arrangement similar to the feudalism of medieval Europe. Though this was seen as providing more opportunity for royal control and less for autonomy on the part of the colonists, in practice proprietary colonies turned out much like the company colonies because settlers insisted on self-government.

The first proprietary colony was Maryland, granted in 1632 to George Calvert, Lord Baltimore. It was to be located just north of the Potomac River and to be at the same time a reward for Calvert's loyal service to the king as well as a refuge for English Catholics, of which Calvert was one. George Calvert died before the colony could be planted, but the venture was carried forward by his son Cecilius.

From the start more Protestants than Catholics came. To protect the Catholic minority, Calvert approved an Act of Religious Toleration (1649) guaranteeing political rights to Christians of all persuasions. Calvert also allowed a representative assembly. Economically and socially Maryland developed as a virtual carbon copy of neighboring Virginia.

The Carolinas

In 1663 Charles II, having recently been restored to the throne after a 20-year Puritan revolution that had seen his father beheaded, moved to reward eight of the noblemen who had helped him regain the crown by granting them a charter for all the lands lying south of Virginia and north of Spanish Florida.

The new colony was called Carolina, after the king. In hopes of attracting settlers, the proprietors came up with an elaborate plan for a hierarchical, almost feudal, society. Not surprisingly, this proved unworkable, and despite offers of generous land grants to settlers, the Carolinas grew slowly.

The area of North Carolina developed as an overflow from Virginia with similar economic and cultural features. South Carolina was settled by English planters from the island of Barbados, who founded Charles Town (Charleston) in 1670. These planters brought with them their black slaves; thus, unlike the Chesapeake colonies of Virginia and Maryland, South Carolina had slavery as a fully developed institution from the outset. South Carolina eventually found rice to be a staple crop.

New York and New Jersey

Charles II, though immoral and dissolute, was cunning and had an eye for increasing Britain's power. The Dutch colony of New Netherlands, lying between the Chesapeake and the New England colonies, caught his eye as a likely target for British expansion. In 1664 Charles gave his brother, James, Duke of York, title to all the Dutch lands in America, provided James

conquered them first. To do this James sent an invasion fleet under the command of Colonel Richard Nicols. New Amsterdam fell almost without a shot and became New York.

James was adamantly opposed to representative assemblies and ordered that there should be none in New York. To avoid unrest Nicols shrewdly granted as many other civil and political rights as possible; but residents, particularly Puritans who had settled on Long Island, continued to agitate for self-government. Finally, in the 1680s, James relented, only to break his promise when he became king in 1685.

To add to the confusion in the newly renamed colony, James granted a part of his newly acquired domain to John Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret (two of the Carolina proprietors) who named their new proprietorship New Jersey. James neglected to tell Colonel Nicols of this, with the result that both Nicols, on the one hand, and Carteret and Berkeley, on the other, were granting title to the same land—to different settlers. Conflicting claims of land ownership plagued New Jersey for decades, being used by the crown in 1702 as a pretext to take over New Jersey as a royal colony.

THE COLONIAL WORLD

Life in the Colonies

New England grew not only from immigration but also from natural increase during the seventeenth century. The typical New England family had more children than the typical English or Chesapeake family, and more of those children survived to have families of their own. A New Englander could expect to live 15 to 20 years longer than his counterpart in the parent country and 25 to 30 years longer than his fellow colonist in the Chesapeake. Because of the continuity provided by these longer life spans, because the Puritans had migrated as intact family units, and because of the homogeneous nature of the Puritan New England colonies, New England enjoyed a much more stable and well-ordered society than did the Chesapeake colonies.

Puritans placed great importance on the family, which in their society was highly patriarchal. Young people were generally subject to their parents' direction in the matter of when and whom they would marry. Few defied this system, and illegitimate births were rare. Puritans also placed great importance on the ability to read, since they believed everyone should be able to read the Bible, God's word, himself. As a result, New England was ahead of the other colonies educationally and enjoyed extremely wide-spread literacy.

Since New England's climate and soil were unsuited to large-scale farming, the region developed a prosperous economy based on small farming, home industry, fishing, and especially trade and a large shipbuilding industry. Boston became a major international port.

Life in the Chesapeake colonies was drastically different. The typical Chesapeake colonist lived a shorter, less healthy life than his New England counterpart and was survived by fewer children. As a result the Chesapeake's population steadily declined despite a constant influx of settlers. Nor was Chesapeake society as stable as that of New England. Most Chesapeake settlers came as indentured servants; and since planters desired primarily male servants for work in the tobacco fields, men largely outnumbered women in Virginia and Maryland. This hindered the development of family life. The short life spans also contributed to the region's unstable family life as few children reached adulthood without experiencing the death of one or both

parents. Remarriage resulted in households that contained children from several different marriages.

The system of indentured servitude was open to serious abuse, with masters sometimes treating their servants brutally or contriving through some technicality to lengthen their terms of indenture. In any case, 40 percent of Chesapeake region indentured servants failed to survive long enough to gain their freedom.

By the late seventeenth century, life in the Chesapeake was beginning to stabilize, with death rates declining and life expectancies rising. As society stabilized, an elite group of wealthy families such as the Byrds, Carters, Fitzhughs, Lees, and Randolphs, among others, began to dominate the social and political life of the region. Aping the lifestyle of the English country gentry, they built lavish manor houses from which to rule their vast plantations. For every one of these, however, there were many small farmers who worked hard for a living, showed deference to the great planters, and hoped someday they, or their children, might reach that level.

On the bottom rung of Southern society were the black slaves. During the first half of the seventeenth century, blacks in the Chesapeake made up only a small percentage of the population and were treated more or less as indentured servants. In the decades between 1640 and 1670 this gradually changed and blacks came to be seen and treated as life-long chattel slaves whose status would be inherited by their children. Larger numbers of them began to be imported and with this and rapid natural population growth they came by 1750 to compose 30 to 40 percent of the Chesapeake population.

While North Carolina tended to follow Virginia in its economic and social development (although with fewer great planters and more small farmers), South Carolina developed a society even more dominated by large plantations and chattel slavery. By the early decades of the eighteenth century, blacks had come to outnumber whites in that colony. South Carolina's economy remained dependent on the cultivation of its two staple crops, rice and, to a lesser extent, indigo.

Mercantilism and the Navigation Acts

Beginning around 1650, British authorities began to take more interest in regulating American trade for the benefit of the mother country. A key idea that underlay this policy was the concept of mercantilism. Mercantilists believed the world's wealth was sharply limited, and therefore one nation's gain was automatically another nation's loss. Each nation's goal was to export more than it imported (i.e., to have a "favorable balance of trade"). The difference would be made up in gold and silver, which, so the theory ran, would make the nation strong both economically and militarily. To achieve their goals, mercantilists believed economic activity should be regulated by the government. Colonies could fit into England's mercantilist scheme by providing staple crops, such as rice, tobacco, sugar, and indigo, and raw materials, such as timber, that England would otherwise have been forced to import from other countries.

To make the colonies serve this purpose Parliament passed a series of Navigation Acts (1651, 1660, 1663, and 1673). These were the foundation of England's worldwide commercial system and some of the most important pieces of imperial legislation during the colonial period. They were also intended as weapons in England's running struggle against its chief

seventeenth-century maritime rival, Holland. The system created by the Navigation Acts stipulated that trade with the colonies was to be carried on only in ships made in Britain or America and with at least 75 percent British or American crews. Additionally, when certain "enumerated" goods were shipped from an American port, they were to go only to Britain or to another American port. Finally, almost nothing could be imported to the colonies without going through Britain first.

Mercantilism's results were mixed. Though ostensibly for the benefit of all subjects of the British Empire, its provisions benefited some at the expense of others. It boosted the prosperity of New Englanders, who engaged in large-scale shipbuilding (something Britain's mercantilist policy-makers chose to encourage), while it hurt the residents of the Chesapeake by driving down the price of tobacco (an enumerated item). On the whole, the Navigation Acts, as intended, transferred wealth from America to Britain by increasing the prices Americans had to pay for British goods and lowering the prices Americans received for the goods they produced. Mercantilism also helped bring on a series of three wars between England and Holland in the late 1600s.

Charles II and his advisors worked to tighten up the administration of colonies, particularly the enforcement of the Navigation Acts. In Virginia tempers grew short as tobacco prices plunged as a result. Virginians were also angry at Royal Governor Sir William Berkeley, whose high-handed, high-taxing ways they despised and whom they believed was running the colony for the benefit of himself and his circle of cronies.

In 1674, Nathaniel Bacon, an impoverished nobleman with a shady past, came to Virginia and failed to gain admittance to Berkeley's inner circle, whose financial advantages he coveted. Bacon then began to oppose Berkeley at every turn and came to head a faction of like-minded persons. In 1676 disagreement over Indian policy brought the matter to the point of armed conflict. Bacon and his men burned Jamestown, but then the whole matter came to an anticlimactic ending when Bacon died of dysentery.

The British authorities, hearing of the matter, sent ships, troops, and an investigating commission. Berkeley, who had 23 of the rebels hanged in reprisal, was removed; and thenceforth Virginia's royal governors had strict instructions to run the colony for the benefit of the mother country. In response, Virginia's gentry, who had been divided over Bacon's Rebellion, united to face this new threat to their local autonomy. By political means they consistently obstructed the governors' efforts to increase royal control.

The Half-Way Covenant

By the latter half of the seventeenth century, many Puritans were coming to fear that New England was drifting away from its religious purpose. The children and grandchildren of the first generation were displaying more concern for making money than creating a godly society.

To deal with this, some clergymen in 1662 proposed the "Half-Way Covenant," providing a sort of half-way church membership for the children of members, even though those children, having reached adulthood, did not profess saving grace as was normally required for Puritan church membership. Those who embraced the Half-Way Covenant felt that in an increasingly materialistic society it would at least keep church membership rolls full and might preserve some of the church's influence in society.

Some communities rejected the Half-Way Covenant as an improper compromise, but in general the shift toward secular values continued, though slowly. Many Puritan ministers strongly denounced this trend in sermons that have come to be referred to as "jeremiads."

King Philip's War

As New England's population grew, local Indian tribes felt threatened, and conflict sometimes resulted. Puritans endeavored to convert Indians to Christianity. The Bible was translated into Algonquian; four villages were set up for converted Indians, who by 1650 numbered over a thousand. Still, most Indians remained unconverted.

In 1675 a Wampanoag chief named King Philip (Metacomet) led a war to exterminate the whites. Some 2,000 settlers lost their lives before King Philip was killed and his tribe subdued. New England continued to experience Indian troubles from time to time, though not as severe as those suffered by Virginia.

The Dominion of New England

The trend toward increasing imperial control of the colonies continued. In 1684 the Massachusetts charter was revoked in retaliation for that colony's large-scale evasion of the restrictions of the Navigation Acts.

The following year Charles II died and was succeeded by his brother, James II. James was prepared to go even farther in controlling the colonies, favoring the establishment of a unified government for all of New England, New York, and New Jersey. This was to be called the Dominion of New England, and the fact that it would abolish representative assemblies and facilitate the imposition of the Church of England on Congregationalist (Puritan) New England made it still more appealing to James.

To head the Dominion, James sent the obnoxious and dictatorial Sir Edmond Andros. Arriving in Boston in 1686, Andros quickly alienated the New Englanders. When news reached America of England's 1688 Glorious Revolution, replacing the Catholic James with his Protestant daughter Mary and her husband William of Orange, New Englanders cheerfully shipped Andros back to England.

Similar uprisings occurred in New York and Maryland. William and Mary's new government generally accepted these actions, though Jacob Leisler, leader of Leisler's Rebellion in New York, was executed for hesitating to turn over power to the new royal governor. This unfortunate incident poisoned the political climate of New York for many years.

The charter of Massachusetts, now including Plymouth, was restored in 1691, this time as a royal colony, though not as tightly controlled as others of that type.

The Salem Witch Trials

In 1692 Massachusetts was shaken by an unusual incident in which several young girls in Salem Village (now Danvers) claimed to be tormented by the occult activities of certain of their neighbors. Before the resulting Salem witch trials could be stopped by the intervention of Puritan ministers such as Cotton Mather, some 20 persons had been executed (19 by hanging and one crushed under a pile of rocks).

Pennsylvania and Delaware

Pennsylvania was founded as a refuge for Quakers. One of a number of radical religious sects that had sprung up about the time of the English Civil War, the Quakers held many controversial beliefs. They believed all persons had an "inner light" which allowed them to commune directly with God. They believed human institutions were, for the most part, unnecessary and, since they believed they could receive revelation directly from God, placed little importance on the Bible. They were also pacifists and declined to show customary deference to those who were considered to be their social superiors. This and their aggressiveness in denouncing established institutions brought them trouble in both Britain and America.

William Penn, a member of a prominent British family, converted to Quakerism as a young man. Desiring to found a colony as a refuge for Quakers, in 1681 he sought and received from Charles II a grant of land in America as payment of a large debt the king had owed Penn's late father.

Penn advertised his colony widely in Europe, offered generous terms on land, and guaranteed a representative assembly and full religious freedom. He personally went to America to set up his colony, laying out the city of Philadelphia. He succeeded in maintaining peaceful relations with the Indians.

In the years that followed settlers flocked to Pennsylvania from all over Europe. The colony grew and prospered, and its fertile soil made it not only attractive to settlers, but also a large exporter of grain to Europe and the West Indies.

Delaware, though at first part of Pennsylvania, was granted by Penn a separate legislature, but until the American Revolution, Pennsylvania's proprietary governors also functioned as governors of Delaware.

THE EIGHTEENTH CENTURY

Economy and Population

British authorities continued to regulate the colonial economy, though usually without going so far as to provoke unrest. An exception was the Molasses Act of 1733, which would have been disastrous for New England merchants. In this case trouble was averted by the customs agents wisely declining to enforce the act stringently.

The constant drain of wealth from America to Britain, created by the mother country's mercantilistic policies, led to a corresponding drain in hard currency (gold and silver). The artificially low prices that this shortage of money created for American goods was even more advantageous to British buyers. When colonial legislatures responded by endeavoring to create paper money, British authorities blocked such moves. Despite these hindrances, the colonial American economy remained for the most part extremely prosperous.

America's population continued to grow rapidly, both from natural increases due to prosperity and a healthy environment, and from large-scale immigration, not only of English but also of such other groups as Scot-Irish and Germans.

The Germans were prompted to migrate by wars, poverty, and religious persecution in their homeland. They found Pennsylvania especially attractive and they settled fairly close to the frontier, where land was more readily available. They eventually came to be called the "Pennsylvania Dutch."

The Scotch-Irish, Scottish Presbyterians who had been living in northern Ireland for several generations, left their homes because of high rent and economic depression. In America they settled even farther west than the Germans, on or beyond the frontier in the Appalachians. They spread southward into the mountain valleys of Virginia and North Carolina.

The Early Wars of the Empire

Between 1689 and 1763 Britain and its American colonies fought a series of four wars with Spain, France, and France's Indian allies, in part to determine who would dominate North America.

Though the first war, known in America as King William's War (1689–1697) but in Europe as the War of the League of Augsburg, was a limited conflict involving no major battles in America, it did bring a number of bloody and terrifying border raids by Indians. It was ended by the Treaty of Ryswick, which made no major territorial changes.

The second war was known in America as Queen Anne's War (1702–1713), but in Europe as the War of the Spanish Succession, and brought America 12 years of sporadic fighting against France and Spain. It was ended by the Treaty of Utrecht, the terms of which gave Britain major territorial gains and trade advantages.

In 1739 war once again broke out with France and Spain. Known in America as King George's War, it was called the War of Jenkins' Ear in Europe and later the War of the Austrian Succession. American troops played an active role, accompanying the British on several important expeditions and suffering thousands of casualties. In 1745 an all New England army, led by William Pepperrell, captured the powerful French fortress of Louisbourg at the mouth of the St. Lawrence River. To the Americans' disgust, the British in the 1748 Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle gave Louisbourg back to France in exchange for lands in India.

Georgia

With this almost constant imperial warfare in mind, it was decided to found a colony as a buffer between South Carolina and Spanish-held Florida. A group of British philanthropists, led by General James Oglethorpe, in 1732 obtained a charter for such a colony, to be located between the Savannah and Altamaha rivers and to be populated by such poor as could not manage to make a living in Great Britain.

The philanthropist trustees, who were to control the colony for 21 years before it reverted to royal authority, made elaborate and detailed rules to mold the new colony's society as they felt best. As a result, relatively few settlers came, and those who did complained endlessly. By 1752 Oglethorpe and his colleagues were ready to acknowledge their efforts a failure. Thereafter, Georgia came to resemble South Carolina, though with more small farmers.

The Enlightenment

As the eighteenth century progressed, Americans came to be more or less influenced by European ways of thought, culture, and society. Some Americans embraced the European intellectual movement known as the "Enlightenment."

The key concept of the Enlightenment was rationalism—the belief that human reason was adequate to solve all of mankind's problems and,

correspondingly, much less faith was needed in the central role of God as an active force in the universe.

A major English political philosopher of the Enlightenment was John Locke. Writing partially to justify England's 1688 Glorious Revolution, he strove to find in the social and political world the sort of natural laws Isaac Newton had recently discovered in the physical realm. He held that such natural laws included the rights of life, liberty, and property; that to secure these rights people submit to governments; and that governments which abuse these rights may justly be overthrown. His writings were enormously influential in America though usually indirectly, by way of early eighteenth century English political philosophers. Americans tended to equate Locke's law of nature with the universal law of God.

The most notable Enlightenment man in America was Benjamin Franklin. While Franklin never denied the existence of God, he focused his attention on human reason and what it could accomplish. His renown spread to Europe both for the wit and wisdom of his *Poor Richard's Almanac* and for his scientific experiments.

The Great Awakening

Of much greater impact on the lives of the common people in America was the movement known as the Great Awakening. It consisted of a series of religious revivals occurring throughout the colonies from the 1720s to the 1740s. Preachers such as the Dutch Reformed Theodore Frelinghuysen, the Presbyterians William and Gilbert Tennent, and the Congregationalist Jonathan Edwards—best known for his sermon "Sinners in the Hands of an Angry God"—proclaimed a message of personal repentance and faith in Jesus Christ for salvation from an otherwise certain eternity in hell. The most dynamic preacher of the Great Awakening was the Englishman George Whitefield, who traveled through the colonies several times, speaking to crowds of up to 30,000.

The Great Awakening had several important results. America's religious community came to be divided between the "Old Lights," who rejected the great Awakening, and the "New Lights," who accepted it—and sometimes suffered persecution because of their fervor. A number of colleges were founded (many of them today's "Ivy League" schools), primarily for the purpose of training New-Light ministers. The Great Awakening also fostered a greater readiness to lay the claims of established religious authority alongside a fixed standard—in this case the Bible—and to reject such claims it found wanting.

The French and Indian War

The Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle (1748), ending King George's War, provided little more than a breathing space before the next European and imperial war. England and France continued on a collision course as France determined to take complete control of the Ohio Valley and western Pennsylvania.

British authorities ordered colonial governors to resist this; and Virginia's Robert Dinwiddie, already involved in speculation on the Ohio Valley lands, was eager to comply. George Washington, a young major of the Virginia militia, was sent to western Pennsylvania to request the French to leave. When the French declined, Washington was sent in 1754 with 200 Virginia militiamen to expel them. After success in a small skirmish, Washington was

forced by superior numbers to fall back on his hastily built Fort Necessity and then to surrender.

The war these operations initiated spread to Europe two years later, where it was known as the Seven Years' War. In America it later came to be known as the French and Indian War.

While Washington skirmished with the French in western Pennsylvania, delegates of seven colonies met in Albany, New York, to discuss common plans for defense. Delegate Benjamin Franklin proposed a plan for an intercolonial government. While the other colonies showed no support for the idea, it was an important precedent for the concept of uniting in the face of a common enemy.

To deal with the French threat, the British dispatched Major General Edward Braddock with several regiments of British regular troops. Braddock marched overland toward the French outpost of Fort Duquesne, at the place where the Monongahela and Allegheny rivers join to form the Ohio. About eight miles short of his goal he was ambushed by a small force of French and Indians. Two-thirds of the British regulars, including Braddock himself, were killed. However, Britain bounced back from this humiliating defeat and several others that followed, and under the leadership of its capable and energetic prime minister, William Pitt, had by 1760 taken Quebec and Montreal and virtually liquidated the French empire in North America.

By the Treaty of Paris of 1763, which officially ended hostilities, Britain gained all of Canada and all of what is now the United States east of the Mississippi River. France lost all of its North American holdings.

Americans at the end of the French and Indian War were proud to be part of the victorious British Empire and proud of the important role they had played in making it so. They felt affection for Great Britain, and thoughts of independence would not have crossed their minds.

2. THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION (1763–1787)

THE COMING OF THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION

Writs of Assistance

While Americans' feelings toward Great Britain were pride and affection, British officials felt contemptuous of Americans and anxious to increase imperial control over them beyond anything that had previously been attempted. This drive to gain new authority over the colonies, beginning in 1763, led directly to American independence.

Even before that time the Writs of Assistance cases had demonstrated that Americans would not accept a reduction of their freedom.

In 1761 a young Boston lawyer named James Otis argued before a Massachusetts court that Writs of Assistance (general search warrants issued to help royal officials stop evasion of Britain's mercantilist trade restrictions) were contrary to natural law. He made his point though he lost his case, and others in the colonies joined in protesting against the Writs.

Grenville and the Stamp Act

In 1763 the strongly anti-American George Grenville became prime minister and set out to solve some of the empire's more pressing problems. Chief of

these was the large national debt incurred in the recent war.

Of related concern was the cost of defending the American frontier, recently the scene of a bloody Indian uprising led by an Ottawa chief named Pontiac. Goaded by French traders, Pontiac had aimed to drive the entire white population into the sea. While failing in that endeavor, he had succeeded in killing a large number of settlers along the frontier.

Grenville created a comprehensive program to deal with these problems and moved energetically to put it into effect. He sent the Royal Navy to suppress American smuggling and enforce vigorously the Navigation Acts. He also issued the Proclamation of 1763, forbidding white settlement west of the crest of the Appalachians, in hopes of keeping the Indians happy and the settlers close to the coast and thus easier to control.

In 1764, Grenville pushed through Parliament the Sugar Act (also known as the Revenue Act) aimed at raising revenue by taxes on goods imported by the Americans. It lowered by one-half the duties imposed by the Molasses Act but was intended to raise revenue rather than control trade. Unlike the Molasses Act, it was stringently enforced, with accused violators facing trial in admiralty courts without benefit of jury or the normal protections of due process.

Grenville determined to maintain up to 10,000 British regulars in America to control both colonists and Indians and secured passage of the Quartering Act, requiring the colonies in which British troops were stationed to pay for their maintenance. Americans had never before been required to support a standing army in their midst.

Grenville also saw through the passage of his Currency Act of 1764, which forbade once and for all any colonial attempts to issue currency not redeemable in gold or silver, making it more difficult for Americans to avoid the constant drain of money that Britain's mercantilist policies were designed to create in the colonies.

Most important, however, Grenville got Parliament to pass the Stamp Act (1765), imposing a direct tax on Americans for the first time. The Stamp Act required Americans to purchase revenue stamps on everything from newspapers to legal documents and would have created an impossible drain on hard currency in the colonies. Because it overlooked the advantage already provided by Britain's mercantilist exploitation of the colonies, Grenville's policy was shortsighted and foolish; but few in Parliament were inclined to see this.

Americans reacted first with restrained and respectful petitions and pamphlets, in which they pointed out that "taxation without representation is tyranny." From there resistance progressed to stronger and stronger protests that eventually became violent and involved intimidation of those Americans who had contracted to be the agents for distributing the stamps.

Resistance was particularly intense in Massachusetts, where it was led first by James Otis and then by Samuel Adams who formed the organization known as the Sons of Liberty.

Other colonies copied Massachusetts' successful tactics while adding some of their own. In Virginia, a young Burgess named Patrick Henry introduced seven resolutions denouncing the Stamp Act. Though only the four most moderate of them were passed by the House of Burgesses, newspapers picked up all seven and circulated them widely through the colonies, giving the impression all seven had been adopted. By their denial of Parliament's

authority to tax the colonies, they encouraged other colonial legislatures to issue strongly worded statements.

In October 1765, delegates from nine colonies met as the Stamp Act Congress. Called by the Massachusetts legislature at the instigation of James Otis, the Stamp Act Congress passed moderate resolutions against the act, asserting that Americans could not be taxed without their consent, given by their representatives. They pointed out that Americans were not, and because of their location could not practically be, represented in Parliament and concluded by calling for the repeal of both the Stamp and Sugar Acts. Most important, however, the Stamp Act Congress showed that representatives of the colonies could work together and gave political leaders in the various colonies a chance to become acquainted with each other.

Most effective in achieving repeal of the Stamp Act was colonial merchants' nonimportation (boycott) of British goods. Begun as an agreement among New York merchants, the boycott spread throughout the colonies and had a powerful effect on British merchants and manufacturers, who began clamoring for the act's repeal.

Meanwhile, the fickle King George III had dismissed Grenville over an unrelated disagreement and replaced him with a cabinet headed by Charles Lord Rockingham. In March 1766, under the leadership of the new ministry, Parliament repealed the Stamp Act. At the same time, however, it passed the Declaratory Act, claiming power to tax or make laws for the Americans "in all cases whatsoever."

Though the Declaratory Act denied exactly the principle Americans had just been at such pains to assert—that of no taxation without representation—the Americans generally ignored it in their exuberant celebration of the repeal of the Stamp Act. Americans eagerly proclaimed their loyalty to Great Britain.

The Townshend Acts

The Rockingham ministry proved to be even shorter lived than that of Grenville. It was replaced with a cabinet dominated by Chancellor of the Exchequer Charles Townshend. Townshend had boasted that he could successfully tax the colonies, and in 1766 Parliament gave him his chance by passing his program of taxes on items imported into the colonies. These taxes came to be known as the Townshend Duties. Townshend mistakenly believed the Americans would accept this method while rejecting the use of direct internal taxes.

The Townshend Acts also included the use of admiralty courts to try those accused of violations, the use of writs of assistance, and the paying of customs officials out of the fines they levied. Townshend also had the New York legislature suspended for noncompliance with the Quartering Act.

American reaction was at first slow. Philadelphia lawyer John Dickinson wrote an anonymous pamphlet entitled "Letters from a Farmer in Pennsylvania," in which he pointed out in moderate terms that the Townshend Acts violated the principle of no taxation without representation and that if Parliament could suspend the New York legislature it could do the same to others. At the same time he urged a restrained response on the part of his fellow Americans.

In February 1768 the Massachusetts legislature, at the urging of Samuel Adams, passed the Massachusetts Circular Letter, reiterating Dickinson's mild arguments and urging other colonial legislatures to pass petitions calling on

Parliament to repeal the acts. Had the British government done nothing, the matter might have passed quietly.

Instead, British authorities acted. They ordered that if the letter was not withdrawn, the Massachusetts legislature should be dissolved and new elections held. They forbade the other colonial legislatures to take up the matter, and they also sent four regiments of troops to Boston to prevent intimidation of royal officials and to intimidate the populace instead.

The last of these actions was in response to the repeated pleas of the Boston customs agents. Corrupt agents had used technicalities of the confusing and poorly written Sugar and Townshend Acts to entrap innocent merchants and line their own pockets. Mob violence had threatened when agents had seized the ship *Liberty*, belonging to Boston merchant John Hancock. Such incidents prompted the call for troops.

The sending of troops, along with the British authority's repressive response to the Massachusetts Circular Letter aroused the Americans to resistance. Non-importation was again instituted, and soon British merchants were calling on Parliament to repeal the acts. In March 1770, Parliament, under the new prime minister, Frederick Lord North, repealed all of the taxes except that on tea, which was retained to prove Parliament had the right to tax the colonies if it so desired.

By the time of the repeal, however, friction between British soldiers and Boston citizens had led to an incident in which five Bostonians were killed. Although the British soldiers had acted more or less in self-defense, Samuel Adams labeled the incident the "Boston Massacre" and publicized it widely. At their trial the British soldiers were defended by prominent Massachusetts lawyer John Adams and were acquitted on the charge of murder.

In the years that followed, American orators desiring to stir up anti-British feeling often alluded to the Boston Massacre.

The Return of Relative Peace

Following the repeal of the Townshend Duties a period of relative peace set in. The tax on tea remained as a reminder of Parliament's claims, but it could be easily avoided by smuggling.

Much goodwill had been lost and colonists remained suspicious of the British government. Many Americans believed the events of the past decade to have been the work of a deliberate conspiracy to take their liberty.

Occasional incidents marred the relative peace. One such incident was the burning, by a seagoing mob of Rhode Islanders disguised as Indians, of the *Gaspee*, a British customs schooner that had run aground offshore. The *Gaspee*'s captain and crew had alienated Rhode Islanders by their extreme zeal for catching smugglers as well as by their theft and vandalism when ashore.

In response to this incident, British authorities appointed a commission to find the guilty parties and bring them to England for trial. Though those responsible for the burning of the *Gaspee* were never found, this action on the part of the British prompted the colonial legislatures to form committees of correspondence to communicate with each other regarding possible threats from the British government.

The Tea Act

The relative peace was brought to an end by the Tea Act of 1773.

In desperate financial condition—partially because the Americans were buying smuggled Dutch tea rather than the taxed British product—the British East India Company sought and obtained from Parliament concessions allowing it to ship tea directly to the colonies rather than only by way of Britain. The result would be that East India Company tea, even with the tax, would be cheaper than smuggled Dutch tea. The colonists would thus, it was hoped, buy the tea, tax and all. The East India Company would be saved and the Americans would be tacitly accepting Parliament's right to tax them.

The Americans, however, proved resistant to this approach; and rather than seem to admit Parliament's right to tax, they vigorously resisted the cheaper tea. Various methods, including tar and feathers, were used to prevent the collection of the tax on tea. In most ports Americans did not allow the tea to be landed.

In Boston, however, pro-British Governor Thomas Hutchinson forced a confrontation by ordering Royal Navy vessels to prevent the tea ships from leaving the harbor. After 20 days this would, by law, result in the cargoes being sold at auction and the tax paid. The night before the time was to expire, December 16, 1773, Bostonians thinly disguised as Indians boarded the ships and threw the tea into the harbor.

Many Americans felt this—the destruction of private property—was going too far, but the reaction of Lord North and Parliament quickly united Americans in support of Boston and opposition to Britain.

The Intolerable Acts

The British responded with four acts collectively titled the Coercive Acts. First, the Boston Port Act closed the port of Boston to all trade until local citizens would agree to pay for the lost tea (they would not). Secondly, the Massachusetts Government Act greatly increased the power of Massachusetts' royal governor at the expense of the legislature. Thirdly, the Administration of Justice Act provided that royal officials accused of crimes in Massachusetts could be tried elsewhere, where chances of acquittal might be greater. Finally, a strengthened Quartering Act allowed the new governor, General Thomas Gage, to quarter his troops anywhere, including unoccupied private homes.

A further act of Parliament also angered and alarmed Americans. This was the Quebec Act, which extended the province of Quebec to the Ohio River, established Roman Catholicism as Quebec's official religion, and set up for Quebec a government without a representative assembly.

For Americans this was a denial of the hopes and expectations of westward expansion for which they had fought the French and Indian War. Also, New Englanders especially saw it as a threat that in their colonies too, Parliament could establish autocratic government and the hated Church of England.

Americans lumped the Quebec Act together with the Coercive Acts and referred to them all as the Intolerable Acts.

In response to the Coercive Acts, the First Continental Congress was called and met in Philadelphia in September 1774. It once again petitioned Parliament for relief but also passed the Suffolk Resolves (so called because they were first passed in Suffolk County, Massachusetts), denouncing the Intolerable Acts and calling for strict nonimportation and rigorous preparation of local militia companies in case the British should resort to military force.

The Congress then narrowly rejected a plan, submitted by Joseph Galloway of Pennsylvania, calling for a union of the colonies within the empire and a rearrangement of relations with Parliament. Most of the delegates felt matters had already gone too far for such a mild measure. Finally, before adjournment, it was agreed that there should be a Second Continental Congress to meet in May of the following year if the colonies' grievances had not been righted by then.

THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE

Lexington and Concord

The British government paid little attention to the First Continental Congress, having decided to teach the Americans a military lesson. More troops were sent to Massachusetts, which was officially declared to be in a state of rebellion. Orders were sent to General Gage to arrest the leaders of the resistance or, failing that, to provoke any sort of confrontation that would allow him to turn British military might loose on the Americans.

Gage decided on a reconnaissance-in-force to find and destroy a reported stockpile of colonial arms and ammunition at Concord. Seven hundred British troops set out on this mission on the night of April 18, 1775. Their movement was detected by American surveillance and news was spread throughout the countryside by dispatch riders Paul Revere and William Dawes.

At the little village of Lexington, Captain John Parker and some 70 Minutemen (militiamen trained to respond at a moment's notice) awaited the British on the village green. As the British approached, a British officer shouted at the Minutemen to lay down their arms and disperse. The Minutemen did not lay down their arms but did turn to file off the green. A shot was fired, and then the British opened fire and charged. Eight Americans were killed and several others wounded, most shot in the back.

The British continued to Concord only to find that nearly all of the military supplies they had expected to find had already been moved. Attacked by growing numbers of Minutemen, they began to retreat toward Boston. As the British retreated, Minutemen, swarming from every village for miles around, fired on the column from behind rocks, trees, and stone fences. Only a relief force of additional British troops saved the first column from destruction.

Open warfare had begun, and the myth of British invincibility was destroyed. Militia came in large numbers from all the New England colonies to join the force besieging Gage and his army in Boston.

Bunker Hill

In May 1775, three more British generals, William Howe, Henry Clinton, and John Burgoyne, arrived in Boston urging Gage to further aggressive action. The following month the Americans tightened the noose around Boston by fortifying Breed's Hill (a spur of Bunker Hill), from which they could, if necessary, bombard Boston.

The British determined to remove them by a frontal attack that would demonstrate the awesome power of British arms. Twice the British were thrown back and finally succeeded as the Americans ran out of ammunition. Over a thousand British soldiers were killed or wounded in what turned out to be the bloodiest battle of the war (June 17,1775). Yet the British had gained very little and remained bottled up in Boston.

Meanwhile in May 1775, American forces under Ethan Allen and Benedict Arnold took Fort Ticonderoga on Lake Champlain.

Congress, hoping Canada would join in resistance against Britain, authorized two expeditions into Quebec. One, under General Richard Montgomery took Montreal and then turned toward the city of Quebec. It was met there by the second expedition under Benedict Arnold. The attack on Quebec (December 31, 1775) failed, Montgomery was killed, Arnold wounded, and American hopes for Canada ended.

The Second Continental Congress

While these events were taking place in New England and Canada, the Second Continental Congress met in Philadelphia in May 1775. Congress was divided into two main factions. One was composed mostly of New Englanders and leaned toward declaring independence from Britain. The other drew its strength primarily from the Middle Colonies and was not yet ready to go that far. It was led by John Dickinson of Pennsylvania.

Congress took action to deal with the difficult situation facing the colonies. It adopted the New England army around Boston, calling on the other colonies to send troops and sending George Washington to command it, adopted a "Declaration of the Causes and Necessity for Taking up Arms," and adopted the "Olive Branch Petition" pleading with King George III to intercede with Parliament to restore peace.

This last overture was ignored in Britain, where the king gave his approval to the Prohibitory Act, declaring the colonies in rebellion and no longer under his protection. Preparations were made for full-scale war against America.

Throughout 1775, Americans remained deeply loyal to Britain and King George III despite the king's proclamations declaring them to be in revolt. In Congress moderates still resisted independence.

In January 1776, Thomas Paine published a pamphlet entitled *Common Sense*, calling for immediate independence. Its arguments were extreme and sometimes illogical and its language intemperate, but it sold largely and may have had much influence in favor of independence. Continued evidence of Britain's intention to carry on the war throughout the colonies also weakened the moderates' resistance to independence. The Prohibitory Act, with its virtual declaration of war against America, convinced many that no further moral scruples need stand in the way of such a step.

On June 7, 1776, Richard Henry Lee of Virginia introduced a series of formal resolutions in Congress calling for independence and a national government. Accepting these ideas, Congress named two committees. One, headed by John Dickinson, was to work out a framework for a national government. The other was to draft a statement of the reasons for declaring independence. This statement, the Declaration of Independence, was primarily the work of Thomas Jefferson of Virginia. It was a restatement of political ideas by then common place in America, showing why the former colonists felt justified in separating from Great Britain. It was formally adopted by Congress on July 4, 1776.

Washington Takes Command

Britain meanwhile was preparing a massive effort to conquer the United States. Gage was removed as being too timid, and top command went to

Howe. To supplement the British army, large numbers of troops were hired from various German principalities. Since many of these Germans came from the state of Hesse-Kassel, Americans referred to all such troops as Hessians.

Although the London authorities desired a quick and smashing campaign, General Howe and his brother, British naval commander Richard, Admiral Lord Howe, intended to move slowly, using their powerful force to cow the Americans into signing loyalty oaths.

In March 1776, Washington placed on Dorchester Heights, overlooking Boston, some of the large cannons that had been captured at Ticonderoga, forcing the British to evacuate the city.

The British shipped their troops to Nova Scotia and then, together with large reinforcements from Britain, landed that summer at New York City. They hoped to find many loyalists there and make that city the key to their campaign to subdue America.

Washington anticipated the move and was waiting at New York, which Congress had ordered should be defended. However, the under-trained, under-equipped, and badly outnumbered American army was no match for the powerful forces under the Howes. Defeated at the Battle of Long Island (August 27, 1776), Washington narrowly avoided being trapped there (an escape partially due to the Howes' slowness). Defeated again at the Battle of Washington Heights (August 29–30, 1776) on Manhattan, Washington was forced to retreat across New Jersey with the aggressive British General Lord Cornwallis, a subordinate of Howe, in pursuit. By December what was left of Washington's army had made it into Pennsylvania.

With his victory almost complete, Howe decided to wait till spring to finish annihilating Washington's army. Scattering his troops in small detachments so as to hold all of New Jersey, he went into winter quarters.

Washington, with his small army melting away as demoralized soldiers deserted, decided on a bold stroke. On Christmas night 1776, his army crossed the Delaware River and struck the Hessians at Trenton. The Hessians, still groggy from their hard-drinking Christmas party, were easily defeated. A few days later Washington defeated a British force at Princeton (January 3, 1777).

Howe was so shocked by these two unexpected defeats that he pulled his outposts back close to New York. Much of New Jersey was regained. Those who had signed British loyalty oaths in the presence of Howe's army were now at the mercy of their patriot neighbors. And Washington's army was saved from disintegration.

Early in the war France began making covert shipments of arms to the Americans. This it did, not because the French government loved freedom (it did not), but because it hated Britain and saw the war as a way to weaken Britain by depriving it of its colonies. Arms shipments from France were vital for the Americans.

Saratoga and Valley Forge

For the summer of 1777 the British home authorities adopted an elaborate plan of campaign urged on them by General Burgoyne. According to the plan Burgoyne himself would lead an army southward from Canada along the Lake Champlain corridor while another army under Howe moved up the Hudson River to join hands with Burgoyne at Albany. This, it was hoped, would cut off

New England and allow the British to subdue that region, which they considered the hotbed of the "rebellion."

Howe had other ideas and shipped his army by sea to Chesapeake Bay, hoping to capture the American capital, Philadelphia, and destroy Washington's army at the same time. At Brandywine Creek (September 1, 1777) Washington tried but failed to stop Howe's advance. Yet the American army, though badly beaten, remained intact. Howe occupied Philadelphia as the Congress fled westward to York, Pennsylvania.

In early October, Washington attempted to drive Howe out of Philadelphia; but his attack at Germantown, though at first successful, failed at least partially due to thick fog and the still imperfect level of training in the American army, both of which contributed to confusion among the troops. Thereafter, Howe settled down to comfortable winter quarters in Philadelphia, and Washington and his army to very uncomfortable ones at nearby Valley Forge, while far to the north, the British strategy that Howe had ignored was going badly awry.

Burgoyne's advance began well but slowed as the Americans placed obstructions on the rough wilderness trails by which his army, including numerous cannons and much bulky baggage, had to advance. A diversionary force of British troops and Iroquois Indians under the command of Colonel Barry St. Leger swung east of Burgoyne's column, but although it defeated and killed American General Nicholas Herkimer at the Battle of Oriskany (August 6, 1777), it was finally forced to withdraw to Canada.

In mid-August, a detachment of Burgoyne's force was defeated by New England militia under General John Stark near Bennington in what is now Vermont. By autumn Burgoyne found his way blocked by an American army: continentals (American regular troops such as those that made up most of Washington's army, paid, in theory at least, by Congress); and New England militia, under General Horatio Gates, at Saratoga, about 30 miles north of Albany. Burgoyne's two attempts to break through (September 19 and October 7,1777) were turned back by the Americans under the brilliant battlefield leadership of Benedict Arnold. On October 17, 1777, Burgoyne surrendered to Gates.

The American victory at Saratoga convinced the French to join openly in the war against England. Eventually, the Spanish (1779) and the Dutch (1780) joined as well, and England was faced with a world war.

The British Move South

The new circumstances brought a change in British strategy. With fewer troops available for service in America, the British would have to depend more on loyalists, and since they imagined that larger numbers of these existed in the South than elsewhere, it was there they turned their attention.

Howe was relieved and replaced by General Henry Clinton, who was ordered to abandon Philadelphia and march to New York. In doing so, he narrowly avoided defeat at the hands of Washington's army—much improved after a winter's drilling at Valley Forge under the direction of Prussian nobleman Baron von Steuben—at the Battle of Monmouth, New Jersey (June 28, 1778).

Clinton was thenceforth to maintain New York as Britain's main base in America while detaching troops to carry out the new Southern strategy. In November 1778 the British easily conquered Georgia. Late the following year

Clinton moved on South Carolina with a land and naval force, and in May 1780, U.S. General Benjamin Lincoln surrendered Charleston. Clinton then returned to New York, leaving Cornwallis to continue the Southern campaign.

Congress, alarmed at the British successes, sent General Horatio Gates to lead the forces opposing Cornwallis. Gates blundered to a resounding defeat at the Battle of Camden, in South Carolina (August 16, 1780).

The general outlook seemed bad for America at that point in the war. Washington's officers grumbled about their pay in arrears. The army was understrength and then suffered successive mutinies among the Pennsylvania and New Jersey troops. Benedict Arnold went over to the British. In short, the British seemed to be winning the contest of endurance. This outlook was soon to change.

In the West, George Rogers Clark, acting under the auspices of the state of Virginia, led an expedition down the Ohio River and into the area of present-day Illinois and Indiana, defeating a British force at Vincennes, Indiana, and securing the area north of the Ohio River for the United States.

In the South, Cornwallis began to move northward toward North Carolina, but on October 7, 1780 a detachment of his Loyalist force under Major Patrick Ferguson was defeated by American frontiersman at the Battle of Kings Mountain in northern South Carolina. To further increase the problems facing the British, Cornwallis had unwisely moved north without bothering to secure South Carolina first. The result was that the British would no sooner leave an area than American militia or guerrilla bands, such as that under Francis Marion ("the Swamp Fox"), were once again in control and able to deal with those who had expressed loyalty to Britain in the presence of Cornwallis's army.

To command the continental forces in the South, Washington sent his most able subordinate, military genius Nathaniel Greene. Greene's brilliant strategy led to a crushing victory at Cowpens, South Carolina (January 17, 1781) by troops under Greene's subordinate, General Daniel Morgan of Virginia. It also led to a near victory by Greene's own force at Guilford Court House, North Carolina (March 15, 1781).

Yorktown

The frustrated and impetuous Cornwallis now abandoned the Southern strategy and moved north into Virginia. Clinton, disgusted at this departure from plan, sent instructions for Cornwallis to take up a defensive position and await further orders. Against his better judgment Cornwallis did so, selecting Yorktown, Virginia, on a peninsula that reaches into Chesapeake Bay between the York and James rivers.

Washington now saw and seized the opportunity this presented. With the aid of a French fleet which took control of Chesapeake Bay and a French army that joined him in sealing off the land approaches to Yorktown, Washington succeeded in trapping Cornwallis. After three weeks of siege, Cornwallis surrendered, October 17, 1781.

The War at Sea

Britain had other problems as well. Ships of the small but daring U.S. Navy as well as privateers (privately owned vessels outfitted with guns and authorized by a warring government to capture enemy merchant ships for profit) preyed on the British merchant marine. John Paul Jones, the most famous of American naval leaders, captured ships and carried out audacious raids along the coast of Britain itself. French and Spanish naval forces also struck against various outposts of the British Empire.

The Treaty of Paris of 1783

News of the debacle at Yorktown brought the collapse of Lord North's ministry, and the new cabinet opened peace negotiations. The extremely able American negotiating team was composed of Benjamin Franklin, John Adams, and John Jay. The negotiations continued for some time, delayed by French and Spanish maneuvering. When it became apparent that France and Spain were planning to achieve an agreement unfavorable to the United States, the American envoys negotiated a separate treaty with Britain.

The final agreement became known as the Treaty of Paris of 1783. Its terms stipulated the following: 1) The United States was recognized as an independent nation by the major European powers, including Britain; 2) Its western boundary was set at the Mississippi River; 3) Its southern boundary was set at 31° north latitude (the northern boundary of Florida); 4) Britain retained Canada but had to surrender Florida to Spain; 5) Private British creditors would be free to collect any debts owed by U.S. citizens; and 6) Congress was to recommend that the states restore confiscated loyalist property.

THE CREATION OF NEW GOVERNMENTS

The State Constitutions

After the collapse of British authority in 1775, it became necessary to form new state governments. By the end of 1777 ten new state constitutions had been formed.

Connecticut and Rhode Island kept their colonial charters, which were republican in nature, simply deleting references to British sovereignty. Massachusetts waited until 1780 to complete the adoption of its new constitution. The constitutions ranged from such extremely democratic models as the virtually unworkable Pennsylvania constitution (soon abandoned), in which a unicameral legislature ruled with little check or balance, to more reasonable frameworks such as those of Maryland and Virginia, which included more safeguards against popular excesses.

Massachusetts voters set an important example by insisting that a constitution should be made by a special convention rather than the legislature. This would make the constitution superior to the legislature and, hopefully, assure that the legislature would be subject to the constitution.

Most state constitutions included bills of rights—lists of things the government was not supposed to do to the people.

The Articles of Confederation

In the summer of 1776, Congress appointed a committee to begin devising a framework for national government. When completed, this document was

known as the Articles of Confederation. John Dickinson, who had played a leading role in writing the Articles, felt a strong national government was needed; but by the time Congress finished revising them, the Articles went to the opposite extreme of preserving the sovereignty of the states and creating a very weak national government.

The Articles of Confederation provided for a unicameral Congress in which each state would have one vote, as had been the case in the Continental Congress. Executive authority under the Articles would be vested in a committee of 13, one member from each state. In order to amend the Articles, the unanimous consent of all the states was required.

The Articles of Confederation government was empowered to make war, make treaties, determine the amount of troops and money each state should contribute to the war effort, settle disputes between states, admit new states to the Union, and borrow money. More importantly, however, was that it was not empowered to levy taxes, raise troops, or regulate commerce.

Ratification of the Articles of Confederation was delayed by a disagreement over the future status of the lands that lay to the west of the original 13 states. Some states, notably Virginia, held extensive claims to these lands based on their original colonial charters. Maryland, which had no such claim, withheld ratification until in 1781 Virginia agreed to surrender its western claims to the new national government.

Meanwhile, the country was on its way to deep financial trouble. Unable to tax, Congress resorted to printing large amounts of paper money to finance the war; but these inflated "Continentals" were soon worthless. Other financial schemes fell through, and only grants and loans from France and the Netherlands staved off complete financial collapse. A plan to amend the Articles to give Congress power to tax was stopped by the lone opposition of Rhode Island. The army, whose pay was far in arrears, threatened mutiny. Some of those who favored a stronger national government welcomed this development and in what became known as the Newburgh Conspiracy (1783) consulted with army second-in-command Horatio Gates as to the possibility of using the army to force the states to surrender more power to the national government. This movement was stopped by a moving appeal to the officers by Washington himself.

The Trans-Appalachian West and the Northwest Ordinance

For many Americans the enormous trans-Appalachian frontier represented an opportunity to escape the economic hard times that followed the end of the war.

In 1775, Daniel Boone opened the "Wilderness Road" through the Cumberland Gap and on to the "Bluegrass" region of Kentucky. Others scouted down the Ohio River from Pittsburgh. By 1790, over 100,000 had settled in Kentucky and Tennessee, despite the risk of violent death at the hands of Indians. This risk was made worse by the presence of the British in northwestern military posts that should have been evacuated at the end of the war. From these posts they supplied the Indians with guns and encouraged them to use them on Americans. The Spaniards on the Florida frontier behaved in much the same way.

The settlement of Kentucky and Tennessee increased the pressure for the opening of the lands north of the Ohio River. To facilitate this, Congress passed three land ordinances in the years from 1784 to 1787.

The Land Ordinance of 1784 provided for territorial government and an orderly system by which each territory could progress to full statehood (this ordinance is sometimes considered part of the Land Ordinance of 1785).

The Land Ordinance of 1785 provided for the orderly surveying and distribution of land in townships six miles square, each composed of 36 one-square-mile (640 acre) sections, of which one should be set aside for the support of education. (This ordinance is sometimes referred to as the "Northwest Ordinance of 1785.")

The Northwest Ordinance of 1787 provided a bill of rights for settlers and forbade slavery north of the Ohio River. It also provided for the creation of three to five territories which could be admitted as states to the union when they reached sufficient populations.

The Jay-Gardoqui Negotiations

Economic depression followed the end of the war as the United States remained locked into the disadvantageous commercial system of the British Empire but without the trade advantages that system had provided.

One man who thought he saw a way out of the economic quagmire was Congress's secretary of foreign affairs, John Jay. In 1784, Jay began negotiating with Spanish minister Gardoqui a treaty that would have granted lucrative commercial privileges—benefiting large east-coast merchants such as Jay—in exchange for U.S. acceptance of Spain's closure of the Mississippi River as an outlet for the agricultural goods of the rapidly growing settlements in Kentucky and Tennessee. This the Spanish desired because they feared that extensive settlement in what was then the western part of the United States might lead to American hunger for Spanish-held lands.

When Jay reported this to Congress in the summer of 1786, the West and South were outraged. Negotiations were broken off. Some, angered that Jay could show so little concern for the other sections of the country, talked of dissolving the Union; and this helped spur to action those who desired not the dissolution but the strengthening of the Union.

Shays' Rebellion

Nationalists were further stimulated to action by Shays' Rebellion (1786). Economic hard times coupled with high taxes intended to pay off the state's war debt drove western Massachusetts farmers to desperation. Led by war veteran Daniel Shays, they shut down courts to prevent judges from seizing property or condemning people to debtors' prison for failing to pay their taxes.

The unrest created a disproportionate amount of panic in the rest of the state and the nation. The citizens of Boston subscribed money to raise an army to suppress the rebels. The success of this army together with timely tax relief caused the "rebellion" to fizzle out fairly quickly.

Amid the panic caused by the news of the uprising, many came to feel that a stronger government was needed to control such violent public outbursts as those of the western Massachusetts farmers.

3. THE UNITED STATES CONSTITUTION (1787–1789)

DEVELOPMENT AND RATIFICATION

Toward a New Constitution

As time went on the inadequacy of the Articles of Confederation became increasingly apparent. Congress could not compel the states to comply with the terms of the Treaty of Paris of 1783 regarding debts and loyalists' property. The British used this as an excuse for not evacuating their Northwestern posts, hoping to be on hand to make the most of the situation when, as they not unreasonably expected, the new government fell to pieces. In any case, Congress could do nothing to force them out of the posts, nor to solve any of the nation's other increasingly pressing problems.

In these dismal straits, some called for disunion, others for monarchy. Still others felt that republican government could still work if given a better constitution, and they made it their goal to achieve this.

In 1785 a meeting of representatives of Virginia, Maryland, Pennsylvania, and Delaware was held at George Washington's residence, Mt. Vernon, for the purpose of discussing current problems of interstate commerce. At their suggestion the Virginia legislature issued a call for a convention of all the states on the same subject, to meet the following summer in Annapolis, Maryland.

The Annapolis Convention met in September 1786, but only five states were represented. Among those present, however, were such nationalists as Alexander Hamilton, John Dickinson, and James Madison. With so few states represented it was decided instead to call for a convention of all the states to meet the following summer in Philadelphia for the purpose of revising the Articles of Confederation.

The Constitutional Convention

The men who met in Philadelphia in 1787 were remarkably able, highly educated, and exceptionally accomplished. For the most part they were lawyers, merchants, and planters. Though representing individual states, most thought in national terms. Prominent among them were James Madison, Alexander Hamilton, Gouverneur Morris, Robert Morris, John Dickinson, and Benjamin Franklin.

George Washington was unanimously elected to preside, and the enormous respect that he commanded helped hold the convention together through difficult times (as it had the Continental Army) and make the product of the convention's work more attractive to the rest of the nation. The delegates then voted that the convention's discussions should be secret, to avoid the distorting and confusing influence of the press and publicity.

The delegates shared a basic belief in the innate selfishness of man, which must somehow be kept from abusing the power of government. For this purpose, the document that they finally produced contained many checks and balances, designed to prevent the government, or any one branch of the government, from gaining too much power.

Madison, who has been called the "father of the Constitution," devised a plan of national government and persuaded fellow Virginian Edmund Randolph, who was more skilled at public speaking, to introduce it. Known as the "Virginia Plan," it called for an executive branch and two houses of Congress, each based on population.

Smaller states, who would thus have seen their influence decreased, objected and countered with William Paterson's "New Jersey Plan," calling for

the continuation of a unicameral legislature with equal representation for the states as well as sharply increased powers for the national government.

A temporary impasse developed that threatened to break up the convention. At this point Benjamin Franklin played an important role in reconciling the often heated delegates, suggesting that the sessions of the convention henceforth begin with prayer (they did) and making various other suggestions that eventually helped the convention arrive at the "Great Compromise." The Great Compromise provided for a presidency, a Senate with all states represented equally (by two Senators each), and a House of Representatives with representation according to population.

Another crisis involved North-South disagreement over the issue of slavery. Here also a compromise was reached. Slavery was neither endorsed nor condemned by the Constitution. Each slave was to count as three-fifths of a person for purposes of apportioning representation and direct taxation on the states (the Three-Fifths Compromise). The federal government was prohibited from stopping the importation of slaves prior to 1808.

The third major area of compromise was the nature of the presidency. This was made easier by the virtual certainty that George Washington would be the first president and the universal trust that he would not abuse the powers of the office or set a bad example for his successors. The result was a strong presidency with control of foreign policy and the power to veto Congress's legislation. Should the president commit an actual crime, Congress would have the power to impeach him. Otherwise the president would serve for a term of four years and be re-electable without limit. As a check to the possible excesses of democracy, the president was to be elected by an Electoral College, in which each state would have the same number of electors as it did Senators and Representatives combined. The person with the second highest total in the Electoral College would be Vice-President. If no one gained a majority in the Electoral College, the President would be chosen by the House of Representatives.

The new Constitution was to take effect when nine states, through special state conventions, had ratified it.

The Struggle for Ratification

As the struggle over ratification got under way, those favoring the Constitution astutely took for themselves the name Federalists (i.e., advocates of centralized power) and labeled their opponents Antifederalists. The Federalists were effective in explaining the convention and the document it had produced. *The Federalist Papers*, written as a series of 85 newspaper articles by Alexander Hamilton, James Madison, and John Jay, brilliantly expounded the Constitution and demonstrated how it was designed to prevent the abuse of power from any direction. These essays are considered to be the best commentary on the Constitution by those who helped write it.

At first, ratification progressed smoothly, with five states approving in quick succession. In Massachusetts, however, a tough fight developed. By skillful maneuvering, Federalists were able to win over to their side such popular opponents of the Constitution as Samuel Adams and John Hancock. Others were won over by the promise that a bill of rights would be added to the Constitution, limiting the federal government just as the state governments were limited by their bills of rights. With such promises, Massachusetts ratified by a narrow margin.

By June 21, 1788, the required nine states had ratified, but the crucial states of New York and Virginia still held out. In Virginia, where George Mason and Patrick Henry opposed the Constitution, the influence of George Washington and the promise of a bill of rights finally prevailed and ratification was achieved there as well. In New York, where Alexander Hamilton led the fight for ratification, *The Federalist Papers*, the promise of a bill of rights, and the news of Virginia's ratification were enough to carry the day.

Only North Carolina and Rhode Island still held out, but they both ratified within the next 15 months.

In March 1789, George Washington was inaugurated as the nation's first president.

OUTLINE OF THE UNITED STATES CONSTITUTION

Articles of the Constitution

Preamble

"We the People of the United States, in order to form a more perfect Union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquility, provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America"

Article I—Legislature

The legislature is divided into two parts—the House of Representatives (435 members currently; determined by proportional representation of the population) and the Senate (100 members currently; two from each state).

The House of Representatives may bring impeachment charges. All bills which concern money must originate in the House. Because of the size of the body, debate is limited except in special cases, where all representatives may meet as the Committee of the Whole. The Speaker of the House presides over the proceedings. Elected terms of representatives are two years, re-electable without limit, to persons who are at least 25 years of age.

The Senate, originally elected by state legislatures but now by direct election (Seventeenth Amendment), approves or rejects presidential nominations and treaties, and serves as the court and jury in impeachment proceedings. Debate within the Senate is unlimited. The president pro tempore usually presides, but the vice-president of the United States is the presiding officer, and may vote to break a tie. Senate elected terms are for six years, re-electable without limit, to persons who are at least 30 years of age.

Article II—Executive

The President of the United States is elected for a four-year term, originally electable without limit (the Twenty-second Amendment limits election to two terms), and must be at least 35 years old.

Responsibilities for the president as outlined in the Constitution include acting as the chief of state, the chief executive, commander-in-chief of the armed forces, the chief diplomat, and chief legislator.

Article III—Judiciary

While the Constitution describes the Supreme Court in Article III, the actual construction of the court system was accomplished by the Judiciary Act of 1789. The Supreme Court has jurisdiction for federal courts and appellate cases on appeal from lower courts.

Article IV—Interstate Relations

This article guarantees that court decisions and other legal actions (marriage, incorporation, etc.) valid in one state are valid in another. Extradition of criminals (and, originally, runaway slaves) and the exchange of citizenship benefits are likewise guaranteed. Article IV also provides for the admission of new states and guarantees federal protection against invasion and violence for each state. States admitted maintain the same status as the original states. All states are guaranteed a republican form of government.

Article V—Amendment Process

Amendments are proposed by a two-thirds vote of each house of Congress or by a special convention called by Congress upon the request of two-thirds of the state legislatures. Amendments are ratified by three-fourths of the state legislatures or state conventions.

Article VI—Supremacy Clause

Article VI sets up the hierarchy of laws in the United States. The Constitution is the "supreme law of the land" and supersedes treaties. Treaties supersede federal laws, federal laws (later to include federal regulatory agency directives) supercede state constitutions, state laws, and local laws respectively. All federal and state officials, including judges, must take an oath to support and defend the Constitution.

Article VII—Ratification

This article specified the ratification process necessary for the Constitution to take effect. Nine of the original 13 states had to ratify the Constitution before it became operative.

Amendments to the Constitution

The Amendments to the Constitution guarantee certain individual rights and amend original dictates of the Constitution. The first ten amendments are known as the Bill of Rights.

1. Freedom of religion, speech, press, assembly, and government petition (1791)
2. Right to bear arms in a regulated militia (1791)
3. Troops will not be quartered (housed) in private citizens' homes (1791)
4. Protects against unreasonable search and seizure (need for search warrant) (1791)
5. Protects the rights of the accused, including required indictments, double jeopardy, self-incrimination, due process, and just compensation (1791)
6. Guarantees a speedy and public trial, the confrontation by witnesses, and the right to call one's own witnesses on behalf (1791)

7. Guarantees a jury trial (1791)
8. Protects against excessive bail and cruel and unusual punishment (1791)
9. States that all rights not enumerated are nonetheless retained by the people (1791)
10. States that all powers not specifically delegated to the federal government are retained by the states (1791)
11. States may not be sued by individuals (1798)
12. Dictates that electors will cast separate ballots for president and vice president; in the event of no clear winner, the House will select the president and the senate the vice-president (1804)
13. Abolished slavery (1865)
14. Extended citizenship to all persons; made Confederate debt void and Confederate leaders ineligible for public office; states which denied voting rights to qualified citizens (blacks) would have their representation in Congress reduced; conferred "dual" citizenship (both of the United States and of a specific state) on all citizens (1868)
15. Extended voting rights to blacks (1870)
16. Legalized the income tax (1913)
17. Provided for the direct election of senators (1913)
18. Prohibited the general manufacture, sale, and use of alcoholic beverages (1919)
19. Extended voting rights to women (1920)
20. Changed inauguration date from March 4 to January 20; eliminated the "lame duck" session of Congress (after the November elections) (1933)
21. Repealed the Eighteenth Amendment (1933)
22. Limited presidents to two terms (1951)
23. Gave presidential electoral votes to the District of Columbia (1961)
24. Prohibited poll taxes (1964)
25. Changed the order of the presidential line of succession and provided guidelines for presidential disability (1967)
26. Extended voting rights to 18-year-olds (1971)
27. Restricted the practice of congressional salary adjustment (1992)

SEPARATION AND LIMITATION OF POWERS

Powers Reserved for the Federal Government Only

- Foreign commerce regulation
- Interstate commerce regulation
- Mint money

- Create and establish post offices
- Regulate naturalization and immigration
- Grant copyrights and patents
- Declare and wage war, declare peace
- Admit new states
- Fix standards for weights and measures
- Raise and maintain an army and navy
- Govern the federal city (Washington, D.C.)
- Conduct relations with foreign powers
- Universalize bankruptcy laws

Powers Reserved for the State Governments Only

- Conduct and monitor elections
- Establish voter qualifications
- Provide for local governments
- Ratify proposed amendments to the Constitution
- Regulate contracts and wills
- Regulate intrastate commerce
- Provide education for its citizens
- Levy direct taxes (the Sixteenth Amendment permits the federal government to levy direct taxes)
- Maintain police power over public health, safety and morals
- Maintain integrity of state borders

Powers Shared by Federal and State Governments

- Taxing, borrowing, and spending money
- Controlling the militia
- Acting directly on individuals

Restrictions on the Federal Government

- No ex post facto laws
- No bills of attainder
- Two-year limit on appropriation for the military
- No suspension of habeus corpus (except in a crisis)
- One port may not be favored over another
- All guarantees as stated in the Bill of Rights

Restrictions on State Governments

- May not enter into treaties, alliances, or confederations
- Letters of marque and reprisal may not be granted

- Contracts may not be impaired
- Money may not be printed or bills of credit emitted
- No import or export taxes
- May not wage war (unless invaded)

Required Percentages of Voting

Actions which require a simple majority include raising taxes, requesting appropriations, declaring war, increasing the national debt, instituting a draft, and introducing impeachment charges (House).

Actions which require a two-thirds majority include overriding a presidential veto, proposing amendments to the Constitution, expelling a member of Congress (in the individual house only), ratifying treaties (Senate), acting as a jury for impeachment (Senate), ratifying presidential appointments (Senate).

The action which requires a three-fourths majority is approving a proposed constitutional amendment (states).

4. THE NEW NATION (1789–1824)

THE FEDERALIST ERA

The results of the first elections held under the new Constitution made it clear that the fledgling government was going to be managed by those who had drawn up the document and by their supporters. Few Antifederalists were elected to Congress, and many of the new legislators had served as delegates to the Philadelphia Convention two years before. This Federalist majority immediately set about to draft legislation which would fill in the gaps left by the convention and to erect the structure of a strong central government.

The New Executive

There had never been any doubt as to who would be the first president. George Washington received virtually all the votes of the presidential electors, and John Adams received the next highest number, thus becoming the vice president. After a triumphal journey from Mount Vernon, Washington was inaugurated in New York City, the temporary seat of government, on April 30, 1789.

Congress Erects the Structure of Government

The new national legislature immediately acted to honor the Federalist pledge of a bill of rights made to those voters who had hesitated to ratify the new Constitution. Twelve amendments were drafted which embodied the guarantees of personal liberties, most of which had been traditionally enjoyed by English citizens. Ten of these were ratified by the states by the end of 1791, and they became the Bill of Rights. The first nine spelled out specific guarantees of personal freedoms, such as religion, speech, press, assembly, petition, and a speedy trial by one's peers, and the Tenth Amendment reserved to the states all those powers not specifically withheld, or granted to the federal government. This last was a concession to those who feared the potential of the central government to usurp the sovereignty of the individual states.

The Establishment of the Federal Court System

The Judiciary Act of 1789 provided for a Supreme Court, with six justices, and invested it with the power to rule on the constitutional validity of state laws. It was to be the interpreter of the "supreme law of the land." A system of district courts was established to serve as courts of original jurisdiction, and three courts of appeal were also provided for.

The Establishment of the Executive Departments

The Constitution had not specified the names or number of the departments of the executive branch. Congress established three—state, treasury, and war—and also the offices of attorney general and postmaster-general. President Washington immediately appointed Thomas Jefferson, Alexander Hamilton, and Henry Knox, respectively, to fill the executive posts, and Edmund Randolph became attorney general. These four men were called upon regularly by the president for advice, and they later formed the nucleus of what became known as the Cabinet, although no provision for such was made in the Constitution.

WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1789–1797

Hamilton's Financial Program

Treasury Secretary Alexander Hamilton, in his "Report on the Public Credit," proposed the funding of the national debt at face value, federal assumption of state debts, and the establishment of a national bank. In his "Report on Manufactures," Hamilton proposed an extensive program for federal stimulation of industrial development, through subsidies and tax incentives. The money needed to fund these programs, proposed Hamilton, would come from an excise tax on distillers and from tariffs on imports.

Opposition to Hamilton's Program

Jefferson and others objected to the funding proposal because it obviously would benefit speculators who had bought up state and confederation obligations at depressed prices, and now would profit handsomely by their redemption at face value. The original purchasers, they claimed, should at least share in the windfall. They opposed the tax program because it would fall primarily on the small farmers. They saw Hamilton's entire program as enriching a small elite group at the expense of the more worthy common citizen.

The Appearance of Political Parties

Political parties had been considered a detrimental force by the founding fathers, since they were seen to contribute to the rise of "factions." Thus no mention of such was made in the Constitution. But differences in philosophy very quickly began to drive the leaders of government into opposing camps—the Federalists and the Republicans.

Alexander Hamilton and the Federalists

Hamilton, as the theorist of the group who favored a strong central government, interpreted the Constitution as having vested extensive powers in the federal government. This "implied powers" stance claimed that the government was given all powers that were not expressly denied to it. This is the "broad" interpretation.

Thomas Jefferson and the Republicans

Jefferson and Madison held the view that any action not specifically permitted in the Constitution was thereby prohibited. This is the "strict" interpretation, and the Republicans opposed the establishment of Hamilton's national bank on this view of government. The Jeffersonian supporters, primarily under the guidance of James Madison, began to organize political groups in opposition to the Federalist program, and called themselves Republicans.

Sources of Partisan Support

The Federalists received their strongest support from the business and financial groups in the commercial centers of the Northeast and in the port cities of the South. The strength of the Republicans lay primarily in the rural and frontier areas of the South and West.

FOREIGN AND FRONTIER AFFAIRS

The French Revolution

When revolutionary France went to war with the European powers in 1792, Washington's response was a Proclamation of Neutrality. Citizen Genet violated that policy by trying to encourage popular support in this country for the French government, and embarrassed the president. American merchants traded with both sides, though the most lucrative business was carried on with the French West Indies. This brought retaliation by the British, who began to seize American merchant ships and force their crews into service with the British navy.

Jay's Treaty with Britain (1794)

John Jay negotiated a treaty with the British which attempted to settle the conflict at sea, as well as to curtail English agitation of their Indian allies on the western borders. The agreement actually settled few of the issues and merely bought time for the new nation in the worsening international conflict. Jay was severely criticized for his efforts, and was even hanged in effigy, but the Senate accepted the treaty as the best possible under the circumstances.

The Treaty with Spain (1795)

Thomas Pinckney was invited to the Spanish court to strengthen what Madrid perceived to be her deteriorating position on the American frontier. The result was the Pinckney Treaty, ratified by the Senate in 1796, in which the Spanish opened the Mississippi River to American traffic, including the right of deposit in the port city of New Orleans, and recognized the 31st parallel as the northern boundary of Florida.

Frontier Problems

Indian tribes on the Northwest and Southwest borders were increasingly resisting the encroachments on their lands by the American settlers. British authorities in Canada were encouraging the Indians in their depredations against frontier settlements.

In 1794, General Anthony Wayne decisively defeated the Indians at the Battle of Fallen Timbers, and the resulting Treaty of Greenville cleared the Ohio territory of Indian tribes.

INTERNAL PROBLEMS

The Whiskey Rebellion (1794)

Western farmers refused to pay the excise tax on whiskey which formed the backbone of Hamilton's revenue program. When a group of Pennsylvania farmers terrorized the tax collectors, President Washington sent out a federalized militia force of some 15,000 men, and the rebellion evaporated, thus strengthening the credibility of the young government.

Land Policy

As the original 13 states ceded their Western land claims to the new federal government, new states were organized and admitted to the Union, thus strengthening the ties of the Western farmers to the central government (Vermont, 1791; Kentucky, 1792; and Tennessee, 1796).

JOHN ADAMS' ADMINISTRATION, 1797–1801

The Election of 1796

John Adams was the Federalist candidate, and Thomas Jefferson ran under the opposition banner of the Republicans. Since Jefferson received the second highest number of electoral votes, he became vice president. Thus, a Federalist president and a Republican vice president served together, an obviously awkward arrangement. Adams was a brilliant lawyer and statesman, but too dogmatic and uncompromising to be an effective politician, and he endured a very frustrating and unproductive term in office.

The XYZ Affair

A three-man delegation was sent to France in 1798 to persuade the French to stop harassing American shipping. When they were solicited for a bribe by three subordinates of the French Minister Talleyrand, they indignantly refused, and their report of this insult produced outrage at home. The cry "millions for defense, but not one cent for tribute" was raised, and public feelings against the French ran high. Since Talleyrand's officials were unnamed in the dispatches, the incident became known as the "XYZ Affair."

Quasi-War, 1798–1799

This uproar moved Adams to suspend all trade with the French, and American ship captains were authorized to attack and capture armed French vessels. Congress created a Department of the Navy, and war seemed imminent. In 1800, the new French government, now under Napoleon, signed a new treaty, and the peace was restored.

REPRESSION AND PROTEST

The Alien and Sedition Acts

The elections in 1798 had increased the Federalist majorities in both houses of Congress, and they used their "mandate" to enact legislation to stifle foreign influences. The Alien Act raised new hurdles in the path of immigrants trying to obtain citizenship, and the Sedition Act widened the powers of the Adams administration to muzzle its newspaper critics. Both bills were aimed at actual or potential Republican opposition, and a number of editors were actually jailed for printing critical editorials.

The Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions

Republican leaders were convinced that the Alien and Sedition Acts were unconstitutional but the process of deciding on the constitutionality of federal laws was as yet undefined. Jefferson and Madison decided that the state legislatures should have that power, and they drew up a series of resolutions which were presented to the Kentucky and Virginia legislatures, respectively. They proposed that John Locke's "compact theory" be applied, which would empower the state bodies to "nullify" federal laws within those states. These resolutions were adopted, but only in those two states, and so the issue died, but a principle was put forward which was later to bear fruit in the nullification controversy of the 1830s and finally in the secession crisis of 1860-61.

THE REVOLUTION OF 1800

The Election

Thomas Jefferson and Aaron Burr ran on the Republican ticket, against John Adams and Charles Pinckney for the Federalists. The Republican candidates won handily, but both received the same number of electoral votes, thus throwing the selection of the president into the House of Representatives. After a lengthy deadlock, Alexander Hamilton threw his support to Jefferson, and Burr had to accept the vice presidency, the result obviously intended by the electorate. This increased the ill will between Hamilton and Burr and contributed to their famous duel in 1804.

Packing the Judiciary

The Federalist Congress passed a new Judiciary Act early in 1801 and President Adams filled the newly created vacancies with party supporters, many of them with last-minute commissions. John Marshall was then appointed Chief Justice of the U.S. Supreme Court, thus guaranteeing continuation of Federalist policies from the bench of the high court.

THE JEFFERSONIAN ERA

Thomas Jefferson and his Republican followers envisioned a society in vivid contrast to that of Hamilton and the Federalists. They dreamed of a nation of independent farmers, living under a central government that exercised a minimum of control over their lives and served merely to protect the individual liberties guaranteed by the Constitution. This agrarian paradise would be free from the industrial smoke and urban blight of Europe, and would serve as a beacon light of Enlightenment rationalism to a world searching for direction. That vision was to prove a mirage, and Jefferson was to preside over a nation that was growing more industrialized and urban, and which seemed to need an ever stronger hand at the presidential tiller.

The New Federal City

The city of Washington had been designed by Pierre L'Enfant and was briefly occupied by the Adams administration. When Jefferson moved in, it was still a straggling provincial town, with muddy streets and muggy summers. Most of its inhabitants moved out when Congress was not in session.

Jefferson the President

The new president tried to project an image of democratic simplicity, sometimes appearing so casually dressed as to appear slovenly. But he was a brilliant thinker and a shrewd politician. He appointed men to his cabinet who agreed with his political philosophy: James Madison as Secretary of State and Albert Gallatin to the Treasury.

CONFLICT WITH THE JUDGES

Marbury v. Madison

William Marbury, one of Adams' "midnight appointments," sued Secretary of State Madison to force delivery of his commission as a justice of the peace in the federal district. John Marshall, as Supreme Court justice, refused to rule on the request, claiming that the law which gave the Supreme Court jurisdiction over such matters had exceeded the Constitutional grant of powers and thus was unconstitutional. Marshall thus asserted the power of judicial review over federal legislation, a power which has become the foundation of the Supreme Court's check on the other two branches of government.

The Impeachment Episodes

Jefferson began a campaign to remove Federalist judges by impeachment. One district judge was removed, and proceedings were begun to impeach Supreme Court Justice Samuel Chase. That effort failed, but the threat had encouraged the judiciary to be less blatantly political.

DOMESTIC AFFAIRS

Enforcement of the Alien and Sedition Acts was immediately suspended, and the men convicted under those laws were released.

The federal bureaucracy was reduced and expenses were drastically cut. The size of the army was reduced and the expansion program of the navy was canceled.

The excise taxes were repealed and federal income was limited to land sale proceeds and customs duties. Federal land sale policy was liberalized, smaller parcels were authorized, and less cash was required—policies which benefited small farmers.

The Twelfth Amendment was adopted and ratified in 1804, ensuring that a tie vote between candidates of the same party could not again cause the confusion of the Jefferson-Burr affair.

Following the Constitutional mandate, the importation of slaves was stopped by law in 1808.

The Louisiana Purchase

Napoleon, in an effort to regain some of France's New World empire, had obtained the old French trans-Mississippi territory from Spain by political pressure. Jefferson sent a delegation to Paris to try to buy New Orleans, lest the new French officials close it to American traffic. Napoleon's defeat in Santo Domingo persuaded him that Louisiana could not be exploited, and indeed was now subject to potential American incursions. So he offered to sell the entire territory to the United States for $15 million. The American delegation accepted the offer in April 1803, even though they had no authority to buy more than the city of New Orleans.

The Constitutional Dilemma

Jefferson's stand on the strict interpretation of the Constitution would not permit him to purchase land without Congressional approval. But he accepted his advisors' counsel that his treaty-making powers included the authority to buy the land. Congress concurred, after the fact, and the purchase price was appropriated, thus doubling the territory of the nation overnight.

Exploring the West

Even before Napoleon's offer, Jefferson had authorized an expedition to explore the Western territory to the Pacific. The Lewis and Clark group, with 48 men, left St. Louis in 1804, and returned two years later with a wealth of scientific and anthropological information, and having strengthened the United States' claim to the Oregon territory. At the same time, Zebulon Pike and others had been traversing the middle parts of Louisiana and mapping the land.

The Essex Junto (1804)

Some New England Federalists saw the Western expansion as a threat to their position in the Union, and they tried to organize a secessionist movement. They courted Aaron Burr's support by offering to back him in a bid for the governorship of New York. Hamilton led the opposition to that campaign and when Burr lost the election, he challenged Hamilton to a duel, which resulted in Hamilton's death.

The Burr Conspiracy

Aaron Burr was now a fugitive, without a political future. He became involved in a scheme to take Mexico from Spain and establish a new nation in the West.

In the fall of 1806, he led a group of armed men down the Mississippi River system toward New Orleans. He was arrested in Natchez and tried for treason in Richmond, Virginia. Judge John Marshall's decision for acquittal helped to narrow the legal definition of treason. Jefferson's attempts to influence and prejudice the trial were justified by his claims of "executive privilege," but they were fruitless.

John Randolph and the Yazoo Claims

Jefferson's Republican opponents, under the leadership of his cousin John Randolph of Roanoke, called themselves the "Quids." They accused the president of complicity in the Yazoo Land controversy which had followed Georgia's cession of her western lands to the federal government. This created serious strife within the Republican party and weakened Jefferson's effectiveness in his second term.

INTERNATIONAL INVOLVEMENT

The Barbary War

In 1801 Jefferson sent a naval force to the Mediterranean to break the practice of the North African Muslim rulers of exacting tribute from Western merchant ships. Intermittent undeclared war dragged on until 1805, with no decisive settlement.

The Napoleonic Wars

War continued in Europe between France under Napoleon and the European powers led by Britain. Both sides tried to prevent trade with their enemies by neutral powers, especially the United States. Napoleon's "Continental System" was answered by Britain's "Orders in Council." American ships were seized by both sides and American sailors were "impressed" into the British navy.

The Chesapeake-Leopard Affair (1807)

The British ship H.M.S. *Leopard* stopped the U.S.S. *Chesapeake* off the Chesapeake Bay, and four alleged British deserters were taken off. Public outcry for war followed, and Jefferson was hard pressed to remain neutral.

The Embargo of 1807

Jefferson's response to the cry for war was to draft a law prohibiting American ships from leaving port for any foreign destination, thus avoiding contact with vessels of either belligerent. The result was economic depression, particularly in the heavily commercial Northeast. This proved to be his most unpopular policy of both terms in office.

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1809–1817

The Election of 1808

Republican James Madison won the election over Federalist Charles Pinckney, but the Federalists gained seats in both houses of the Congress. The embargo-induced depression was obviously a heavy political liability, and Madison was to face growing pressures to deal with the international crisis. He was a brilliant man but with few social or political skills. His greatest asset was probably his wife, the vivacious and energetic Dolly.

The War of 1812

Congress had passed a modified embargo just before Madison's inauguration, known as the Non-Intercourse Act, which opened trade to all nations except France and Britain. When it expired in 1810, it was replaced by Macon's Bill No. 2, which gave the president power to prohibit trade with any nation when they violated our neutrality.

The Indian tribes of the Northwest and the Mississippi Valley were resentful of the government's policy of pressured removal to the West, and the British authorities in Canada were exploiting their discontent by encouraging border raids against the American settlements.

The Shawnee chief Tecumseh set out to unite the Mississippi Valley tribes and reestablish Indian dominance in the Old Northwest. With the help of his brother, the Prophet, and the timely New Madrid earthquake, he persuaded a sizeable force of warriors to join him. On November 11, 1811, General William Henry Harrison destroyed Tecumseh's village on Tippecanoe Creek and dashed his hopes for an Indian confederacy.

Southern frontiersmen coveted Spanish Florida, which included the southern ranges of Alabama, Mississippi, and Louisiana. They resented Spanish support of Indian depredations against the borderlands, and since Spain was Britain's ally, they saw Britain as the background cause of their problems.

The Congress in 1811 contained a strong pro-war group called the War Hawks, led by Henry Clay and John C. Calhoun. They gained control of both houses and began agitating for war with the British. On June 1, 1812, President Madison asked for a declaration of war, and Congress complied.

A three-pronged invasion of Canada met with disaster on all three fronts, and the Americans fell back to their own borders. At sea, American privateers and frigates, including "Old Ironsides," scored early victories over British warships, but were soon driven back into their home ports and blockaded by the powerful British ships-of-the-line.

Admiral Oliver Hazard Perry constructed a fleet of ships on Lake Erie and on September 10, 1813, defeated a British force at Put-In Bay and established control of the lake. His flagship flew the banner, "Don't Give Up the Ship." This victory opened the way for William Henry Harrison to invade Canada in October and defeat a combination British and Indian force at the Battle of the Thames.

The War in the Southwest

Andrew Jackson led a force of frontier militia into Alabama in pursuit of Creek Indians who had massacred the white inhabitants of Fort Mims. On March 27, 1814, he crushed the Indians at Horseshoe Bend, and then seized the Spanish garrison at Pensacola.

British Strategy Changes, 1814

A British force came down Lake Champlain and met defeat at Plattsburgh, New York, in September. A British armada sailed up the Chesapeake Bay and sacked and burned Washington, D.C. They then proceeded up the Bay toward Baltimore, which was guarded by Fort McHenry. That fort held firm through the British bombardment, inspiring Key's "Star Spangled Banner."

The Battle of New Orleans

The most serious British threat came at the port of New Orleans. A powerful invasion force was sent there to close the mouth of the Mississippi River, but Andrew Jackson decisively defeated it with a polyglot army of frontiersmen, blacks, creoles and pirates. The battle was fought on January 8, 1815, two weeks after a peace treaty had been signed at the city of Ghent, in Belgium.

The Treaty of Ghent, Christmas Eve 1814

With the European wars ended, the major causes for the dispute with Britain had ceased to be important, so both sides were eager for peace. The treaty provided for the acceptance of the status quo at the beginning of hostilities and so both sides restored their wartime conquests to the other.

The Hartford Convention, December 1814

The Federalists had become increasingly a minority party. They vehemently opposed the war and Daniel Webster and other New England Congressmen consistently blocked the administration's efforts to prosecute the war effort. On December 15, 1814, delegates from the New England states met in Hartford, Connecticut, and drafted a set of resolutions suggesting nullification —and even secession—if their interests were not protected against the growing influence of the South and the West.

Soon after the convention adjourned, the news of the victory at New Orleans was announced and their actions were discredited. The Federalist party ceased to be a political force from this point.

POST-WAR DEVELOPMENTS

Protective Tariff (1816)

The first protective tariff in the nation's history was passed in 1816 to slow the flood of cheap British manufactures into the country.

Rush-Bagot Treaty (1817)

An agreement was reached in 1817 between Britain and the United States to stop maintaining armed fleets on the Great Lakes. This first "disarmament" agreement is still in effect.

Jackson's Florida Invasion (1817)

Indian troubles in the newly acquired areas of western Florida prompted General Andrew Jackson, acting under dubious authority, to invade Spanish East Florida and to hang two British subjects whom he suspected of selling guns and supplies to the Indians. Then he re-occupied Pensacola and raised the American flag, a clear violation of international law. Only wide public support prevented his arrest and prosecution by the government.

Indian Policy

The government began to systematically pressure all the Indian tribes remaining in the East to cede their lands and accept new homes west of the Mississippi, a policy which met with disappointing results. Most declined the offer.

The Barbary Wars (1815)

In response to continued piracy and extortion in the Mediterranean, Congress declared war on the Muslim state of Algiers in 1815 and dispatched a naval force to the area under Stephen Decatur. He quickly defeated the North African pirates and forced them to pay indemnities for past tribute they had exacted from American ship captains. This action finally gained the United States free access to the Mediterranean basin.

The Adams-Onis Treaty (1819)

Spain had decided to sell the remainder of the Florida territory to the Americans before they took it anyway. Under this agreement, the Spanish surrendered all their claims to the territory and drew the boundary of Mexico all the way to the Pacific. The United States in exchange agreed to assume $5 million in debts owed to American merchants.

The Monroe Doctrine

Around 1810, national revolutions had begun in Latin America, so the colonial populations refused to accept the rule of the new Napoleonic governments in Europe. Leaders like San Martin and Bolivar had declared independence for their countries and, after Napoleon's fall in 1814, were defying the restored Hapsburg and Bourbon rulers of Europe.

British and American leaders feared that the new European governments would try to restore the former New World colonies to their erstwhile royal

owners.

In December 1823, President Monroe included in his annual message to Congress a statement that the American hemisphere was "henceforth not to be considered as subjects for future colonization by any European powers." Thus began a 30-year period of freedom from serious foreign involvement for the United States.

INTERNAL DEVELOPMENT, 1820–1830

The years following the War of 1812 were years of rapid economic and social development. Too rapid, in fact, and they were followed by a severe depression in 1819. But this slump was temporary, and it became obvious that the country was moving rapidly from its agrarian origins toward an industrial, urban future. Westward expansion accelerated, and the mood of the people became very positive. In fact, these years were referred to as the "Era of Good Feelings."

The Monroe Presidency, 1817–1823

James Monroe, the last of the "Virginia Dynasty," had been hand-picked by the retiring Madison, and he was elected with only one electoral vote opposed: a symbol of national unity.

Post-War Boom

The years following the war were characterized by a high foreign demand for American cotton, grain, and tobacco; commerce flourished. The Second National Bank, through its overly liberal credit policies, proved to be an inflationary influence, and the price level rose rapidly.

The Depression of 1819

Inventories of British manufactured goods had built up during the war, and English merchants began to dump their products on the American market at cut-rate prices. American manufacturers suffered from this influx of imports. The U.S. Bank tried to slow the inflationary spiral by tightening credit, and a sharp business slump resulted.

This depression was most severe in the newly expanding West, partly because of its economic dependency, partly because of heavy speculation in Western lands.

THE MARSHALL COURT

John Marshall delivered the majority opinions in a number of critical decisions in these formative years, all of which served to strengthen the power of the federal government and restrict the powers of state governments.

Marbury v. Madison (1803)

As we mentioned earlier, this case established the precedent of the Supreme Court's power to rule on the constitutionality of federal laws.

Fletcher v. Peck (1810)

The Georgia legislature had issued extensive land grants in a shady deal with the Yazoo Land Company. A subsequent legislative session repealed that action because of the corruption that had attended the original grant. The Court decided that the original action by the Georgia Assembly had

constituted a valid contract which could not be broken regardless of the corruption which had followed. This was the first time a state law was voided on the grounds that it violated a principle of the U.S. Constitution.

Dartmouth College v. Woodward (1819)

The quarrel between the president and the trustees of the New Hampshire college became a political issue when the Republicans backed the president and the Federalists supported the trustees. The president tried to change Dartmouth from a private to a public institution by having its charter revoked. The Court ruled that the charter, though issued by the king during colonial days, still constituted a contract, and thus could not be arbitrarily changed or revoked without the consent of both parties. The result of this decision was to severely limit the power of state governments to control the corporation, which was the emerging form of business organization.

McCulloch v. Maryland (1819)

The state of Maryland had tried to levy a tax on the Baltimore branch of the Bank of the United States, and so protect the competitive position of its own state banks. Marshall's ruling declared that no state has the right to control an agency of the federal government. Since "the power to tax is the power to destroy," such state action violated Congress' "implied powers" to establish and operate a national bank.

Gibbons v. Ogden (1824)

The State of New York had granted a monopoly to Ogden to operate a steamboat between New York and New Jersey. Gibbons obtained a Congressional permit to operate a steamboat line in the same waters. When Ogden sued to maintain his monopoly, the New York courts ruled in his favor. Gibbons' appeal went to the Supreme Court. John Marshall ruled that commerce included navigation, and that only Congress has the right to regulate commerce among states. Thus, the state-granted monopoly was void.

The Missouri Compromise (1820)

The Missouri Territory, the first to be organized from the Louisiana Purchase, applied for statehood in 1819. Since the Senate membership was evenly divided between slave-holding and free states at that time, the admission of a new state was obviously going to give the voting advantage either to the North or to the South. Slavery was already well-established in the new territory, so the Southern states were confident in their advantage, until Representative Tallmadge of New York proposed an amendment to the bill which would prohibit slavery in Missouri.

The Southern outcry was immediate, and the ensuing debate grew hot. The Senate was deadlocked.

Henry Clay's Compromise Solution

As the debate dragged on, the northern territory of Massachusetts applied for admission as the state of Maine. This offered a way out of the dilemma, and House Speaker Clay formulated a package that both sides could accept. The two admission bills were combined, with Maine coming in free and Missouri as a slave state. To make the package palatable for the House, a provision was added to prohibit slavery in the remainder of the Louisiana Territory, north of the southern boundary of Missouri (latitude 36 degrees

30'). Clay guided this bill through the House and it became law, thus maintaining the balance of power.

The debates in Congress had reminded everyone of the deep division between the sections, and some saw it as evidence of trouble to come. Thomas Jefferson, in retirement at Monticello, remarked that the news from Washington was like a "fire-ball in the night."

THE EXPANDING ECONOMY

The Growing Population

Population continued to double every 25 years. The migration of people to the West increased in volume and by 1840 over one-third of all Americans lived west of the Alleghenies. Immigration from abroad was not significant until 1820; then it began to increase rapidly, mostly from the British Isles.

The Farming Sector

As markets for farm products grew in the expanding cities, coupled with liberal land sale policies by the federal government, the growing of staple agricultural crops became more profitable. More and more land was put into cultivation, and the prevailing system of clearing and planting became more wasteful of timber as well as of the fertility of the land.

The Cotton Kingdom

The new lands in the Southwest, then made up by Alabama, Mississippi, Louisiana, and Texas, proved ideal for the production of short-staple cotton. Eli Whitney's invention of the cotton "gin" solved the problem of separating the seeds from the fibers, and the cotton boom was under way.

The growing market for food and work animals in the cotton South provided the opportunity for the new Western farmers to specialize in those items and further stimulated the westward movement.

Fishing

New England and Chesapeake fishing proved very profitable. Deep-sea whaling became a significant enterprise, particularly from the Massachusetts/Rhode Island ports.

Lumbering

The expanding population created a need for building materials, and timber remained a profitable export item. Shipbuilding thrived in a number of Eastern Seaboard and Gulf Coast ports.

Fur Trade

John Jacob Astor and others opened up business all the way to the Northwest coast. "Mountain men" probed deeper and deeper into the Rocky Mountain ranges in search of beavers.

Trade with the Spanish

The Santa Fe Trail, which ran from New Mexico northeast to Independence, Missouri, became an active trading corridor, opening up the Spanish territories to American migration and influence, and also providing the basis for future territorial claims.

THE TRANSPORTATION REVOLUTION

The first half of the nineteenth century witnessed an extraordinary sequence of inventions and innovations which produced a true revolution in transport and communications.

River Traffic

The steamboats built by Robert Fulton, the *Clermont* in 1807 and the *New Orleans* in 1811, transformed river transport. As shipment times and freight rates both plummeted, regular steam service was established on all the major river systems.

Roadbuilding

By 1818, the National Road, which was built with federal funds, had been completed from Cumberland, Maryland to Wheeling, Virginia, linking the Potomac with the Ohio River. A network of privately-owned toll roads (turnpikes) began to reach out from every sizeable city. They were usually built for only a few miles out, and they never accounted for a significant share of the total freight tonnage moved, but they formed the nucleus for a growing road system in the new nation.

The Canal Era

The Erie Canal, linking the Hudson River at Albany, New York, with Lake Erie, was completed in 1825 and became the first and most successful example. It was followed by a rash of construction until canals linked every major waterway system east of the Mississippi River.

Canals were the first development projects to receive large amounts of public funding. They ran east-west and so tied the new West to the old East, with later implications for sectional divisions.

The Rise of New York City

Its location as a transport hub, coupled with innovations in business practices, boosted New York City into a primary trade center, and America's largest city by 1830. One such innovation was the packet boat, which operated on a guaranteed schedule and helped to rationalize commerce, both internal and international.

New York soon dominated the domestic market for cotton, a situation which progressively reduced the South to the status of an economic colony.

INDUSTRIALIZATION

The Rise of the Factory System

Samuel Slater had migrated from Britain in 1789, having served as an apprentice under inventor Richard Arkwright and then as a mill manager. He used his knowledge to build the first successful cotton-spinning mill in this country. The first cotton manufacturing plant in the world to include all the elements of manufacturing under one roof was built in Boston in 1813.

Eli Whitney's development and application of the principle of interchangeable parts, first used in his firearms factories, helped to speed the growth of mass-production operations.

The expansion of markets in Latin America and the Far East, as well as domestic markets, both resulted from and helped to develop the factory system.

Manufacturers and industrialists found it necessary to organize banks, insurance companies, and real estate firms to meet the needs of their growing business organizations.

The Corporation

The corporate form with its limited liability and its potential for raising and utilizing large amounts of capital, became the typical type of business organization. By the 1830s, most states had enacted general laws for incorporating.

The Labor Supply

In the early days, the "Lowell System" became a popular way to staff the New England factories. Young women were hired from the surrounding countryside, brought to town and housed in dormitories in the mill towns. They were paid low wages for hard work under poor conditions, but they were only working for a short time, to earn a dowry or help out with the family income, so they soon went back home. This "rotating labor supply" was ideal for the owners, since the girls were not motivated to agitate for better wages and conditions.

Labor was always in short supply in this country, so the system depended on technology to increase production. This situation always placed a premium on innovation in machinery and technique.

The Growth of Unions

The factory system separated the owners from the workers and thus depersonalized the workplace. It also made the skilled artisan less important, since the repetitive processes of the mill could be performed by relatively unskilled laborers.

Although the first organized strike took place in 1828, in Paterson, New Jersey, by child workers, periodic economic downturns helped keep workers relatively dependent and passive until the 1850s.

A major goal of early unions was the 10-hour day, and this effort sparked a period of growth in organized labor which was later effectively quenched by the depression of 1837.

EDUCATIONAL DEVELOPMENT

The Growth of Public Schools

Before 1815, there were no public schools to speak of in this country. Some states had endorsed the idea of free schools for the people, but they shrank from the task of financing such a system. Jefferson had outlined such a plan for Virginia, but it came to nothing.

Schools were primarily sponsored by private institutions—corporate academies in the Northeast and religious institutions in the South and mid-Atlantic states. Most were aristocratic in orientation, training the nation's leaders, and few had any interest in schooling the children of the poor.

Women were likewise considered unfit for academic training, and those female schools which existed concentrated on homemaking skills and the fine arts which would make "ornaments" of the young ladies enrolled.

The New York Free School, one of those rare examples of a school for the poor, experimented for a time with the Lancastrian system, in which older students tutored the younger ones, thus stretching the scarce budget dollars.

Higher Education

Although the number of institutions of higher learning increased sharply in the early years of the nineteenth century, none was truly public. All relied upon high tuition rates for survival, so less than one in ten young men, and no women, ever attended a college or university.

The training these schools provided was very limited as well. The only professional training was in theology, and only a scattering of colleges offered brief courses of study in law or medicine. The University of Pennsylvania, for example, offered one year of medical schooling, after which a person could obtain a license to practice the healing arts. Needless to say, medical practice was quite primitive.

The Growth of Cultural Nationalism

Jeffersonian Americans tried to demonstrate their newly won independence by championing a strong sense of cultural nationalism, a feeling that their young republic represented the "final stage" of civilization, the "last great hope of mankind."

Literary Nationalism

Although most Americans had access to one or more newspapers, the market for native authors was quite limited. Publishers preferred to print works from British authors or to import books from Europe. A few Americans who were willing to pay the costs of publishing their own works found a growing number of readers.

Significant American Authors

Washington Irving was by far the best-known native writer in America. He excelled in the telling of folk tales and local color stories, and is best remembered for his portraits of Hudson River characters.

Mercy Otis Warren, the revolutionary pamphleteer, published a multi-volume *History of the Revolution* in 1805.

"Parson" Mason Weems wrote the best-seller *Life of Washington* in 1806, which was short on historical accuracy but long on nationalistic hero-worship.

Educational Literature

Early schoolbooks, like Noah Webster's "Blue Backed Speller," as well as his dictionary of the "American" language, reflected the intense desire to promote patriotism and a feeling of national identity.

DEVELOPMENTS IN RELIGIOUS LIFE

The Post-Revolution Years

The Revolutionary War weakened the position of the traditional, established churches. The doctrines of the Enlightenment became very popular, and its religious expression, deism, gained a considerable following among the educated classes. Rationalism, Unitarianism, and Universalism all saw a period of popularity. Thomas Paine's exposition of the rationalist posture, *The Age of Reason*, attacked the traditional Christian values and was read widely.

The Second Great Awakening

The reaction to the trend toward rationalism, the decline in church membership, and the lack of piety was a renewal of personal, heart-felt evangelicalism. It began in 1801 at Cane Ridge, Kentucky, in the first "camp meeting."

As the revival spread, its characteristics became more uniform—an emphasis on personal salvation, an emotional response to God's grace, an individualistic faith. Women took a major part in the movement. Blacks were also heavily involved, and the individualistic emphasis created unrest among their ranks, particularly in the slave-holding South.

The revival produced strong nationalistic overtones, and the Protestant ideas of a "called nation" were to flourish later in some of the Manifest Destiny doctrines of expansionism. The social overtones of this religious renewal were to spark the great reform movements of the 1830s and 1840s.

5. JACKSONIAN DEMOCRACY AND WESTWARD EXPANSION (1824–1850)

THE JACKSONIAN DEMOCRACY, 1829–1841

While the "Age of Jackson" did not bring perfect political, social, or economic equality to all Americans, it did mark a transformation in the political life of the nation that attracted the notice of European travelers and observers. Alexis de Tocqueville observed an "equality of condition" here that existed nowhere else in the world, and an egalitarian spirit among the people that was unique. Certainly the electorate had become broadened so that all white males had access to the polls, even if blacks and women were still outside the system. It was, in that sense, the "age of the common man." As to whether Andrew Jackson and his party were actually working for the good of those common men is another matter.

THE ELECTION OF 1824

The Expansion of the Electorate

Most states had already eliminated the property qualifications for voting before the campaigns for this election began. The new Massachusetts state constitution of 1820 had led the way in this liberalization of the franchise, and most Northern states followed soon after, usually with some conservative opposition, but not violent reactions. In Rhode Island, Thomas Dorr led a bloodless "rebellion" in an effort to expand the franchise in that state, and though he was briefly imprisoned for his efforts, the incident led the conservative legislature to relent and grant the vote to non-property owners. The movement for reform was much slower in the Southern states.

Free blacks were excluded from the polls across the South, and in most of the Northern states. In those areas where they had held the franchise, they

were gradually excluded from the social and economic mainstream as well as from the political arena in the early years of this period.

National elections had never attracted much enthusiasm until 1824. Legislative caucuses had made the presidential nominations and kept the ruling cliques in power by excluding the voters from the process. But this year the system failed, and the caucuses were bypassed.

The members of the electoral college were now being almost universally elected by the people, rather than by the state legislatures, as in the early days.

The Candidates

Secretary of the Treasury William H. Crawford of Georgia was the pick of the Congressional caucus. Secretary of State John Quincy Adams held the job which traditionally had been the steppingstone to the executive office. Speaker of the House Henry Clay presented the only coherent program to the voters, the "American System," which provided a high tariff on imports to finance an extensive internal improvement package. Andrew Jackson of Tennessee presented himself as a war hero from the 1812 conflict. All four candidates claimed to be Republicans.

The Election

Jackson won 43 percent of the popular vote, but the four-way split meant that he only received 38 percent of the electoral votes. Under the provisions of the Twelfth Amendment, the top three candidates were voted on by the House of Representatives. This left Henry Clay out of the running, and he threw his support to Adams. The votes had no sooner been counted, when the new president, Adams, appointed Henry Clay as his Secretary of State.

Andrew Jackson and his supporters immediately cried "foul!" and accused Clay of making a deal for his vote. The rallying cry of "corrupt bargain" became the impetus for their immediate initiation of the campaign for the 1828 election.

The Adams Administration

The new president pushed for an active federal government in areas like internal improvements and Indian affairs. These policies proved unpopular in an age of increasing sectional jealousies and conflicts over states' rights.

Adams was frustrated at every turn by his Jacksonian opposition, and his unwillingness, or inability, to compromise further antagonized his political enemies. For example, his refusal to endorse and enforce the Creek Indians' land cession to the state of Georgia was negated by their recession of their lands under pressure from Georgia's Jacksonian government.

John C. Calhoun and Nullification

In 1828, Congress passed a new tariff bill which was originally supported by Southern congressmen in order to embarrass the administration. The finished bill, however, included higher import duties for many goods which were bought by Southern planters, so they bitterly denounced the law as the "Tariff of Abominations."

John C. Calhoun was serving as Adams' vice president, so to protest the tariff and still protect his position, he anonymously published the "South Carolina Exposition and Protest," which outlined his theory of the "concurrent majority": a federal law which was deemed harmful to the

interests of an individual state could be declared null and void within that state by a convention of the people. Thus, a state holding a minority position could ignore a law enacted by the majority which they considered unconstitutional (shades of Thomas Jefferson).

The Election of 1828

Adams' supporters now called themselves the National Republicans, and Jackson's party ran as the Democratic Republicans. Andrew Jackson had aggressively campaigned since his defeat in the House in 1825.

It was a dirty campaign. Adams' people accused Jackson of adultery and of the murder of several militiamen who had been executed for desertion during the War of 1812. Jackson's followers in turn defamed Adams and his programs and accused him of extravagance with public funds.

When the votes were counted, Jackson had won 56 percent of the popular vote and swept 178 of the 261 electoral votes. John Calhoun was elected vice president.

Andrew Jackson as President

Jackson was popular with the common man. He seemed to be the prototype of the self-made Westerner: rough-hewn, violent, vindictive, with few ideas but strong convictions. He ignored his appointed cabinet officers and relied instead on the counsel of his "Kitchen Cabinet," a group of partisan supporters who had the ear and the confidence of the president.

Jackson expressed the conviction that government operations could be performed by untrained, common folk, and he threatened the dismissal of large numbers of government employees, to replace them with his supporters. Actually, he talked more about this "spoils system" than he acted on it.

He exercised his veto power more than any other president before him. A famous example was the Maysville Road, a project in Kentucky which would require a federal subsidy. Jackson opposed it because it would exist only within the boundaries of a single state.

Jacksonian Indian Policy

Jackson supported the removal of all Indian tribes to west of the Mississippi River. The Indian Removal Act in 1830 provided for federal enforcement of that process.

The portion of the Cherokee Nation which occupied northern Georgia claimed to be a sovereign political entity within the boundaries of that state. The Supreme Court supported that claim in its decision in *Worcester v. Georgia* (1832), but President Jackson refused to enforce the court's decision. The result of this policy was the Trail of Tears, the forced march, under U.S. Army escort, of thousands of Cherokees to the West. A quarter or more of the Indians, mostly women and children, perished on the journey.

THE WEBSTER-HAYNE DEBATE (1830)

Federal Land Policy

The method of disposing of government land raised sectional differences. Westerners wanted cheap lands available to the masses. Northeasterners opposed this policy because it would lure away their labor supply and drive up

wages. Southerners supported the West, hoping to weaken the ties between East and West.

The Senate Confrontation

Senator Robert Hayne of South Carolina made a speech in support of cheap land and he used Calhoun's anti-tariff arguments to support his position. In his remarks, he referred to the possibility of nullification.

Daniel Webster's famous replies to this argument moved the debate from the issue of land policy to the nature of the Union and states' rights within it. Webster argued for the Union as indissoluble and sovereign over the individual states. His concluding statements have become a part of our rhetorical heritage: "It is, Sir, the people's Constitution, the people's government, made for the people, made by the people, and answerable to the people… Liberty and Union, now and for ever, one and inseparable!"

The Second Nullification Crisis

The final split between Andrew Jackson and his vice president, John C. Calhoun, came over the new Tariff of 1832, and over Mrs. Calhoun's snub of Peggy Eaton, the wife of Secretary of War John Eaton.

Mrs. Eaton was a commoner, and the aristocratic Mrs. Calhoun refused to include her on the guest lists for the Washington parties. Jackson, no doubt remembering the slights to his own dear Rachel, defended his friends Peggy and John, and demanded that they be included in the social life of the capitol.

Jackson was a defender of states' rights, but within the context of a dominant Union. When he supported the higher rates of the new tariff, Calhoun resigned his office in a huff and went home to South Carolina. There he composed an Ordinance of Nullification, which was duly approved by a special convention, and the customs officials were ordered to stop collecting the duties at the port of Charleston.

Jackson's response was immediate and decisive. He obtained a Force Bill from Congress (1833), which empowered him to use federal troops to enforce the collection of the taxes. And he suggested the possibility of hanging Calhoun. At the same time, he offered a gradual reduction in the levels of the duties. Calhoun backed down, both sides claimed victory, and the crisis was averted.

THE WAR ON THE BANK

The Controversy

The Bank of the United States had operated under the direction of Nicholas Biddle since 1823. He was a cautious man, and his conservative economic policy enforced conservatism among the state and private banks—which many bankers resented. Many of the Bank's enemies opposed it simply because it was big and powerful. Many still disputed its constitutionality.

The Election of 1832

Andrew Jackson freely voiced his antagonism toward the Bank and his intention to destroy it. During the campaign for the presidency in 1832, Henry Clay and Daniel Webster promoted a bill to recharter the Bank, even though its charter did not expire until 1836. They feared that Jackson would gain support over time and could kill the Bank as a parting shot as he retired. The

Congress passed the recharter bill, but Jackson vetoed it. This left that institution a lame duck agency.

Jackson soundly defeated Henry Clay in the presidential race and he considered his victory a mandate from the people to destroy the Bank. His first move was to remove the federal government's deposits from Biddle's vaults and distribute the funds to various state and local banks, called by his critics the "pet banks." Biddle responded by tightening up on credit and calling in loans, hoping to embarrass the government and force a withdrawal by Jackson. Jackson stood firm and the result was a financial recession.

The Panic of 1837

When Biddle was forced to relent through pressure from business interests, the economy immediately rebounded. With credit policies relaxed, inflation began to pick up. The government contributed to this expansion by offering millions of acres of western land for sale to settlers at low prices.

In 1836, Jackson ordered a distribution of surplus funds and thus helped to further fuel the inflationary rise in prices. Finally, even Jackson recognized the danger, and tried to slow the spiral by issuing the Specie Circular, which required payment for public land in hard money—no more paper or credit. Depression quickly followed this move.

The business recession lasted well into the 1840s. The national economy was by this time so tied in with international business and finance that the downturn affected the entire Atlantic community, and was in turn worsened by the global impact. But most Americans blamed everyone in power, including Jackson. This disillusionment helped to initiate and intensify the reform movement which so occupied this nation in the nineteenth century's second quarter.

The Election of 1836

Jackson had hand-picked his Democratic successor, Martin Van Buren of New York. The Whigs ran three regional candidates in hopes of upsetting the Jacksonians. The Whig party had emerged from the ruins of the National Republicans and other groups who opposed Jackson's policies. The name was taken from the British Whig tradition, which simply refers to the "opposition."

Van Buren's Presidency

Van Buren, known as Old Kinderhook (O.K.), inherited all the problems and resentments generated by his mentor. He spent most of his term in office dealing with the financial chaos left by the death of the Second Bank. The best he could do was to eventually persuade Congress to establish an Independent Treasury to handle government funds. It began functioning in 1840.

THE ELECTION OF 1840

The Candidates

The Whigs nominated William Henry Harrison, "Old Tippecanoe," Western Indian fighter. Their choice for vice president was John Tyler, a former Democrat from Virginia. The Democrats put up Van Buren again, but they could not agree on a vice presidential candidate, so they ran no one.

The Campaign

This election saw the largest voter turnout to date. The campaign was a dramatic one. The Whigs stressed the depression and the opulent lifestyle of the incumbent in contrast to the simple "log cabin" origins of their candidate.

Harrison won a narrow popular victory, but swept 80 percent of the electoral vote. Unfortunately for the Whigs, President Harrison died only a month after the inauguration, having served the shortest term in presidential history.

THE MEANING OF JACKSONIAN POLITICS

The Party System

The Age of Jackson was the beginning of the modern two-party system. Popular politics, based on emotional appeal, became the accepted style. The practice of meeting in mass conventions to nominate national candidates for office was established during these Jackson years.

The Strong Executive

Jackson, more than any president before him, used his office to dominate his party and the government to such an extent that he was called "King Andrew" by his critics.

The Changing Emphasis Towards States' Rights

Andrew Jackson supported the authority of the states against the national government, but he drew the line at the concept of nullification. He advocated a strong union made up of sovereign states, and that created some dissonance in his political thinking.

The Supreme Court reflected this shift in thinking in its decision on the Charles River Bridge case in 1837, delivered by Jackson's new Chief Justice, Roger Taney. He ruled that a state could abrogate a grant of monopoly if that original grant had ceased to be in the best interests of the community. This was clearly a reversal of the Dartmouth College principal of the sanctity of contracts, if the general welfare was involved.

Party Philosophies

The Democrats opposed big government and the requirements of modernization: urbanization and industrialization. Their support came from the working classes, small merchants, and small farmers.

The Whigs promoted government participation in commercial and industrial development, the encouragement of banking and corporations, and a cautious approach to westward expansion. Their support came largely from Northern business and manufacturing interests, and from large Southern planters. Calhoun, Clay, and Webster dominated the Whig party during these early decades of the nineteenth century.

Tocqueville's Democracy in America

Alexis de Tocqueville, a French civil servant, traveled to this country in the early 1830s to study the American prison system, which was one of the more innovative systems in the world. His book *Democracy in America*, published in 1835, was the result of his observations, and it reflected a broad interest in the entire spectrum of the American democratic process and the society in which it had developed. His insightful commentary on the American way of

life has proven to be almost prophetic in many respects, and provides the modern reader with an outsider's objective view of what this country was like in the Age of Jackson.

ANTEBELLUM CULTURE: AN AGE OF REFORM

The American people in 1840 found themselves living in an era of transition and instability. The society was changing and traditional values were being challenged. The responses to this uncertainty were two-fold: a movement toward reform and a rising desire for order and control.

We have a fairly vivid picture of what Americans were like in this period of time, from accounts by hundreds of foreign visitors who came to this country to observe our society-in-the-making. These observers noted a restless population, always on the move, compulsive joiners of associations, committed to progress, hard-working and hard-playing, driven relentlessly by a desire for wealth. They believed in and talked about equality, but the reality was that the system was increasingly creating a class society. Americans seemed to lean toward violence, and mob incidents were common.

The Reform Impulse: Major Sources of Reform

Romanticism held a belief in the innate goodness of man, thus in his improvability. This movement had its roots in turn-of-the-century Europe, and it emphasized the emotions and feelings over rationality. It appeared as a reaction against the excesses of the Enlightenment which had put strong emphasis on reason, to the exclusion of feelings.

There was also a growing need perceived for stability and control over the social order and the forces which were threatening the traditional values.

Both of these major streams of reform activity were centered in the Northeast, especially in New England.

THE FLOWERING OF LITERATURE

Northern Writers and Themes

James Fenimore Cooper's *Leatherstocking Tales* emphasized the independence of the individual, and also the importance of a stable social order.

Walt Whitman's *Leaves of Grass* likewise celebrated the importance of individualism.

Henry Wadsworth Longfellow's epic poems *Evangeline* and *Hiawatha* spoke of the value of tradition, and the impact of the past on the present.

Herman Melville's classic stories—*Typee, Billy Budd, Moby Dick*—all lashed out at the popular optimism of his day. He believed in the Puritan doctrine of original sin and his characters spoke of the mystery of life.

Historian and nationalist Francis Parkman vividly portrayed the struggle for empire between France and Britain in his *Montcalm and Wolfe*. *The Oregon Trail* described the opening frontier of the Rocky Mountains and beyond.

James Russell Lowell, poet and editor, wrote the *Bigelow Papers* and the *Commemoration Ode*, honoring Civil War casualties of Harvard.

A writer of romances and tales, Nathaniel Hawthorne is best remembered for his criticism of Puritan bigotry in *The Scarlet Letter*.

Southern Writers and Themes

Author of *The Raven*, *Tamerlane* and many tales of terror and darkness, Edgar Allan Poe explored the world of the spirit and the emotions.

South Carolina poet William Gilmore Simms changed from a staunch nationalist to a defender of the slave system and the uniqueness of the Southern way of life.

A Georgia storyteller, Augustus Longstreet used vulgar, earthy language and themes to paint the common folk of the South.

THE FINE ARTS

Artists and Themes

The Hudson River School was a group of landscape painters who portrayed the awesomeness of nature in America, the new world. George Catlin painted the American Indian, whom he saw as a vanishing race. John James Audubon painted the wide array of American birds and animals.

Music and the Theater

The theater was popular, but generally condemned by the church and conservatives as a "vagabond profession." The only original American contribution was the blackface minstrel show.

THE TRANSCENDENTALISTS

Major Themes

This movement had its origins in Concord, Massachusetts. The basic objective of these thinkers was to transcend the bounds of the intellect and to strive for emotional understanding, to attain unity with God, without the help of the institutional church, which they saw as reactionary and stifling to self-expression.

Major Writers

Ralph Waldo Emerson, essayist and lecturer, authored "Nature" and "Self-Reliance." Henry David Thoreau, best known for his *Walden*, repudiated the repression of society and preached civil disobedience to protest unjust laws.

THE UTOPIANS

Their Purpose

The cooperative community was their attempt to improve the life of the common man in the face of increasing impersonal industrialism.

The Utopian Communities

Brook Farm, in Massachusetts, was the earliest commune in America, and it was short-lived. Nathaniel Hawthorne was a short-term resident, and his *Blithedale Romance* was drawn from that experience. This work and *The Scarlet Letter* were both condemnations of the life of social isolation.

New Harmony, Indiana was founded by Robert Owen, of the New Lanark experiment in Wales, but it failed after two years. He attacked religion, marriage, and the institution of private property, so he encountered resistance from neighboring communities.

Nashoba was in the environs of Memphis, Tennessee, established by the free-thinking Englishwoman Frances Wright as a communal haven for freed slaves. Needless to say, her community experiment encountered fierce opposition from her slave-holding neighbors and it survived only briefly.

Oneida Community in New York was based on free love and open marriages.

The Shakers were directed by Mother Ann Lee. The communities were socialistic experiments which practiced celibacy, sexual equality, and social discipline. The name was given them by onlookers at their community dancing sessions.

Amana Community, in Iowa, was another socialist experiment, with a rigidly ordered society.

THE MORMONS

The Origins of the Movement

Joseph Smith received the "sacred" writings in New York state in 1830, and organized the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints. They were not popular with their neighbors, primarily because of their practice of polygamy, and so were forced to move about, first to Missouri, then to Nauvoo, Illinois. There Smith was killed by a mob, and the community was led to the Great Salt Lake by their new leader, Brigham Young, in one of the great epic migrations to the West.

The Church

The Mormons were the most successful of the communal experiments. They established a highly organized, centrally controlled system, which provided security and order for the faithful. They held a strong belief in human perfectibility, and so were in the mainstream of romantic utopians.

REMAKING SOCIETY: ORGANIZED REFORM

Sources of Inspiration

Transcendentalism, as a branch of European Romanticism, spawned a great deal of interest in remaking society into more humane forms.

Protestant Revivalism was a powerful force for the improvement of society. Evangelist Charles G. Finney, through his "social gospel," offered salvation to all. A strong sectarian spirit split the Protestant movement into many groups; e.g., the Cumberland Presbyterians. Also evident was a strong anti-Catholic element, which was strengthened by the new waves of immigration from Catholic Ireland and southern Germany after 1830.

Temperance

The American Society for Promotion of Temperance was organized in 1826. It was strongly supported by Protestants, but just as strongly opposed by the new Catholic immigrants.

Public Schools

The motivations for the free school crusade were mixed. Some wanted to provide opportunity for all children to learn the skills for self-fulfillment and success in a republic. Others wanted to use schools as agencies for social

control—to Americanize the new immigrant children as well as to Protestantize the Catholics, and to defuse the growing problems of urbanization. The stated purpose of the public schools was to instill social values: thrift, order, discipline, and democracy.

Public apathy and even opposition met the early reformers: Horace Mann, the first secretary of the Massachusetts Board of Education, and Henry Barnard, his counterpart in Connecticut and Rhode Island.

The movement picked up momentum in the 1830s, but was very spotty. Few public schools were available in the West, fewer still for Southern whites, and none at all for Southern blacks.

Higher Education

In 1839, the first state-supported school for women, Troy Female Seminary, was founded in Troy, New York. Oberlin College in Ohio was the nation's first co-educational college. The Perkins School for the Blind in Boston was the first of its kind in the United States.

Asylums for the Mentally Ill

Dorothea Dix led the fight for these institutions, advocating more humane treatment for the mentally incompetent.

Prison Reform

The purpose of the new penitentiaries was not to just punish, but to rehabilitate. The first was built in Auburn, New York, in 1821.

Feminism

The Seneca Falls, New York, meeting in 1848, and its "Declaration of Sentiments and Resolutions," was the beginning of the modern feminist movement. The Grimke sisters, Elizabeth Cady Stanton, and Harriet Beecher Stowe were active in these early days. The movement was linked with that of the abolitionists, but suffered because it was considered to be of secondary importance.

The Abolitionist Movement

The early antislavery movement was benign, advocating only the purchase and colonization of slaves. The American Colonization Society was organized in 1817 and established the colony of Liberia in 1830, but by that time the movement had reached a dead end.

In 1831, William Lloyd Garrison started his paper, *The Liberator*, and began to advocate total and immediate emancipation, thus giving new life to the movement. He founded the New England Anti-slavery Society in 1832 and the American Anti-slavery Society in 1833. Theodore Weld pursued the same goals, but advocated more gradual means.

Frederick Douglass, having escaped from his Maryland owner, became a fiery orator for the movement and published his own newspaper, the *North Star*.

There were frequent outbursts of anti-abolition violence in the 1830s, against the fanaticism of the radicals. Abolitionist editor Elijah Lovejoy was killed by a mob in Illinois.

The movement split into two wings: Garrison's radical followers, and the moderates who favored "moral suasion" and petitions to Congress. In 1840, the Liberty Party, the first national anti-slavery party, fielded a presidential candidate on the platform of "free soil," non-expansion of slavery into the new western territories.

The literary crusade continued with Harriet Beecher Stowe's *Uncle Tom's Cabin* being the most influential among the many books which presented the abolitionist message.

Educating the Public

This was the golden age of oratory. Speechmaking drew huge and patient crowds, and four-hour-long orations were not uncommon, especially at public events like the 4th of July celebrations.

Newspapers and magazines multiplied and were available to everyone.

Women more and more became the market for magazines oriented to their interests. Periodicals like *Godey's Ladies Book* reached mass circulation figures.

Colleges sprang up everywhere, the products of religious sectarianism as well as local pride, which produced "booster colleges" in every new community as population moved west. Many of these were poorly funded and managed; many did not survive longer than a few years.

Informal educational "lyceums" became popular, where the public could gather for cultural enrichment.

DIVERGING SOCIETIES—LIFE IN THE NORTH

Although the United States was a political entity, with all of the institutions of government and society shared among the peoples of the various states, there had always been a wide diversity of cultural and economic goals among the various states of the union. As the nineteenth century progressed, that diversity seemed to grow more pronounced, and the collection of states seemed to polarize more into the two sections we call the North and the South, with the expanding West becoming ever more identified with the North.

Population Growth, 1790–1860

The new West was the fastest growing area of the country, with population tending to move along parallels westward. From four million in 1790, population had reached 32 million in 1860 with one-half living in states and territories which did not even exist in Washington's administration.

Natural Increase

Birth rates began to drop after 1800, more rapidly in the cities than in the rural areas. Families who had averaged six children in 1800 only had five in 1860. Some of the reasons were economic: children were becoming liabilities rather than assets. The new "cult of domesticity" reflected a shift in family responsibilities. Father was out of the home working, and the burden of childrearing fell more heavily on mother. Primitive birth control methods were used, and abortion was becoming common enough that several states passed laws restricting it. One result of all this was an aging population with the median age rising from 16 to 20 years.

Immigration

The influx of immigrants had slowed during the conflicts with France and England, but the flow increased between 1815 and 1837, when the economic downturn again sharply reduced their numbers. Thus the overall rise in population during these years was due more to incoming foreigners than to natural increase. Most of the newcomers were from Britain, Germany, and southern Ireland. The Germans usually fared best, since they brought more money and more skills. Discrimination was common in the job market, primarily directed against the Catholics. "Irish Need Not Apply" signs were common. However, the persistent labor shortage prevented the natives from totally excluding the foreign elements. These newcomers huddled in ethnic neighborhoods in the cities, or those who could moved west to try their hand at farming.

Growth of the Cities

In 1790, 5 percent of the U.S. population lived in cities of 2,500 or more. By 1860, that figure had risen to 25 percent. This rapid urbanization created an array of problems.

Problems of Urbanization

The rapid growth in urban areas was not matched by the growth of services. Clean water, trash removal, housing, and public transportation all lagged behind, and the wealthy got them first. Bad water and poor sanitation produced poor health, and epidemics of typhoid fever, typhus, and cholera were common. Police and fire protection were usually inadequate and the development of professional forces was resisted because of the cost and the potential for political patronage and corruption.

Social Unrest

Rapid growth helped to produce a wave of violence in the cities. In New York City in 1834, the Democrats fought the Whigs with such vigor that the state militia had to be called in. New York and Philadelphia witnessed race riots in the mid-1830s, and a New York mob sacked a Catholic convent in 1834. In the 1830s, 115 major incidents of mob violence were recorded. Street crime was common in all the major cities.

THE ROLE OF MINORITIES

Women

Women were treated as minors before the law. In most states the woman's property became her husband's with marriage. Political activity was limited to the formation of associations in support of various pious causes, such as abolition, and religious and benevolent activity. Professional employment was largely limited to school teaching; that occupation became dominated by women. The women's rights movement focused on social and legal discrimination, and women like Lucretia Mott and Sojourner Truth became well-known figures on the speakers' circuit.

Blacks

By 1850, 200,000 free blacks lived in the North and West. Their lives were restricted everywhere by prejudice, and "Jim Crow" laws separated the races. Black citizens organized separate churches and fraternal orders. The African Methodist Episcopal Church, for example, had been organized in 1794 in

Philadelphia, and flourished in the major Northern cities. Black Masonic and Odd Fellows lodges were likewise established. The economic security of the free blacks was constantly threatened by the newly arrived immigrants, who were willing to work at the least desirable jobs for less wages. Racial violence was a daily threat.

The Growth of Industry

By 1850, the value of industrial output had surpassed that of agricultural production. The Northeastern states led the way in this movement. Over one-half of the manufacturing establishments were located there, and most of the larger enterprises. Seventy percent of the workers who were employed in manufacturing lived in New England and the middle states, and the Northeast produced more than two-thirds of the manufactured goods.

Inventions and Technology

The level of technology used in American manufacturing already exceeded that of European industry. Eli Whitney's applications of interchangeable parts were being introduced into a wide variety of manufacturing processes. Coal was replacing water as the major source of industrial power. Machine tools were reaching a high level of sophistication. Much of this progress was due to the contributions of America's inventors. Between 1830 and 1850 the number of patents issued for industrial inventions almost doubled. Charles Goodyear's process of vulcanizing rubber was put to 500 different uses and formed the basis for an entire new industry. Elias Howe's sewing machine was to revolutionize the clothing industry. The mass production of iron, with its new techniques and uses, created a new array of businesses, of which the new railroad industry was the largest consumer. Samuel B. Morse's new electric telegraph was first used in 1840 to transmit business news and information.

The Rise of Unions

The growth of the factory system was accompanied by the growth of the corporate form of business ownership, which in turn further separated the owners from the workers. One result was the organization of worker groups to fight for benefits, an early example of which was the 10-hour day. In 1835, Boston construction craftsmen struck for seven months to win a 10-hour work day, and Paterson, New Jersey, textile workers became the first factory workers to strike for shorter hours. The federal government's introduction of the 10-hour day for federal projects, in 1840, helped to speed the acceptance of this goal. The influx of immigrants who were willing to work for low wages helped to spur the drive for unions, and in turn their numbers helped to weaken the bargaining position of union members.

The Revolution in Agriculture

Farm and industry reinforced each other and developed simultaneously. As more urban workers became dependent on food grown by others, the potential profits of farming increased. Many of the technological developments and inventions were applied to farm machinery, which in turn enabled farmers to produce more food more cheaply for the urban workers. As in industry, specialization and mechanization became the rule in agriculture, particularly on the newly opening western prairies of Illinois, Iowa, and Kansas.

Inventions and Technology

Large-scale farming on the prairies spurred critical inventions. McCormick's mechanical reaper, patented in 1834, enabled a crew of six men to harvest in one day as much wheat as 15 men could using older methods. John Deere's steel plow, patented in 1837, provided a more durable tool to break the heavy prairie sod. Jerome Case's threshing machine multiplied the bushels of grain that could be separated from the stalk in a day's time.

The New Market Economy

These developments not only made large-scale production possible, they also shifted the major emphasis from corn to small grain production, and made farming for the international market feasible, which in turn made the Western farmer dependent on economic forces over which he had no control. This dependence produced the rising demand for government provision of free land and the agricultural colleges which later were provided by the Homestead and Morrill bills during the Civil War.

In the East, the trend was toward truck farming for the nearby burgeoning urban areas, and the production of milk, fruits, and berries. Here, as in the West, there was much interest in innovative practices which could increase production efficiency and profits.

The Revolution in Commerce

Before the coming of the railroad, coastal sailing ships practically monopolized domestic trade. The canal construction boom of the 1830s had taken commercial traffic from the river systems, but by 1840 the railroad had begun to emerge as the carrier of the future. Pennsylvania and New York State contained most of the 3,328 miles of track, but the rail system was rapidly expanding across the northern tier of states, tying the industrializing East to the expanding, agricultural West.

EVERYDAY LIFE IN THE NORTH

Between 1800 and 1860 output of goods and services increased 12-fold and the purchasing power of the average worker doubled. The household labor system was breaking down, and the number of wage-earners exceeded for the first time the number of independent, self-employed Americans. Even so, everyday living was still quite primitive. Most people bathed only infrequently, washed clothes and dishes even less. Housing was primitive for most, consisting of one- or two-room cabins, heated by open fireplaces, with water carried in from springs or public faucets. For the working man, rural or urban, life was hard.

DIVERGING SOCIETIES—LIFE IN THE SOUTH

The Southern states experienced dramatic growth in the second quarter of the nineteenth century. The economy grew more productive and more prosperous, but still the section called the South was basically agrarian, with few important cities and scattered industry. The plantation system, with its cash crop production driven by the use of slave labor, remained the dominant institution. In the words of one historian, "The South grew, but it did not develop." And so the South grew more unlike the North, and it became more defensive of its distinctive way of life.

The Cotton Kingdom

The most important economic phenomenon of the early decades of the nineteenth century was the shift in population and production from the old "upper South" of Virginia and the Carolinas to the "lower South" of the newly opened Gulf states of Alabama, Mississippi, and Louisiana. This shift was the direct result of the increasing importance of cotton. In the older Atlantic states, tobacco retained its importance, but had shifted westward to the Piedmont, and was replaced in the east by food grains. The southern Atlantic coast continued to produce rice and southern Louisiana and east Texas retained their emphasis on sugar cane. But the rich black soil of the new Gulf states proved ideal for the production of short-staple cotton, especially after the invention of the "gin," and cotton became the center of the Southern economy. Nearly three million bales were being produced annually by 1850.

By 1860, cotton was to account for two-thirds of the value of U.S. exports. In the words of a Southern legislator of that era, "Cotton is King!"

Classes in the South

Although the large plantation with its white-columned mansion and its aristocratic owners is frequently seen as typical of Southern life, the truth is quite different.

The Planter Class

Owners of large farms who also owned 50 or more slaves actually formed a small minority of the Southern population. Three-fourths of Southern whites owned no slaves at all, almost half of slave-owning families owned fewer than six, and 12 percent owned 20 or more. But this minority of large slave-owners exercised political and economic power far beyond what their numbers would indicate. They became a class to which all others paid deference, and they dominated the political and social life of their region.

The Yeoman Farmers

The largest group of Southern whites were the independent small farmers who worked their land with their family, sometimes side-by-side with one or two slaves, to produce their own food, with sometimes enough surplus to sell for a little extra cash. These simple folk predominated in the upland South and constituted a sizeable element even in the lower cotton-producing states. Their major crop was corn, and indeed the South's corn crop was more valuable than its cotton, but the corn was used at home for dinner tables and for animal feed, and so ranked behind cotton as an item of export. These people were generally poorer than their Northern counterparts.

The Poor Whites

Perhaps a half-million white Southerners lived on the edge of the agrarian economy, in varying degrees of poverty. These "crackers," or "sandhillers," occupied the barren soils of the red hills or sandy bottoms, and they lived in squalor worse than the slaves. They formed a true underclass.

The Institution of Slavery

As the necessary concomitant of this expanding plantation system, the "Peculiar Institution" of black slavery fastened itself upon the Southern people, even as it isolated them from the rest of the world.

Slavery as a Labor System

The utilization of slave labor varied according to the region and the size of the growing unit. The large plantations growing cotton, sugar, or tobacco used the gang system, in which white overseers directed black drivers, who supervised large groups of workers in the fields, all performing the same operation. In the culture of rice, and on the smaller farms, slaves were assigned specific tasks, and when those tasks were finished, the worker had the remainder of the day to himself.

House servants usually were considered the most favored since they were spared the hardest physical labor and enjoyed the most intimate relationship with the owner's family. This could be considered a drawback, since they were frequently deprived of the social communion of the other slaves, enjoyed less privacy, and were more likely to suffer the direct wrath of a dissatisfied mistress.

Historians still debate whether the Southern plantation slaves fared better or worse then the Northern wage laborers. Certainly their lot was better than their counterparts in South America and the Caribbean.

Urban Slavery in the Southern City

A sizeable number of black slaves worked in the towns, serving as factory hands, domestics, artisans, and construction workers. They lived fairly independent lives and indeed a good number purchased their freedom with their savings, or quietly crossed the color line and disappeared into the general population. As the nineteenth century progressed, these people were increasingly seen as a bad model and a threat to the institution, and so urban slavery practically disappeared.

The Slave Trade

The most significant demographic shift in these decades was the movement of blacks from the Old South to the new Southwest. Traders shipped servants by the thousands to the newly opened cotton lands of the Gulf states. A prime field hand fetched an average price of $800, as high as $1,500 in peak years. Families were frequently split apart by this miserable traffic. Planters freely engaged in this trade, but assigned very low status to the traders who carried it out.

Although the importation of slaves from abroad had been outlawed by Congress since 1808, they continued to be smuggled in until the 1850s. The import ban kept the price up and encouraged the continuation of the internal trade.

Slaves' Reaction to Slavery

Blacks in bondage suffered varying degrees of repression and deprivation. The harsh slave codes were comprehensive in their restrictions on individual freedom, but they were unevenly applied, and so there was considerable variety in the severity of life. The typical slave probably received a rough but adequate diet and enjoyed crude but sufficient housing and clothing.

But the loss of freedom and the injustice of the system produced a variety of responses. Many "soldiered" on the job, and refused to work hard, or they found ways to sabotage the machinery or the crops. There was an underground system of ridicule toward the masters which was nurtured, as reflected in such oral literature as the "Brer Rabbit" tales.

Violent reaction to repression was not uncommon. Gabriel Prosser in Richmond (1800), Denmark Vesey in Charleston (1822), and Nat Turner in coastal Virginia (1831) all plotted or led uprisings of blacks against their white masters. Rumors of such uprisings kept whites in a state of constant apprehension.

The ultimate rebellion was to simply leave, and many tried to run away, some successfully. Especially from the states bordering the North, an ever increasing number of slaves fled to freedom, many with the aid of the "underground railroad" and smugglers such as Harriet Tubman, who led over 300 of her family and friends to freedom after she herself had escaped.

Most of those in bondage, however, were forced to simply adapt, and they did. A rich culture was developed within the confines of the system, and included distinctive patterns of language, music, and religion. Kinship ties were probably strengthened in the face of the onslaughts of sale and separation of family members. In the face of incredible odds, the slaves developed a distinctive network of tradition and interdependence, and they survived.

COMMERCE AND INDUSTRY

The lack of manufacturing and business development has frequently been blamed for the South's losing its bid for independence in 1861–1865. Actually, the South was highly industrialized for its day and compared favorably with most European nations in the development of manufacturing capacity. Obviously, it trailed far behind the North, so much so that when war erupted in 1861, the Northern states owned 81 percent of the factory capacity in the United States.

Manufacturing

The Southern states saw considerable development in the 1820s and 1830s in textiles and iron production and in flour milling. Richmond's Tredegar Iron Works compared favorably with the best in the North. Montgomery Bell's forges in Tennessee produced a good proportion of the ironware used in the upper South. Even so, most of the goods manufactured in these plants were for plantation consumption rather than for export, and they never exceeded two percent of the value of the cotton crop.

Commercial Activity

The businessmen of the South worked primarily with the needs and products of the plantation and the factors of New Orleans and Charleston had to serve as bankers and insurance brokers as well as the agents for the planters. An organized network of commerce never developed in the South, even though the planters themselves must be recognized as businessmen, since they operated large, complex staple-producing units.

Voices for Change

There were those who saw their native South sinking ever more into the position of dependency upon Northern bankers and businessmen, and they cried out for reform. James B.D. DeBow's *Review* advocated commercial development and agricultural diversification, but his cries largely fell on deaf ears.

Why were Southerners so wedded to the plantation system, in the face of much evidence that it was retarding development? Certainly one reason is that

cotton was profitable. Over the long run, capital return on plantation agriculture was at least as good as on Northern industrial capital. Even though skilled slaves abounded and could have manned factories, they were more profitable in the field.

Since most of the planter's capital was tied up in land and slaves, there was little left to invest in commerce or manufacturing. Most important, perhaps, was the value system of the Southern people, who put great store in traditional rural ideals: chivalry, leisure, and genteel elegance. Even the yeoman farmer held these values and hoped some day to attain to the position the planters held.

LIFE IN THE SOUTHERN STATES

The Role of Women

The position of the Southern woman was similar in many ways to her Northern counterpart, but also very different. They had fewer opportunities for anything but home life. The middle-class wife was heavily involved in the operation of the farm, and served as supervisor and nurse for the servants as well as manager of the household, while the upper-class women served merely as ornaments. Education was rare and centered on the "domestic arts." High birth and death rates took their toll on childbearing women, and many men outlived several wives. The half-breed slave children were constant reminders of the planters' dalliances and produced constant tension and frustration among plantation wives.

Education

Schooling beyond literacy training was available only to the sons of the well-to-do. Academies and colleges abounded, but not for the working classes. And what public schools there were, were usually inferior and ill-supported. By 1860, one-half of all the illiterates in the United States lived in the South.

Daily Life in the South

The accounts of travelers in the Southern states provide us with vivid pictures of living conditions on the average homestead. Housing was primitive, one- or two-room cabins being the rule. Corn, sweet potatoes, and pork formed the staples of the Southern diet and health problems reflected the resulting vitamin deficiencies. Rickets and pellagra were common ailments.

Although the prevalence of violence has probably been overstated, it certainly existed and the duel remained an accepted avenue for settling differences well into the nineteenth century.

Southern Response to the Antislavery Movement

As the crusade for abolition intensified in the North, the South assumed an ever more defensive position. Biblical texts were used to justify the enslavement of an "inferior race." Scientific arguments were advanced to prove the inherent inferiority of the black African. Southern postal authorities refused to deliver any mail that contained information antagonistic to the slave system. Any kind of dissent was brutally suppressed, and the South became more and more a closed society. Literature and scholarship shriveled, and creative writers like Edgar Allen Poe and William Gilmore Simms became the rare exception.

The last serious Southern debate over the institution of slavery took place in the Virginia legislature in 1832, in the aftermath of Nat Turner's revolt. That discussion squelched any move toward emancipation. In 1836 Southern members of the U.S. House of Representatives pushed through the infamous "gag rule," which forbade any discussion on the question of slavery on the floor of the House. That rule remained in effect until 1844.

The most elaborate product of this ferment was John C. Calhoun's theory of the "concurrent majority," in which a dual presidency would insure a South independent of Northern dominance, and would forever keep majority rule at bay.

Beginning in 1837, regular conventions were held across the South to discuss ways to escape Northern economic and political hegemony.

As the decade of the 1840s opened, the two sections were becoming more and more estranged, and the channels of compromise were becoming more and more poisoned by the emotional responses to black slavery. The development which contributed most to keeping the sore festering was westward expansion.

MANIFEST DESTINY AND WESTWARD EXPANSION

Although the term "Manifest Destiny" was not actually coined until 1844, the belief that the American nation was destined to eventually expand all the way to the Pacific Ocean, and to possibly embrace Canada to the North, and Mexico to the South, had been voiced for years by many who believed that American liberty and ideals should be shared with everyone possible, by force if necessary. The rising sense of nationalism which followed the War of 1812 was fed by the rapidly expanding population, the reform impulse of the 1830s, and the desire to acquire new markets and resources for the burgeoning economy of "Young America."

Louisiana and the Far West Fur Trade

The Lewis and Clark expedition had scarcely filed its reports before a variety of adventurous entrepreneurs began to penetrate the newly acquired territory, and the lands beyond. "Mountain men" like Jim Bridges trapped the Rocky Mountain streams and the headwaters of the Missouri River system for the greatly prized beaver pelts, while explorers like Jedediah Smith mapped the vast territory which stretched from the Rockies to the Sierra Nevada range and on into California. John Jacob Astor established a fur post at the mouth of the Columbia River which he named Astoria, and challenged the British claim to the northwest. Though he was forced to sell out his establishment to the British, he lobbied Congress to pass trade restrictions against British furs, and eventually became the first American millionaire from the profits of the American Fur Company. The growing trade with the Orient in furs and other specialty goods was sharpening the desire of many businessmen for American ports on the Pacific coast.

The Oregon Country

The Adams-Onis Treaty of 1819 had set the northern boundary of Spanish possessions near the present northern border of California. The territory north of that line and west of the vague boundaries of the Louisiana Territory had been claimed over the years by Spain, England, Russia, France, and the United States. By the 1820s, all these claims had been yielded to Britain and the United States. The Hudson's Bay Company had established a fur trading

station at Fort Vancouver, and claimed control south to the Columbia. The United States claimed all the way north to the 54°40' parallel. Unable to settle the dispute, they had agreed on a joint occupation of the disputed land.

In the 1830s American missionaries followed the traders and trappers to the Oregon country, and began to publicize the richness and beauty of the land, sending back official reports on their work, which were published in the new inexpensive "penny press" papers. Everyone read these reports, and the result was the "Oregon Fever" of the 1840s, as thousands of settlers trekked across the Great Plains and the Rocky Mountains to settle the new Shangri-La.

The Texas Question: 1836–1845

Texas had been a state in the Republic of Mexico since 1822, following the Mexican revolution against Spanish control. The United States had offered to buy the territory at the time, since it had renounced its claim to the area in the Adams-Onis agreement of 1819. The new Mexican government indignantly refused to sell, but immediately began to invite immigration from the north by offering land grants to Stephen Austin and other Americans. They needed to increase the population of the area and to produce revenue for the infant government. The Americans responded in great numbers, and by 1835 approximately 35,000 "gringos" were homesteading on Texas land.

The Mexican officials saw their power base eroding as the foreigners flooded in, and so they moved to tighten control, through restrictions on new immigration, and through tax increases. The Texans responded in 1836 by proclaiming independence and establishing a new republic. The ensuing war was short-lived. The Mexican dictator, Santa Anna, advanced north and annihilated the Texan garrisons at the Alamo and at Goliad. On April 23, 1836, Sam Houston defeated him at San Jacinto, and the Mexicans were forced to let Texas go its way.

Houston immediately asked the American government for recognition and annexation, but President Andrew Jackson feared the revival of the slavery issue since the new state would come in on the slave-holding side of the political balance, and he also feared war with Mexico, so he did nothing. When Van Buren followed suit, the new republic sought foreign recognition and support, which the European nations eagerly provided, hoping thereby to create a counterbalance to rising American power and influence in the Southwest. France and England both quickly concluded trade agreements with the Texans.

New Mexico and California

The district of New Mexico had, like Texas, encouraged American immigration, and for the same reasons. Soon that state was more American than Mexican. The Santa Fe Trail—from Independence, Missouri, to the town of Santa Fe—created a prosperous trade in mules, gold and silver, and furs which moved north in exchange for manufactured goods which went south. American settlements sprung up all along the route.

Though the Mexican officials in California had not encouraged it, American immigration nevertheless had been substantial. First traders and whaling crews, then merchants, arrived to set up stores and developed a brisk trade. As the decade of the 1830s passed, the number of newcomers increased. Since the Missouri Compromise had established the northern limits for slavery at the 36°30' parallel, most of this Mexican territory lay in the potential slave-

holding domain, and many of the settlers had carried their bondsmen with them.

Manifest Destiny and Sectional Stress

The question of expansion was universally discussed. Although the strongest sentiment was found in the North and West, the South had its own ambitions, and they usually involved the extension of their "peculiar institution."

The Democrats generally favored the use of force, if necessary, to extend American borders. The Whigs favored more peaceful means, through diplomacy. Some Whigs, like Henry Clay, feared expansion under any circumstances, because of its potential for aggravating the slavery issue.

Clay was closest to the truth. As the decade of the 1840s opened, the questions of Texas, California, and the New Mexican territory were increasingly prominent, and the sectional tension which they produced was destined to light the fires of civil war.

TYLER, POLK, AND CONTINUED WESTWARD EXPANSION

Tyler and the Whigs

When William Henry Harrison became president, he immediately began to rely on Whig leader Henry Clay for advice and direction, just as Clay had planned and expected he would. He appointed to his cabinet those whom Clay suggested, and at Clay's behest he called a special session of Congress to vote the Whig legislative program into action. To the Whigs' dismay, Harrison died of pneumonia just one month into his term, to be replaced by Vice President John Tyler.

A states' rights Southerner and a strict constitutionalist who had been placed on the Whig ticket to draw Southern votes, Tyler rejected the entire Whig program of a national bank, high protective tariff s, and federally funded internal improvements (roads, canals, etc.). Clay stubbornly determined to push the program through anyway. In the resulting legislative confrontations, Tyler vetoed a number of Whig-sponsored bills.

The Whigs were furious. Every cabinet member but one resigned in protest. Tyler was officially expelled from the party and made the target of the first serious impeachment attempt. (It failed.) In opposition to Tyler over the next few years, the Whigs, under the leadership of Clay, transformed themselves from a loose grouping of diverse factions to a coherent political party with an elaborate organization.

One piece of important legislation that did get passed during Tyler's administration was the Preemption Act (1841), allowing settlers who had squatted on unsurveyed federal lands first chance to buy the land (up to 160 acres at low prices) once it was put on the market.

The Webster-Ashburton Treaty

The member of Tyler's cabinet who did not immediately resign in protest was Secretary of State Daniel Webster. He stayed on to negotiate the Webster-Ashburton Treaty with Great Britain.

There were at this time several causes of tension between the U.S. and Great Britain:

1. The Canada-Maine boundary in the area of the Aroostook Valley was disputed. British efforts to build a military road through the disputed area led to reaction by Maine militia in a bloodless confrontation known as the "Aroostook War" (1838).
2. The Caroline Affair (1837) involved an American ship, the *Caroline*, that had been carrying supplies to Canadian rebels. It was burned by Canadian loyalists who crossed the U.S. border in order to do so.
3. In the Creole Incident, Britain declined to return escaped slaves who had taken over a U.S. merchant ship, the *Creole*, and sailed to the British-owned Bahamas.
4. British naval vessels, patrolling the African coast to suppress slave-smuggling, sometimes stopped and searched American ships.

The Webster-Ashburton Treaty (1842) dealt with these problems in a spirit of mutual concession and forbearance:

1. Conflicting claims along the Canada-Maine boundary were compromised.
2. The British expressed regret for the destruction of the *Caroline*.
3. The British promised to avoid "officious interference" in freeing slaves in cases such as that of the *Creole*.
4. Both countries agreed to cooperate in patrolling the African coast to prevent slave-smuggling.

The Webster-Ashburton Treaty was also important in that it helped create an atmosphere of compromise and forbearance in U.S.-British relations.

After negotiating the treaty, Webster also resigned from Tyler's cabinet.

The Texas Issue

Rejected by the Whigs and without ties to the Democrats, Tyler was a politician without a party but not without ambitions. Hoping to gather a political following of his own, he sought an issue with powerful appeal and believed he had found it in the question of Texas annexation.

The Republic of Texas had gained its independence from Mexico in 1836 and, since most of its settlers had come from the U.S., immediately sought admission as a state. It was rejected because antislavery forces in Congress resented the presence of slavery in Texas and because Mexico threatened war should the U.S. annex Texas.

To excite American jealousy and thus hasten annexation, Texas President Sam Houston made much show of negotiating for closer relations with Great Britain. Southerners feared that Britain, which opposed slavery, might bring about its abolition in Texas and then use Texas as a base from which to undermine slavery in the American South. Other Americans were disturbed at the possibility of a British presence in Texas because of the obstacle it would present to what many Americans were coming to believe—and what New York journalist John L. O'Sullivan would soon express—as America's "manifest destiny to overspread the continent."

Tyler's new secretary of state, John C. Calhoun, negotiated an annexation treaty with Texas. Calhoun's identification with extreme pro-slavery forces and his insertion in the treaty of pro-slavery statements brought the treaty's rejection by the Senate (1844). Nevertheless, the Texas issue had been injected into national politics and could not be made to go away.

The Election of 1844

Democratic front-runner Martin Van Buren and Whig front-runner Henry Clay agreed privately that neither would endorse Texas annexation and that it would not become a campaign issue, but expansionists at the Democratic convention succeeded in dumping Van Buren in favor of James K. Polk. Polk, called "Young Hickory" by his supporters, was a staunch Jacksonian who opposed protective tariffs and a national bank but, most important, favored territorial expansion, including not only annexation of Texas but also occupation of all the Oregon country (up to latitude 54° 40') hitherto jointly occupied by the U.S. and Britain. The latter claim was expressed in his campaign slogan, "Fifty-four forty or fight."

Tyler, despite his introduction of the issue that was to decide that year's presidential campaign, was unable to build a party of his own and withdrew from the race.

The Whigs nominated Clay, who continued to oppose Texas annexation but, sensing the mood of the country was against him, began to equivocate. His wavering cost him votes among those Northerners who were extremely sensitive to the issue of slavery and believed that the settlement, independence, and proposed annexation of Texas was a gigantic plot to add slave states to the Union. Some of these voters shifted to the Liberty party.

The antislavery Liberty party nominated James G. Birney. Apparently because of Clay's wavering on the Texas issue, Birney was able to take enough votes away from Clay in New York to give that state, and thus the election, to Polk.

Tyler, as a lame-duck president, made one more attempt to achieve Texas annexation before leaving office. By means of a joint resolution, which unlike a treaty required only a simple majority rather than a two-thirds vote, he was successful in getting the measure through Congress. Texas was finally admitted to the Union (1845).

Polk as President

Though a relatively unknown "dark horse" at the time of his nomination for the presidency, Polk had considerable political experience within his home state of Tennessee and was an adept politician. He turned out to be a skillful and effective president.

As a good Jacksonian, Polk favored a low, revenue-only tariff rather than a high, protective tariff. This he obtained in the Walker Tariff (1846). He also opposed a national debt and a national bank and re-established Van Buren's Independent Sub-Treasury system, which then remained in effect until 1920.

The Settlement of Oregon

A major issue in the election campaign of 1844, Oregon at this time comprised all the land bounded on the east by the Rockies, the west by the Pacific, the south by latitude 42°, and the north by the boundary of Russian held Alaska at 54° 40'. Oregon had been visited by Lewis and Clark and in

later years by American fur traders and especially missionaries such as Jason Lee and Marcus Whitman. Their reports sparked interest in Oregon's favorable soil and climate. During the first half of the 1840s, some 6,000 Americans had taken the 2,000-mile, six-month journey on the Oregon Trail, from Independence, Missouri, across the plains along the Platte River, through the Rockies at South Pass, and down the Snake River to their new homesteads. Most of them settled in the Willamette Valley, south of the Columbia River.

The area had been under the joint occupation of the U.S. and Great Britain since 1818, but Democrats in the election of 1844 had called for U.S. ownership of all of Oregon. Though this stand had helped him win the election, Polk had little desire to fight the British for land he considered unsuitable for agriculture and unavailable for slavery, which he favored. This was all the more so since trouble seemed to be brewing with Mexico over territory Polk considered far more desirable.

The British, for their part, hoped to obtain the area north of the Columbia River, including the natural harbor of Puget Sound (one of only three on the Pacific coast), with its adjoining Strait of Juan de Fuca.

By the terms of the Oregon Treaty (1846), a compromise solution was reached. The current U.S.-Canada boundary east of the Rockies (49°) was extended westward to the Pacific, thus securing Puget Sound and shared use of the Strait of Juan de Fuca for the U.S. Some northern Democrats were angered and felt betrayed by Polk's failure to insist on all of Oregon, but the Senate readily accepted the treaty.

The Mormon Migration

Aside from the thousands of Americans who streamed west on the Oregon Trail during the early 1840s and the smaller number who migrated to what was then Mexican-held California, another large group of Americans moved west but to a different destination and for different reasons. These were the Mormons.

Members of a unique religion founded by Joseph Smith at Palmyra, New York in the 1820s, Mormons, often in trouble with their neighbors, had been forced to migrate to Kirtland, Ohio; Clay County, Missouri; and finally, Nauvoo, Illinois. There, on the banks of the Mississippi River, they built the largest city in the state, had their own militia, and were a political force to be reckoned with.

In 1844 Mormon dissidents published a newspaper critical of church leader Smith and his newly announced doctrine of polygamy. Smith had their printing press destroyed. Arrested by Illinois authorities, Smith and his brother were confined to a jail in Carthage, Illinois, but later killed by a crowd of hostile non-Mormons who forced their way into the jail.

The Mormons then decided to migrate to the Far West, preferably someplace outside U.S. jurisdiction. Their decision to leave was hastened by pressure from their non-Mormon neighbors, among whom anti-Mormon feeling ran high as a response to polygamy and the Mormons' monolithic social and political structure.

Under the leadership of new church leader Brigham Young some 85,000 Mormons trekked overland in 1846 to settle near the Great Salt Lake in what is now Utah (but was then owned by Mexico). Young founded the Mormon republic of Deseret and openly preached (and practiced) polygamy.

After Deseret's annexation by the U.S. as part of the Mexican Cession, Young was made territorial governor of Utah. Nevertheless, friction developed with the federal government. By 1857 public outrage over polygamy prompted then-President James Buchanan to replace Young with a non-Mormon governor. Threats of Mormon defiance led Buchanan to send 2,500 army troops to compel Mormon obedience to federal law. Young responded by calling out the Mormon militia and blocking the passes through which the army would have to advance. This standoff, known as the "Mormon War," was resolved in 1858, with the Mormons accepting the new governor and Buchanan issuing a general pardon.

The Coming of War with Mexico

For some time American interest had been growing in the far western lands then held by Mexico:

1. Since the 1820s Americans had been trading with Santa Fe and other Mexican settlements along the Rio Grande by means of the Santa Fe Trail. Though not extensive enough to be of economic importance, the trade aroused further American interest in the area.
2. Also, since the 1820s, American "mountain men," trappers who sought beaver pelts in the streams of the Rockies, had explored the mountains of the Far West, opening new trails and discovering fertile lands. They later served as guides for settlers moving west.
3. At the same time whaling ships and other American vessels had carried on a thriving trade with the Mexican settlements on the coast of California.
4. Beginning in 1841, American settlers came overland to California by means of the California Trail, a branch from the Oregon Trail that turned southwest in the Rockies and crossed Nevada along the Humbolt River. By 1846 several hundred Americans lived in California.

The steady flow of American pioneers into Mexican-held areas of the Far West led to conflicting territorial desires and was thus an underlying cause of the Mexican War. Several more immediate causes existed:

1. Mexico's ineffective government was unable to protect the lives and property of American citizens in Mexico during the country's frequent and recurring revolutions and repeatedly declined to pay American claims for damages even when such claims were supported by the findings of mutually agreed upon arbitration.
2. Mexico had not reconciled itself to the loss of Texas and considered its annexation by the U.S. a hostile act.
3. The southern boundary of Texas was disputed. Whereas first the independent Republic of Texas and now the U.S. claimed the Rio Grande as the boundary, Mexico claimed the Nueces River, 130 miles farther north, because it had been the boundary of the province of Texas when it had been part of Mexico.
4. Mexican suspicions had been aroused regarding U.S. designs on California when, in 1842, a U.S. naval force under Commodore Thomas Catsby Jones had seized the province in the mistaken belief that war had broken out between the U.S. and Mexico. When the

mistake was discovered, the province was returned and apologies made.

5. Mexican politicians had so inflamed the Mexican people against the U.S. that no Mexican leader could afford to take the risk of appearing to make concessions to the U.S. for fear of being overthrown.

Though Mexico broke diplomatic relations with the U.S. immediately upon Texas' admission to the Union, there still seemed to be some hope of a peaceful settlement. In the fall of 1845 Polk sent John Slidell to Mexico City with a proposal for a peaceful settlement of the differences between the two countries. Slidell was empowered to cancel the damage claims and pay $5,000,000 for the disputed land in southern Texas. He was also authorized to offer $25,000,000 for California and $5,000,000 for other Mexican territory in the Far West. Polk was especially anxious to obtain California because he feared the British would snatch it from Mexico's extremely weak grasp.

Nothing came of these attempts at negotiation. Racked by coup and counter-coup, the Mexican government refused even to receive Slidell.

Polk thereupon sent U.S. troops into the disputed territory in southern Texas. A force under General Zachary Taylor (who was nicknamed "Old Rough and Ready") took up a position just north of the Rio Grande. Eight days later, on April 5, 1846, Mexican troops attacked an American patrol. When news of the clash reached Washington, Polk sought and received from Congress a declaration of war against Mexico, on May 13, 1846.

The Mexican War

Americans were sharply divided about the war. Some favored it because they felt Mexico had provoked the war or because they felt it was the destiny of America to spread the blessings of freedom to oppressed peoples. Others opposed the war. Some, primarily Polk's political enemies the Whigs, accused the president of having provoked it. Others, generally Northern abolitionists, saw in the war the work of a vast conspiracy of Southern slaveholders greedy for more slave territory.

In planning military strategy, Polk showed genuine skill. American strategy consisted originally of a three-pronged attack: a land movement westward through New Mexico into California, a sea movement against California, and a land movement southward into Mexico.

The first prong of this three-pronged strategy, the advance through New Mexico and into California, was led by Colonel Stephen W. Kearny. Kearny's force easily secured New Mexico, entering Santa Fe on August 16, 1846, before continuing west to California. There American settlers, aided by an army exploring party under John C. Frémont, had already revolted against Mexico's weak rule in what was called the Bear Flag Revolt.

As part of the second prong of U.S. strategy, naval forces under Commodore John D. Sloat had seized Monterey and declared California to be part of the United States. Forces put ashore by Commodore Robert Stockton joined with Kearny's troops to defeat the Mexicans at the Battle of San Gabriel, January 1847, and complete the conquest of California.

The third prong of the American strategy, an advance southward into Mexico, was itself divided into two parts:

1. Troops under Colonel Alexander W. Doniphan defeated Mexicans at El Brazito (December 25–28, 1846) to take El Paso, and then

proceeded southward, winning the Battle of Sacramento (February 28, 1847) to take the city of Chihuahua, capital of the Mexican province of that name.

2. The main southward thrust, however, was made by a much larger American army under General Zachary Taylor. After badly defeating larger Mexican forces at the battles of Palo Alto (May 7, 1846) and Resaca de la Palma (May 8, 1846), Taylor advanced into Mexico and defeated an even larger Mexican force at the Battle of Monterey (September 20–24, 1846). Then, after a substantial number of his troops had been transferred to other sectors of the war—and though badly outnumbered—he successfully withstood an attack by a Mexican force under Antonia Lopez de Santa Anna at the Battle of Buena Vista, on February 22–23, 1847.

Despite the success of all three parts of the American strategy, the Mexicans refused to negotiate. Polk therefore ordered U.S. forces under General Winfield Scott to land on the east coast of Mexico, march inland, and take Mexico City.

Scott landed at Veracruz on March 9, 1847, and by March 27 had captured the city with the loss of only 20 American lives. He advanced from there, being careful to maintain good discipline and avoid atrocities in the countryside. At Cerro Gordo (April 18, 1847), in what has been called "the most important single battle of the war," Scott outflanked and soundly defeated a superior enemy force in a seemingly impregnable position. After beating another Mexican army at Churubusco (August 19–20, 1847), Scott paused outside Mexico City to offer the Mexicans another chance to negotiate. When they declined, U.S. forces stormed the fortress of Chapultepec (September 13, 1847) and the next day entered Mexico City. Still Mexico refused to negotiate a peace and instead carried on guerilla warfare.

Negotiated peace finally came about when the State Department clerk Nicholas Trist, though his authority had been revoked and he had been ordered back to Washington two months earlier, negotiated and signed the Treaty of Guadalupe-Hidalgo (February 2, 1848), ending the Mexican War. Under the terms of the treaty, Mexico ceded to the U.S. the territory Polk had originally sought to buy, this time in exchange for a payment of $15,000,000 and the assumption of $3,250,000 in American citizens' claims against the Mexican government. This territory, the Mexican Cession, included the natural harbors at San Francisco and San Diego, thus giving the U.S. all three of the major west-coast natural harbors.

Many, including Polk, felt the treaty was far too generous. There had been talk of annexing all of Mexico or of forcing Mexico to pay an indemnity for the cost of the war. Still, Polk felt compelled to accept the treaty as it was, and the Senate subsequently ratified it.

On the home front many Americans supported the war enthusiastically and flocked to volunteer. Some criticized the war, among them Henry David Thoreau, who, to display his protest, went to live at Walden Pond and refused to pay his taxes. Jailed for this, he wrote "Civil Disobedience." Another outspoken critic of the war was Illinois Congressman Abraham Lincoln.

Although the Mexican War increased the nation's territory by one-third, it also brought to the surface serious political issues that threatened to divide the country, particularly the question of slavery in the new territories.

6. SECTIONAL CONFLICT AND THE CAUSES OF THE CIVIL WAR (1850–1860)

THE CRISIS OF 1850 AND AMERICA AT MID-CENTURY

The Wilmot Proviso

The Mexican War had no more than started when, on August 8, 1846, freshman Democratic Congressman David Wilmot of Pennsylvania introduced his Wilmot Proviso as a proposed amendment to a war appropriations bill. It stipulated that "neither slavery nor involuntary servitude shall ever exist" in any territory to be acquired from Mexico. It was passed by the House, and though rejected by the Senate it was reintroduced again and again amid increasingly acrimonious debate.

The Wilmot Proviso aroused intense sectional fee lings. Southerners, who had supported the war enthusiastically, felt they were being treated unfairly. Northerners, some of whom had been inclined to see the war as a slaveholders' plot to extend slavery, felt they saw their worst suspicions confirmed by the Southerners' furious opposition to the Wilmot Proviso. There came to be four views regarding the status of slavery in the newly acquired territories.

The Southern position was expressed by John C. Calhoun, now serving as senator from South Carolina. He argued that the territories were the property not of the U.S. federal government, but of all the states together, and therefore Congress had no right to prohibit in any territory any type of "property" (by which he meant slaves) that was legal in any of the states.

Antislavery Northerners, pointing to the Northwest Ordinance of 1787 and the Missouri Compromise of 1820 as precedents, argued that Congress had the right to make what laws it saw fit for the territories, including, if it so chose, laws prohibiting slavery.

A compromise proposal favored by President Polk and many moderate Southerners called for the extension of the 36° 30′ line of the Missouri Compromise westward through the Mexican Cession to the Pacific, with territory north of the line to be closed to slavery and territory south of it open to slavery.

Another compromise solution, favored by Northern Democrats such as Lewis Cass of Michigan and Stephen A. Douglas of Illinois, was known as "squatter sovereignty" and later as "popular sovereignty." It held that the residents of each territory should be permitted to decide for themselves whether or not to allow slavery, but it was vague as to when they might exercise that right.

The Election of 1848

Both parties sought to avoid as much as possible the hot issue of slavery in the territories as they prepared for the 1848 election campaign.

The Democrats nominated Lewis Cass, and their platform endorsed his middle-of-the-road popular sovereignty position with regard to slavery in the territories.

The Whigs dodged the issue even more effectively by nominating General Zachary Taylor, whose fame in the Mexican War made him a strong candidate. Taylor knew nothing of politics, had never voted, and liked to think of himself

as above politics. He took no position at all with respect to slavery in the territories.

Some antislavery Northern Whigs and Democrats, disgusted with their parties' failure to take a clear stand against the spread of slavery, deserted the party ranks to form another antislavery third party. They were known as "Conscience" Whigs (because they voted their conscience) and "Barnburner" Democrats (because they were willing to burn down the whole Democratic "barn" to get rid of the pro-slavery "rats"). Their party was called the Free Soil party, since it stood for keeping the soil of new western territories free of slavery. Its candidate was Martin Van Buren.

The election excited relatively little public interest. Taylor won a narrow victory, apparently because Van Buren took enough votes from Cass in New York and Pennsylvania to throw those states into Taylor's column.

Gold in California

The question of slavery's status in the Western territories was made more immediate when, on January 24, 1848, gold was discovered at Sutter's Mill, not far from Sacramento, California. The next year gold-seekers from the eastern U.S. and from many foreign countries swelled California's population from 14,000 to 100,000.

Once in the gold fields these "forty-niners" proved to contain some rough characters, and that fact, along with the presence, or at least the expectation, of quick and easy riches, made California a wild and lawless place. No territorial government had been organized since the U.S. had received the land as part of the Mexican Cession, and all that existed was an inadequate military government. In September 1849, having more than the requisite population and being much in need of better government, California petitioned for admission to the Union as a state.

Since few slaveholders had chosen to risk their valuable investments in human property in the turbulent atmosphere of California, the people of the area not surprisingly sought admission as a free state, touching off a serious sectional crisis back east.

The Compromise of 1850

President Zachary Taylor, though himself a Louisiana slaveholder, opposed the further spread of slavery. Hoping to sidestep the dangerously divisive issue of slavery in the territories, he encouraged California as well as the rest of the Mexican Cession to organize and seek admission directly as states, thus completely bypassing the territorial stage.

Southerners were furious. They saw the admission of California as a free state to be a backdoor implementation of the hated Wilmot Proviso they had fought so hard to turn back in Congress. They were also growing increasingly alarmed at what was becoming the minority status of their section within the country. Long outnumbered in the House of Representatives, the South would now find itself, should California be admitted as a free state, also outvoted in the Senate.

Other matters created friction between North and South. A large tract of land was disputed between Texas, a slave state, and the as yet unorganized New Mexico Territory, where slavery's future was at best uncertain. Southerners were angered by the small-scale but much talked of efforts of Northern abolitionists' "underground railroad" to aid escaped slaves in

reaching permanent freedom in Canada. Northerners were disgusted by the presence of slave pens and slave markets in the nation's capital. Radical Southerners talked of secession and scheduled an all Southern convention to meet in Nashville in June 1850 to propose ways of protecting Southern interests, inside or outside the Union.

At this point the aged Henry Clay attempted to compromise the various matters of contention between North and South. He proposed an eight-part package deal that he hoped would appeal to both sides.

For the North, the package contained these aspects: California would be admitted as a free state; the land in dispute between Texas and New Mexico would go to New Mexico; New Mexico and Utah Territories (all of the Mexican Cession outside of California) would not be specifically reserved for slavery, but its status there would be decided by popular sovereignty; and, the slave trade would be abolished in the District of Columbia.

For the South, the package offered the following: A tougher Fugitive Slave Law would be enacted; the federal government would pay Texas' $10,000,000 pre-annexation debt; Congress would declare that it did not have jurisdiction over the interstate slave trade; and Congress would promise not to abolish slavery itself in the District of Columbia.

What followed the introduction of Clay's compromise proposal was eight months of heated debate, during which Clay, Calhoun, and Daniel Webster—the three great figures of Congress during the first half of the nineteenth century—made some of their greatest speeches. Clay called for compromise and "mutual forbearance." Calhoun gravely warned that the only way to save the Union was for the North to grant all the South's demands and keep quiet on the issue of slavery. Webster abandoned his previous opposition to the spread of slavery (as well as most of his popularity back in his home state of Massachusetts) to support the Compromise in an eloquent speech.

The opponents of the Compromise were many and powerful and ranged from President Taylor, who demanded admission of California without reference to slavery, to Northern extremists, such as Senator William Seward of New York, who spoke of a "higher law" than the Constitution, forbidding the spread of slavery, to Southern extremists, such as Calhoun or Senator Jefferson Davis of Mississippi. By mid-summer all seemed lost for the Compromise, and Clay left Washington exhausted and discouraged.

Then the situation changed dramatically. President Taylor died (apparently of gastroenteritis) on July 9, 1850, and was succeeded by Vice President Millard Fillmore, a quiet but efficient politician and a strong supporter of compromise. In Congress the fight for the Compromise was taken up by Senator Stephen A. Douglas of Illinois. Called the "Little Giant" for his small stature but large political skills, Douglas broke Clay's proposal into its component parts so that he could use varying coalitions to push each part through Congress. This method proved successful, and the Compromise was adopted.

The Compromise of 1850 was received with joy by most of the nation. Sectional harmony returned, for the most part, and the issue of slavery in the territories seemed to have been permanently settled. That this was an illusion became apparent within a few years.

The Election of 1852

The 1852 Democratic convention deadlocked between Cass and Douglas and so instead settled on dark horse Franklin Pierce of New Hampshire. The Whigs, true to form, chose General Winfield Scott, a war hero of no political background.

The result was an easy victory for Pierce, largely because the Whig party, badly divided along North-South lines as a result of the battle over the Compromise of 1850, was beginning to come apart. The Free Soil party's candidate, John P. Hale of New Hampshire, fared poorly, demonstrating the electorate's weariness with the slavery issue.

Pierce and "Young America"

Americans eagerly turned their attention to railroads, cotton, clipper ships, and commerce. The world seemed to be opening up to American trade and influence.

President Pierce expressed the nation's hope that a new era of sectional peace was beginning. To assure this he sought to distract the nation's attention from the slavery issue to an aggressive program of foreign economic and territorial expansion known as "Young America."

In 1853 Commodore Matthew Perry led a U.S. naval force into Tokyo Bay on a peaceful mission to open Japan—previously closed to the outside world—to American diplomacy and commerce.

By means of the Reciprocity Treaty (1854), Pierce succeeded in opening Canada to greater U.S. trade. He also sought to annex Hawaii, increase U.S. interest in Central America, and acquire territories from Mexico and Spain.

From Mexico he acquired in 1853 the Gadsden Purchase, a strip of land in what is now southern New Mexico and Arizona along the Gila River. The purpose of this purchase was to provide a good route for a trans-continental railroad across the southern part of the country.

Pierce sought to buy Cuba from Spain. When Spain declined, three of Pierce's diplomats, meeting in Ostend, Belgium, sent him the Ostend Manifesto urging military seizure of Cuba should Spain remain intransigent.

Pierce was the first "doughface" president—a northern man with southern principles—and his expansionist goals, situated as they were in the South, aroused suspicion and hostility in antislavery northerners. Pierce's administration appeared to be dominated by southerners, such as Secretary of War Jefferson Davis, and whether in seeking a southern route for a trans-continental railroad or seeking to annex potential slave territory such as Cuba, it seemed to be working for the good of the South.

Economic Growth

The chief factor in the economic transformation of America during the 1840s and 1850s was the dynamic rise of the railroads. In 1840 America had less than 3,000 miles of railroad track. By 1860 that number had risen to over 30,000 miles. Railroads pioneered big-business techniques, and by improving transportation helped create a nationwide market. They also helped link the Midwest to the Northeast rather than the South, as would have been the case had only water transportation been available.

Water transportation during the 1850s saw the heyday of the steamboat on inland rivers and the clipper ship on the high seas. The period also saw rapid

and sustained industrial growth. The factory system began in the textile industry, where Elias Howe's invention of the sewing machine (1846) and Isaac Singer's improved model (1851) aided the process of mechanization, and spread to other industries.

Agriculture varied according to region. In the South, large plantations and small farms existed side by side for the most part, and both prospered enormously during the 1850s from the production of cotton. Southern leaders referred to the fiber as "King Cotton," an economic power that no one would dare fight against.

In the North the main centers of agricultural production shifted from the Middle Atlantic states to the more fertile lands of the Midwest. The main unit of agriculture was the family farm, and the main products were grain and livestock. Unlike the South where 3,500,000 slaves provided abundant labor, the North faced incentives to introduce labor-saving machines. Cyrus McCormick's mechanical reaper came into wide use, and by 1860 over 100,000 were in operation on Midwestern farms. Mechanical threshers also came into increasing use.

Decline of the Two-Party System

Meanwhile, ominous developments were taking place in politics. America's second two-party system, which had developed during the 1830s, was in the process of breaking down. The Whig party, whose dismal performance in the election of 1852 had signaled its weakness, was now in the process of complete disintegration. Partially this was the result of the issue of slavery, which tended to divide the party along North-South lines. Partially, though, it may have been the result of the nativist movement.

The nativist movement and its political party, the American, or, as it was called, the Know-Nothing party, grew out of alarm on the part of native-born Americans at the rising tide of German and Irish immigration during the late 1840s and early 1850s. The Know-Nothing party, so called because its members were told to answer "I know nothing" when asked about its secret proceedings, was anti-foreign and, since many of the foreigners were Catholic, also anti-Catholic. It surged briefly to become the country's second largest party by 1855 but faded even more quickly due to the ineptness of its leaders and the growing urgency of the slavery question, which, though ignored by the Know-Nothing party, was rapidly coming to overshadow all other issues. To some extent the Know-Nothing movement may simply have benefited from the already progressing disintegration of the Whig party, but it may also have helped to complete that disintegration.

All of this was ominous because the collapse of a viable nationwide two-party system made it much more difficult for the nation's political process to contain the explosive issue of slavery.

THE RETURN OF SECTIONAL CONFLICT

Continuing Sources of Tension

While Americans hailed the apparent sectional harmony created by the Compromise of 1850 and enjoyed the rapid economic growth of the decade that followed, two items which continued to create tension centered on the issue of slavery.

The Strengthened Fugitive Slave Law

The more important of these was a part of the Compromise itself, the strengthened federal Fugitive Slave Law. The law enraged Northerners, many of whom believed it little better than a legalization of kidnapping. Under its provisions blacks living in the North and claimed by slave catchers were denied trial by jury and many of the other protections of due process. Even more distasteful to antislavery Northerners was the provision that required all U.S. citizens to aid, when called upon, in the capture and return of alleged fugitives. So violent was Northern feeling against the law that several riots erupted as a result of attempts to enforce it. Some Northern states passed personal liberty laws in an attempt to prevent the working of the Fugitive Slave Law.

The effect of all this was to polarize the country even further. Many Northerners who had not previously taken an interest in the slavery issue now became opponents of slavery as a result of having its injustices forcibly brought home to them by the Fugitive Slave Law. Southerners saw in Northern resistance to the law further proof that the North was determined to tamper with the institution of slavery.

Publishing of *Uncle Tom's Cabin*

One Northerner who was outraged by the Fugitive Slave Law was Harriet Beecher Stowe. In response, she wrote *Uncle Tom's Cabin*, a fictional book depicting what she perceived as the evils of slavery. Furiously denounced in the South, the book became an overnight bestseller in the North, where it turned many toward active opposition to slavery. This, too, was a note of harsh discord among the seemingly harmonious sectional relations of the early 1850s.

The Kansas-Nebraska Act

All illusion of sectional peace ended abruptly when in 1854 Senator Stephen A. Douglas of Illinois introduced a bill in Congress to organize the area west of Missouri and Iowa as the territories of Kansas and Nebraska. Douglas, who apparently had no moral convictions on slavery one way or the other, hoped organizing the territories would facilitate the building of a trans-continental railroad on a central route, something that would benefit him and his Illinois constituents.

Though he sought to avoid directly addressing the touchy issue of slavery, Douglas was compelled by pressure from Southern senators such as David Atchison of Missouri to include in the bill an explicit repeal of the Missouri Compromise (which banned slavery in the areas in question) and a provision that the status of slavery in the newly organized territories be decided by popular sovereignty.

The bill was opposed by most Northern Democrats and a majority of the remaining Whigs, but with the support of the Southern-dominated Pierce administration, it was passed and signed into law.

The Republican Party

The Kansas-Nebraska Act aroused a storm of outrage in the North, where the repeal of the Missouri Compromise was seen as the breaking of a solemn agreement. It hastened the disintegration of the Whig party and divided the Democratic Party along North-South lines.

In the North, many Democrats left the party and were joined by former Whigs and Know-Nothings in the newly created Republican party. Springing to life almost overnight as a result of Northern fury at the Kansas-Nebraska Act, the Republican party included diverse elements whose sole unifying principle was the firm belief that slavery should be banned from all the nation's territories, confined to the states where it already existed, and allowed to spread no further.

Though its popularity was confined almost entirely to the North, the Republican party quickly became a major power in national politics.

Bleeding Kansas

With the status of Kansas (Nebraska was never in much doubt) to be decided by the voters there, North and South began competing to see which could send the greatest number. Northerners formed the New England Emigrant Aid Company to promote the settling of antislavery men in Kansas, and Southerners responded in kind. Despite these efforts the majority of Kansas settlers were Midwesterners who were generally opposed to the spread of slavery but were more concerned with finding good farm land than deciding the national debate over slavery in the territories.

Despite this large antislavery majority, large-scale election fraud, especially on the part of heavily armed Missouri "border ruffians" who crossed into Kansas on election day to vote their pro-slavery principles early and often, led to the creation of a virulently pro-slavery territorial government. When the presidentially appointed territorial governor protested this gross fraud, Pierce removed him from office.

Free soil Kansans responded by denouncing the pro-slavery government as illegitimate and forming their own free-soil government in an election which the pro-slavery faction boycotted. Kansas now had two rival governments, each claiming to be the only lawful one.

Both sides began blaming themselves and soon the territory was being referred to in the Northern press as "Bleeding Kansas" as full-scale guerilla war erupted. In May 1856, Missouri border ruffians sacked the free-soil town of Lawrence, killing two and destroying homes, businesses, and printing presses. Two days later a small band of antislavery zealots under the leadership of fanatical abolitionist John Brown retaliated by killing and mutilating five unarmed men and boys at a pro-slavery settlement on Pottawatomie Creek. In all, some 200 died in the months of guerilla fighting that followed.

Meanwhile, violence had spread even to Congress itself. In the same month as the Sack of Lawrence and the Pottawatomie Massacre, Senator Charles Sumner of Massachusetts made a two-day speech entitled "The Crime Against Kansas," in which he not only denounced slavery but also made degrading personal references to aged South Carolina Senator Andrew Butler. Two days later Butler's nephew, Congressman Preston Brooks, also of South Carolina, entered the Senate chamber and, coming on Sumner from behind, beat him about the head and shoulders with a cane, leaving him bloody and unconscious.

Once again the North was outraged, while in the South, Brooks was hailed as a hero. New canes were sent to him to replace the one he had broken over Sumner's head. Denounced by Northerners, he resigned his seat and was

overwhelmingly re-elected. Northerners were further incensed and bought thousands of copies of Sumner's inflammatory speech.

The Election of 1856

The election of 1856 was a three-way contest that pitted Democrats, Know-Nothings, and Republicans against each other.

The Democrats dropped Pierce and passed over Douglas to nominate James Buchanan of Pennsylvania. Though a veteran of 40 years of politics, Buchanan was a weak and vacillating man whose chief qualification for the nomination was that during the slavery squabbles of the past few years he had been out of the country as American minister to Great Britain and therefore had not been forced to take public positions on the controversial issues.

The Know-Nothings, including the remnant of the Whigs, nominated Millard Fillmore. However, choice of a Southerner for the nomination of vice president so alienated Northern Know-Nothings that many shifted their support to the Republican candidate.

The Republicans nominated John C. Frémont of California. A former officer in the army's Corps of Topographical Engineers, Frémont was known as "the Pathfinder" for his explorations in the Rockies and the Far West. The Republican platform called for high tariff s, free Western homesteads (160 acres) for settlers, and, most important, no further spread of slavery. Their slogan was "Free Soil, Free Men, and Frémont." Southerners denounced the Republican party as an abolitionist organization and threatened secession should it win the election.

Against divided opposition Buchanan won with apparent ease. However, his victory was largely based on the support of the South, since Frémont carried most of the Northern states. Had the Republicans won Pennsylvania and either Illinois or Indiana, Frémont would have been elected. In the election the Republicans demonstrated surprising strength for a political party only two years old and made clear that they, and not the Know-Nothings, would replace the moribund Whigs as the other major party along with the Democrats.

The Dred Scott Case

Meanwhile, there had been rising through the court system a case that would give the Supreme Court a chance to state its opinion on the question of slavery in the territories. The case was *Dred Scott v. Sanford* and involved a Missouri slave, Dred Scott, who had been encouraged by abolitionists to sue for his freedom on the basis that his owner, an army doctor, had taken him for a stay of several years in a free state, Illinois, and then in a free territory, Wisconsin. By 1856 the case had made its way to the Supreme Court, and by March of the following year the Court was ready to render its decision.

The justices were at first inclined to rule simply that Scott, as a slave, was not a citizen and could not sue in court. Buchanan, however, shortly before his inauguration urged the justices to go farther and attempt to settle the whole slavery issue once and for all, thus removing it from the realm of politics where it might prove embarrassing to the president.

The Court obliged. Under the domination of aging pro-Southern Chief Justice Roger B. Taney of Maryland, it attempted to read the extreme Southern position on slavery into the Constitution, ruling not only that Scott had no standing to sue in federal court, but also that temporary residence in a free

state, even for several years, did not make a slave free, and that the Missouri Compromise (already a dead letter by that time) had been unconstitutional all along because Congress did not have the authority to exclude slavery from any territory whatsoever. Nor did territorial governments, which were considered to receive their power from Congress, have the right to prohibit slavery.

Far from settling the sectional controversy, the Dred Scott case only made it worse. Southerners were encouraged to take an extreme position and refuse compromise, while antislavery Northerners became more convinced than ever that there was a pro-slavery conspiracy controlling all branches of government, and expressed an unwillingness to accept the Court's dictate as final.

Buchanan and Kansas

Later in 1857 the pro-slavery government in Kansas, through largely fraudulent means, arranged for a heavily pro-slavery constitutional convention to meet at the town of Lecompton. The result was a state constitution that allowed slavery. To obtain a pretense of popular approval for this constitution, the convention provided for a referendum in which the voters were to be given a choice only to prohibit the entry of additional slaves into the state.

Disgusted free-soilers boycotted the referendum, and the result was a constitution that put no restrictions at all on slavery. Touting this Lecompton constitution, the pro-slavery territorial government petitioned Congress for admission to the Union as a slave state. Meanwhile the free-soilers drafted a constitution of their own and submitted it to Congress as the legitimate one for the prospective state of Kansas.

Eager to appease the South, which had started talking of secession again, and equally eager to suppress antislavery agitation in the North, Buchanan vigorously backed the Lecompton constitution. Douglas, appalled at this travesty of popular sovereignty, broke with the administration to oppose it. He and Buchanan became bitter political enemies, with the president determined to use all the power of the Democratic organization to crush Douglas politically.

After extremely bitter and acrimonious debate, the Senate approved the Lecompton constitution, but the House insisted that Kansans be given a chance to vote on the entire document. Southern congressmen did succeed in managing to apply pressure to the Kansas voters by adding the stipulation that should the Lecompton constitution be approved, Kansas would receive a generous grant of federal land, but should it be voted down, Kansas would remain a territory.

Nevertheless, Kansas voters, when given a chance to express themselves in a fair election, turned down the Lecompton constitution by an overwhelming margin, choosing to remain a territory rather than become a slave state. Kansas was finally admitted as a free state in 1861.

The Panic of 1857

In 1857 the country was struck by a short but severe depression. There were three basic causes for this "Panic of 1857": several years of overspeculation in railroads and lands, faulty banking practices, and an interruption in the flow of European capital into American investments as a result of the Crimean War. The North blamed the Panic on low tariff s, while the South, which had suffered much less than the industrial North, saw the

Panic as proof of the superiority of the Southern economy in general and slavery in particular.

The Lincoln-Douglas Debates

The 1858 Illinois senatorial campaign produced a series of debates that got to the heart of the issues that were threatening to divide the nation. In that race incumbent Democratic Senator and front-runner for the 1860 presidential nomination Stephen A. Douglas was opposed by a Springfield lawyer, little known outside the state, by the name of Abraham Lincoln.

Though Douglas had been hailed in some free-soil circles for his opposition to the Lecompton constitution, Lincoln, in a series of seven debates that the candidates agreed to hold during the course of the campaign, stressed that Douglas's doctrine of popular sovereignty failed to recognize slavery for the moral wrong it was. Again and again Lincoln hammered home the theme that Douglas was a secret defender of slavery because he did not take a moral stand against it.

Douglas, for his part, maintained that his guiding principle was democracy, not any moral standard of right or wrong with respect to slavery. The people could, as far as he was concerned, "vote it up or vote it down." At the same time he strove to depict Lincoln as a radical and an abolitionist who believed in racial equality and race mixing.

At the debate held in Freeport, Illinois, Lincoln pressed Douglas to reconcile the principle of popular sovereignty to the Supreme Court's decision in the Dred Scott Case. How could the people "vote it up or vote it down," if, as the Supreme Court alleged, no territorial government could prohibit slavery? Douglas, in what came to be called his "Freeport Doctrine," replied that the people of any territory could exclude slavery simply by declining to pass any of the special laws that slave jurisdictions usually passed for their protection.

Douglas's answer was good enough to win him re-election to the Senate, although by the narrowest of margins, but hurt him in the coming presidential campaign. The Lecompton fight had already destroyed Douglas's hopes of uniting the Democratic party and defusing the slave issue. It had also damaged his 1860 presidential hopes by alienating the South. Now his Freeport Doctrine hardened the opposition of Southerners already angered by his anti-Lecompton stand.

For Lincoln, despite the failure to win the Senate seat, the debates were a major success, propelling him into the national spotlight and strengthening the backbone of the Republican party to resist compromise on the free-soil issue.

THE COMING OF THE CIVIL WAR

John Brown's Raid

On the night of October 16, 1859, John Brown, the Pottawatomie Creek murderer, led 18 followers in seizing the federal arsenal at Harpers Ferry, Virginia (now West Virginia), taking hostages, and endeavoring to incite a slave uprising. Brown, supported and bankrolled by several prominent Northern abolitionists (later referred to as "the Secret Six"), planned to arm local slaves and then spread his uprising across the South. His scheme was ill-conceived and had little chance of success. Quickly cornered by Virginia militia, he was eventually captured by a force of U.S. Marines under the

command of Army Colonel Robert E. Lee. Ten of Brown's 18 men were killed in the fight, and Brown himself was wounded.

Charged under Virginia law with treason and various other crimes, Brown was quickly tried, convicted, sentenced, and, on December 2, 1859, hanged. Throughout his trial and at his execution, he conducted himself with fanatical resolution, making eloquent and grandiose statements that convinced many Northerners that he was a martyr rather than a criminal. His death was marked in the North by signs of public mourning.

Though responsible Northerners such as Lincoln denounced Brown's raid as a criminal act that deserved to be punished by death, many Southerners became convinced that the entire Northern public approved of Brown's action and that the only safety for the South lay in a separate Southern confederacy. This was all the more so because Brown, in threatening to create a slave revolt, had touched on the foremost fear of white Southerners.

Hinton Rowan Helper's Book

The second greatest fear of Southern slaveholders was that Southern whites who did not own slaves, by far the majority of the Southern population, would come to see the continuation of slavery as not being in their best interest. This fear was touched on by a book, *The Impending Crisis in the South*, by a North Carolinian named Hinton Rowan Helper. In it Helper argued that slavery was economically harmful to the South and that it enriched the large planter at the expense of the yeoman farmer.

Southerners were enraged, and more so when the Republicans reissued a condensed version of the book as campaign literature. When the new House of Representatives met in December 1859 for the first time since the 1858 elections, angry Southerners determined that no Republican who had endorsed the book should be elected speaker.

The Republicans were the most numerous party in the House although they did not hold a majority. Their candidate for speaker, John Sherman of Ohio, had endorsed Helper's book. A rancorous two-month battle ensued in which the House was unable even to organize itself, let alone transact any business. Secession was talked of openly by Southerners, and as tensions rose congressmen came to the sessions carrying revolvers and Bowie knives. The matter was finally resolved by the withdrawal of Sherman and the election of a moderate Republican as speaker. Tensions remained fairly high.

The Election of 1860

In this mood the country approached the election of 1860, a campaign that eventually became a four-man contest.

The Democrats met in Charleston, South Carolina. Douglas had a majority of the delegates, but at that time a party rule required a two-thirds vote for the nomination. Douglas, faced with the bitter opposition of the Southerners and the Buchanan faction, could not gain this majority. Finally, the convention split up when Southern "fire-eaters" led by William L. Yancey walked out in protest of the convention's refusal to include in the platform a plank demanding federal protection of slavery in all the territories.

A second Democratic convention several weeks later in Baltimore also failed to reach a consensus, and the sundered halves of the party nominated separate candidates. The Southern wing of the party nominated Buchanan's vice president, John C. Breckinridge of Kentucky, on a platform calling for a federal

slave code in all the territories. What was left of the national Democratic party nominated Douglas on a platform of popular sovereignty.

A third presidential candidate was added by the Constitutional Union party, a collection of aging former Whigs and Know-Nothings from the southern and border states as well as a handful of moderate Southern Democrats. It nominated John Bell of Tennessee on a platform that sidestepped the issues and called simply for the Constitution, the Union, and the enforcement of the laws.

The Republicans met in Chicago, confident of victory and determined to do nothing to jeopardize their favorable position. Accordingly, they rejected as too radical front-running New York Senator William H. Seward in favor of Illinois favorite son Abraham Lincoln. The platform was designed to have something for all Northerners, including the provisions of the 1856 Republican platform as well as a call for federal support of a trans-continental railroad. Once again, its centerpiece was a call for the containment of slavery.

Douglas, believing only his victory could reconcile North and South, became the first U.S. presidential candidate to make a vigorous nationwide speaking tour. In his speeches he urged support for the Union and opposition to any extremist candidates that might endanger its survival, by which he meant Lincoln and Breckinridge.

On election day the voting went along strictly sectional lines. Breckinridge carried the Deep South; Bell, the border states; and Lincoln, the North. Douglas, although second in popular votes, carried only a single state and part of another. Lincoln led in popular votes, and though he was short of a majority in that category, he did have the needed majority in electoral votes and was elected.

The Secession Crisis

Lincoln had declared he had no intention of disturbing slavery where it already existed, but many Southerners thought otherwise. They also feared further raids of the sort John Brown had attempted and felt their pride injured by the election of a president for whom Southerners had not voted.

On December 20, 1860, South Carolina, by vote of a special convention made up of delegates elected by the people of the state, declared itself out of the Union. By February 1, 1861, six more states (Alabama, Georgia, Florida, Mississippi, Louisiana, and Texas) had followed suit.

Representatives of the seven seceded states met in Montgomery, Alabama, in February 1861 and declared themselves to be the Confederate States of America. They elected former Secretary of War and U.S. Senator Jefferson Davis of Mississippi as president and Alexander Stephens of Georgia as vice president. They also adopted a constitution for the Confederate States which, while similar to the U.S. Constitution in many ways, contained several important differences:

1. Slavery was specifically recognized, and the right to move slaves from one state to another was guaranteed.
2. Protective tariffs were prohibited.
3. The president was to serve for a single non-renewable six-year term.
4. The president was given the right to veto individual items within an appropriations bill.

5. State sovereignty was specifically recognized.

In the North reaction was mixed. Some, such as prominent Republican Horace Greeley of the *New York Tribune*, counseled, "Let erring sisters go in peace." President Buchanan, now a lame duck, seemed to be of this mind, since he declared secession to be unconstitutional but at the same time stated his belief that it was unconstitutional for the federal government to do anything to stop states from seceding. Taking his own advice, he did nothing.

Others, led by Senator John J. Crittenden of Kentucky, strove for a compromise that would preserve the Union. Throughout the period of several weeks as the Southern states one by one declared their secession, Crittenden worked desperately with a congressional compromise committee in hopes of working out some form of agreement.

The compromise proposals centered on the passage of a constitutional amendment forever prohibiting federal meddling with slavery in the states where it existed as well as the extension of the Missouri Compromise line (36° 30') to the Pacific, with slavery specifically protected in all the territories south of it.

Some Congressional Republicans were inclined to accept this compromise, but President-elect Lincoln urged them to stand firm for no further spread of slavery. Southerners would consider no compromise that did not provide for the spread of slavery, and talks broke down.

7. THE CIVIL WAR AND RECONSTRUCTION (1860–1877)

HOSTILITIES BEGIN

Fort Sumter

Lincoln did his best to avoid angering the slave states that had not yet seceded. In his inaugural address he urged Southerners to reconsider their actions but warned that the Union was perpetual, that states could not secede, and that he would therefore hold the federal forts and installations in the South.

Of these only two remained in federal hands: Fort Pickens, off Pensacola, Florida; and Fort Sumter, in the harbor of Charleston, South Carolina. Lincoln soon received word from Major Robert Anderson, commanding the small garrison at Sumter, that supplies were running low. Desiring to send in the needed supplies, Lincoln informed the governor of South Carolina of his intention but promised that no attempt would be made to send arms, ammunition, or reinforcements unless Southerners initiated hostilities.

Not satisfied, Southerners determined to take the fort. Confederate General P. G. T. Beauregard, acting on orders from President Davis, demanded Anderson's surrender. Anderson said he would if not resupplied. Knowing supplies were on the way, the Confederates opened fire at 4:30 a.m. on April 12, 1861. The next day the fort surrendered.

The day following Sumter's surrender Lincoln declared the existence of an insurrection and called for the states to provide 75,000 volunteers to put it down. In response to this, Virginia, Tennessee, North Carolina, and Arkansas declared their secession.

The remaining slave states, Delaware, Kentucky, Maryland, and Missouri, wavered to varying degrees but stayed with the Union. Delaware, which had

few slaves, gave little serious consideration to the idea of secession. Kentucky declared itself neutral and then sided with the North when the South failed to respect this neutrality. Maryland's incipient secession movement was crushed by Lincoln's timely imposition of martial law. Missouri was saved for the Union by the quick and decisive use of federal troops as well as the sizeable population of pro-Union, antislavery German immigrants living in St. Louis.

Relative Strengths at the Outset

An assessment of available assets at the beginning of the war would not have looked favorable for the South.

The North enjoyed at least five major advantages over the South. It had overwhelming preponderance in wealth and thus was better able to finance the enormous expense of the war. The North was also vastly superior in industry and thus capable of producing the needed war materials; while the South, as a primarily agricultural society, often had to improvise or do without.

The North furthermore had an advantage of almost three to one in manpower; and over one-third of the South's population was composed of slaves, whom Southerners would not use as soldiers. Unlike the South, the North received large numbers of immigrants during the war. The North retained control of the U.S. Navy, and thus would command the sea and be able, by blockading, to cut the South off from outside sources of supply.

Finally, the North enjoyed a much superior system of railroads, while the South's relatively sparse railroad network was composed of a number of smaller railroads, often not interconnected and with varying gauges of track, more useful for carrying cotton from the interior to port cities than for moving large amounts of war supplies or troops around the country.

The South did, however, have several advantages of its own. It was vast in size, and this would make it difficult to conquer; it did not need to conquer the North, but only resist being conquered itself. Its troops would also be fighting on their own ground, a fact that would give them the advantage of familiarity with the terrain as well as the added motivation of defending their homes and families. Its armies would often have the opportunity of fighting on the defensive, a major advantage in the warfare of that day.

At the outset of the war the South drew a number of highly qualified senior officers, such as Robert E. Lee, Joseph E. Johnston, and Albert Sidney Johnston, from the U.S. Army. By contrast, the Union command structure was already set when the war began, with the aged Winfield Scott, of Mexican War fame, at the top. It took young and talented officers, such as Ulysses S. Grant and William T. Sherman, time to work up to high rank. Meanwhile, Union armies were often led by inferior commanders as Lincoln experimented in search of good generals.

At first glance, the South might also have seemed to have an advantage in its president. Jefferson Davis had extensive military and political experience and was acquainted with the nation's top military men and, presumably, with their relative abilities. On the other hand, Lincoln had been, up until his election to the presidency, less successful politically and had virtually no military experience. In fact, Lincoln was much superior to Davis as a war leader, showing firmness, flexibility, mental toughness, great political skill, and, eventually, an excellent grasp of strategy.

Opposing Strategies

Both sides were full of enthusiasm for the war. In the North the battle cry was "On to Richmond," the new Confederate capital established after the secession of Virginia. In the South it was "On to Washington." Yielding to popular demand, Lincoln ordered General Irvin McDowell to advance on Richmond with his army. At a creek called Bull Run near the town of Manassas Junction, Virginia, just southwest of Washington, D.C., they met a Confederate force under generals P.G.T. Beauregard and Joseph E. Johnston, July 21, 1861. In the First Battle of Bull Run (called First Manassas in the South) the Union army was forced to retreat in confusion back to Washington.

Bull Run demonstrated the unpreparedness and inexperience of both sides. It also demonstrated that the war would be long and hard, and, particularly in the North, that greater efforts would be required. Lincoln would need an overall strategy. To supply this, Winfield Scott suggested his Anaconda Plan to squeeze the life out of the Confederacy, which included a naval blockade to shut out supplies from Europe, a campaign to take the Mississippi River, splitting the South in two, and the taking of a few strategic points and waiting for pro-Union sentiment in the South to overthrow the secessionists. Lincoln liked the first two points of Scott's strategy but considered the third point unrealistic.

He ordered a naval blockade, an overwhelming task considering the South's long coastline. Yet under Secretary of the Navy Gideon Welles, the Navy was expanded enormously and the blockade, derided in the early days as a "paper blockade," became increasingly effective.

Lincoln also ordered a campaign to take the Mississippi River. A major step in this direction was taken when naval forces under Captain David G. Farragut took New Orleans in April 1862.

Rather than waiting for pro-Unionists in the South to gain control, Lincoln hoped to raise huge armies and apply overwhelming pressure from all sides at once until the Confederacy collapsed. The strategy was good; the problem was finding good generals to carry it out.

THE UNION PRESERVED

Lincoln Tries McClellan

To replace the discredited McDowell, Lincoln chose General George B. McClellan. McClellan was a good trainer and organizer and was loved by the troops, but was unable to use effectively the powerful army (now called the Army of the Potomac) he had built up. Despite much prodding from Lincoln, McClellan hesitated to advance, badly overestimating his enemy's numbers.

Finally, in the spring of 1862, he took the Army of the Potomac by water down Chesapeake Bay to land between the York and James Rivers in Virginia. His plan was to advance up the peninsula formed by these rivers directly to Richmond.

The operations that followed were known as the Peninsula Campaign. McClellan advanced slowly and cautiously toward Richmond, while his equally cautious Confederate opponent, General Joseph E. Johnston, drew back to the outskirts of the city before turning to fight at the Battle of Seven Pines. In this inconclusive battle, Johnston was wounded. To replace him Jefferson Davis appointed his military advisor, General Robert E. Lee.

Lee summoned General Thomas J. "Stonewall" Jackson and his army from the Shenandoah Valley (where Jackson had just finished defeating several superior federal forces, causing consternation in Washington) and with the combined forces attacked McClellan.

After two days of bloody but inconclusive fighting, McClellan lost his nerve and began to retreat. In the remainder of what came to be called the Battle of the Seven Days, Lee continued to attack McClellan, forcing him back to his base, though at great cost in lives. McClellan's army was loaded back onto its ships and taken back to Washington.

Before McClellan's army could reach Washington and be completely deployed in northern Virginia, Lee saw and took an opportunity to thrash Union General John Pope, who was operating in northern Virginia with another Northern army, at the Second Battle of Bull Run.

Union Victories in the West

In the western area of the war's operations, essentially everything west of the Appalachian Mountains, matters were proceeding in a much different fashion. The Northern commanders there, Henry W. Halleck and Don Carlos Buell, were no more enterprising than McClellan, but Halleck's subordinate, Ulysses S. Grant, definitely was.

Seeking and obtaining permission from Halleck, Grant mounted a combined operation—army troops and navy gunboats—against two vital Confederate strong-holds, Forts Henry and Donelson, which guarded the Tennessee and Cumberland Rivers in northern Tennessee, and which were the weak point of the thin-stretched Confederate line under General Albert Sidney Johnston. When Grant captured the forts in February 1862, Johnston was forced to retreat to Corinth in northern Mississippi.

Grant pursued but, ordered by Halleck to wait until all was in readiness before proceeding, Grant halted his troops at Pittsburg Landing on the Tennessee River, 25 miles north of Corinth. On April 6, 1862, Johnston, who had received reinforcements and been joined by General P. G. T. Beauregard, surprised Grant there, but in the two-day battle that followed (Shiloh) failed to defeat him. Johnston himself was among the many killed in what was, up to this point, the bloodiest battle in American history.

Grant was severely criticized in the North for having been taken by surprise. Yet with other Union victories and Farragut's capture of New Orleans, the North had taken all of the Mississippi River except for a 110-mile stretch between the Confederate fortresses of Vicksburg, Mississippi, and Port Hudson, Louisiana.

The Success of Northern Diplomacy

Many Southerners believed Britain and France would rejoice in seeing a divided and weakened America. The two countries would likewise be driven by the need of their factories for cotton and thus intervene on the Confederacy's behalf. So strongly was this view held that during the early days of the war, when the Union blockade was still too weak to be very effective, the Confederate government itself prohibited the export of cotton in order to hasten British and French intervention.

This view proved mistaken for several reasons. Britain already had on hand large stocks of cotton from the bumper crops of the years immediately prior to the war. During the war the British were successful in finding alternative

sources of cotton, importing the fiber from India and Egypt. British leaders may also have weighed their country's need to import wheat from the northern United States against its desire for cotton from the Southern states. Finally, British public opinion opposed slavery.

Skillful Northern diplomacy had a great impact. In this, Lincoln had the extremely able assistance of Secretary of State William Seward, who took a hard line in warning Europeans not to interfere, and of Ambassador to Great Britain Charles Francis Adams. Britain therefore remained neutral and other European countries, France in particular, followed its lead.

One incident nevertheless came close to fulfilling Southern hopes for British intervention. In November 1861, Captain Charles Wilkes of the U.S.S. *San Jacinto* stopped the British mail and passenger ship *Trent* and forcibly removed Confederate emissaries James M. Mason and John Slidell. News of Wilkes' action brought great rejoicing in the North but outrage in Great Britain, where it was viewed as a violation of Britain's rights on the high seas. Lincoln and Seward, faced with British threats of war at a time the North could ill afford it, wisely chose to release the envoys and smooth things over with Britain.

The Confederacy was able to obtain some loans and to purchase small amounts of arms, ammunition, and even commerce-raiding ships such as the highly successful C.S.S. *Alabama*. However, Union naval superiority kept such supplies to a minimum.

The War at Sea

The Confederacy's major bid to challenge the Union's naval superiority was based on the employment of a technological innovation, the ironclad ship. The first and most successful of the Confederate ironclads was the C.S.S. *Virginia*. Built on the hull of the abandoned Union frigate *Merrimac*, the *Virginia* was protected from cannon fire by iron plates bolted over her sloping wooden sides. In May 1862 she destroyed two wooden warships of the Union naval force at Hampton Roads, Virginia, and was seriously threatening to destroy the rest of the squadron before being met and fought to a standstill by the Union ironclad U. S. S. *Monitor*.

The Home Front

The war on the home front dealt with the problems of maintaining public morale, supplying the armies of the field, and resolving constitutional questions regarding authority and the ability of the respective governments to deal with crises.

For the general purpose of maintaining public morale but also as items many Republicans had advocated even before the war, Congress in 1862 passed two highly important acts dealing with domestic affairs in the North.

The Homestead Act granted 160 acres of government land free of charge to any person who would farm it for at least five years. Much of the West was eventually settled under the provisions of this act. The Morrill Land Grant Act offered large amounts of the federal government's land to states that would establish "agricultural and mechanical" colleges. Many of the nation's large state universities were founded in later years under the provisions of this act.

Keeping the people relatively satisfied was made more difficult by the necessity, apparent by 1863, of imposing conscription in order to obtain adequate manpower for the huge armies that would be needed to crush the

South. Especially hated by many working class Northerners was the provision of the conscription act that allowed a drafted individual to avoid service by hiring a substitute or paying $300. Resistance to the draft led to riots in New York City in which hundreds were killed.

The Confederacy, with its much smaller manpower pool on which to draw, had instituted conscription in 1862. Here, too, it did not always meet with cooperation. Some Southern governors objected to it on doctrinaire states' rights grounds, doing all they could to obstruct its operation. A provision of the Southern conscription act allowing one man to stay home as overseer for every 20 slaves led the non-slaveholding whites who made up most of the Southern population to grumble that it was a "rich man's war and a poor man's fight." Draft-dodging and desertion became epidemic in the South by the latter part of the war.

Scarcity of food and other consumer goods in the South as well as high prices led to further desertion as soldiers left the ranks to care for their starving families. Discontent also manifested itself in the form of a "bread riot" in Richmond.

Supplying the war placed an enormous strain on both societies, but one the North was better able to bear.

To finance the Northern side of the war, high tariffs and an income tax (the nation's first) were resorted to, yet even more money was needed. The Treasury Department, under Secretary of the Treasury Salmon P. Chase, issued "greenbacks," an unbacked fiat currency that nevertheless fared better than the Southern paper money because of greater confidence in Northern victory. To facilitate the financing of the war through credit expansion, the National Banking Act was passed in 1863.

The South, with its scant financial resources, found it all but impossible to cope with the expense of war. Excise and income taxes were levied and some small loans were obtained in Europe, yet the Southern Congress still felt compelled to issue paper money in such quantities that it became virtually worthless. That, and the scarcity of almost everything created by the war and its disruption of the economy, led to skyrocketing prices.

The Confederate government responded to the inflation it created by imposing taxes-in-kind and impressment, the seizing of produce, livestock, etc., by Confederate agents in return for payment according to an artificially set schedule of prices. Since payment was in worthless inflated currency, this amounted to confiscation and soon resulted in goods of all sorts becoming even scarcer than otherwise when a Confederate impressment agent was known to be in the neighborhood.

Questions of constitutional authority to deal with crises plagued both presidents.

To deal with the emergency of secession, Lincoln stretched the presidential powers to the limit, or perhaps beyond the limit, of the Constitution. To quell the threat of secession in Maryland, Lincoln suspended the writ of *habeas corpus* and imprisoned numerous suspected secessionists without charges or trial, ignoring the insistence of pro-Southern Chief Justice Roger B. Taney in *ex Parte Merryman* (1861) that such action was unconstitutional.

"Copperheads," Northerners such as Clement L. Vallandigham of Ohio who opposed the war, denounced Lincoln as a tyrant and would-be dictator but remained a minority. Though occasionally subject to arrest and/or deportation

for their activities, they were generally allowed a considerable degree of latitude.

Davis encountered obstructionism from various state governors, the Confederate Congress, and even his own vice president, who denounced him as a tyrant for assuming too much power and failing to respect states' rights. Hampered by such attitudes, the Confederate government proved less effective than it might have been.

The Emancipation Proclamation

By mid-1862, Lincoln, under pressure from radical elements of his own party and hoping to create a favorable impression on foreign public opinion, determined to issue the Emancipation Proclamation, declaring free all slaves in areas still in rebellion as of January 1, 1863. In order that this not appear an act of panic and desperation in view of the string of defeats the North had recently suffered on the battlefields of Virginia, Lincoln, at Seward's recommendation, waited to announce the proclamation until the North should win some sort of victory. This was provided by the Battle of Antietam, September 17, 1863.

Though the Radical Republicans, pre-war abolitionists for the most part, had for some time been urging Lincoln to take such a step, Northern public opinion as a whole was less enthusiastic, as the Republicans suffered major losses in the November 1862 congressional elections.

The Turning Point in the East

After his victory of the Second Battle of Bull Run, Lee moved north and crossed into Maryland, where he hoped to win a decisive victory that would force the North to recognize Southern independence.

He was confronted by the Army of the Potomac, once again under the command of General George B. McClellan. Through a stroke of good fortune early in the campaign, detailed plans for Lee's entire audacious operation fell into McClellan's hands, but the Northern general, by extreme caution and slowness, threw away this incomparable chance to annihilate Lee and win—or at least shorten—the war.

The armies finally met along Antietam Creek, just east of the town of Sharpsburg in western Maryland. In a bloody but inconclusive day-long battle, known as Antietam in the North but as Sharpsburg in the South, McClellan's timidity led him to miss another excellent chance to destroy Lee's cornered and badly outnumbered army. After the battle Lee retreated to Virginia, and Lincoln, besides issuing the Emancipation Proclamation, removed McClellan from command.

To replace him, Lincoln chose General Ambrose E. Burnside, who promptly demonstrated his unfitness for command by blundering into a lopsided defeat at Fredericksburg, Virginia, December 13, 1862.

Lincoln then replaced Burnside with General Joseph "Fighting Joe" Hooker. Handsome and hard-drinking, Hooker had bragged of what he would do to "Bobby Lee" when he got at him; but when he took his army south, "Fighting Joe" quickly lost his nerve. He was out-generaled and soundly beaten at the Battle of Chancellorsville, May 5–6, 1863. At this battle the brilliant Southern general "Stonewall" Jackson was accidentally shot by his own men and died several days later.

Lee, anxious to shift the scene of the fighting out of his beloved Virginia, sought and received permission from President Davis to invade Pennsylvania. He was pursued by the Army of the Potomac, now under the command of General George G. Meade, whom Lincoln had selected to replace the discredited Hooker. They met at Gettysburg; and in a three-day battle (July 1–3, 1863) that was the bloodiest of the entire war, Lee, who sorely missed the services of Jackson and whose cavalry leader, the normally reliable J. E. B. Stuart, failed to provide him with timely reconnaissance, was defeated. However, he was allowed by the victorious Meade to retreat to Virginia with his army intact if battered, much to Lincoln's disgust. Still, Lee would never again have the strength to mount such an invasion.

Lincoln Finds Grant

Meanwhile Grant undertook to take Vicksburg, one of the two last Confederate bastions on the Mississippi River. In a brilliant campaign he bottled up the Confederate forces of General John C. Pemberton inside the city and placed them under siege. After six weeks of siege, the defenders surrendered on July 4, 1863. Five days later Port Hudson surrendered as well, giving the Union complete control of the Mississippi.

After Union forces under General William Rosecrans suffered an embarrassing defeat at the Battle of Chickamauga in northwestern Georgia, September 19–20, 1863, Lincoln named Grant overall commander of Union forces in the West.

Grant went to Chattanooga, Tennessee, where Confederate forces under General Braxton Bragg were virtually besieging Rosecrans, and immediately took control of the situation. Gathering Union forces from other portions of the western theater and combining them with reinforcements from the East, Grant won a resounding victory at the Battle of Chattanooga (November 23–25, 1863), in which federal forces stormed seemingly impregnable Confederate positions on Lookout Mountain and Missionary Ridge. This victory put Union forces in position for a drive into Georgia, which began the following spring.

Early in 1864 Lincoln made Grant commander of all Union armies. Grant devised a coordinated plan for constant pressure on the Confederacy. General William T. Sherman would lead a drive toward Atlanta, Georgia, with the goal of destroying the Confederate army under General Joseph E. Johnston (who had replaced Bragg). Grant himself would accompany Meade and the Army of the Potomac in advancing toward Richmond with the goal of destroying Lee's Confederate army.

In a series of bloody battles (the Wilderness, Spotsylvania, Cold Harbor) in May and June of 1864, Grant drove Lee to the outskirts of Richmond. Still unable to take the city or get Lee at a disadvantage, Grant circled around to try to take both by way of the back door, attacking Petersburg, Virginia, an important railroad junction just south of Richmond and the key to that city's —and Lee's—supply lines. Once again turned back by entrenched Confederate troops Grant settled down to besiege Petersburg and Richmond in a stalemate that lasted some nine months.

Sherman had been advancing simultaneously in Georgia. He maneuvered Johnston back to the outskirts of Atlanta with relatively little fighting. At that point Confederate President Davis lost patience with Johnston and replaced him with the aggressive General John B. Hood. Hood and Sherman fought

three fierce but inconclusive battles around Atlanta in late July, then settled down to a siege of their own during the month of August.

The Election of 1864 and Northern Victory

In the North discontentment grew with the long casualty lists and seeming lack of results. Yet the South could stand the grinding war even less. By late 1864 Jefferson Davis had reached the point of calling for the use of blacks in the Confederate armies, though the war ended before black troops could see action for the Confederacy. The South's best hope was that Northern war-weariness would bring the defeat of Lincoln and the victory of a peace candidate in the election of 1864.

Lincoln ran on the ticket of the National Union party, essentially the Republican party with loyal or "War" Democrats. His vice-presidential candidate was Andrew Johnson, a loyal Democrat from Tennessee.

The Democratic party's presidential candidate was General George B. McClellan, who, with some misgivings, ran on a platform labeling the war a failure and calling for a negotiated peace settlement even it that meant Southern independence.

The outlook was bleak for a time, and even Lincoln himself believed that he would be defeated. Then in September 1864 word came that Sherman had taken Atlanta. The capture of this vital Southern rail and manufacturing center brought an enormous boost to northern morale. Along with other Northern victories that summer and fall, it insured a resounding election victory for Lincoln and the continuation of the war to complete victory for the North.

To speed that victory Sherman marched through Georgia from Atlanta to the sea, arriving at Savannah in December 1864 and turning north into the Carolinas, leaving behind a 60-mile-wide swath of destruction. His goal was to impress on Southerners that continuation of the war could only mean ruin for all of them. He and Grant planned that his army should press on through the Carolinas and into Virginia to join Grant in finishing off Lee.

Before Sherman's troops could arrive, Lee abandoned Richmond (April 3,1865) and attempted to escape with what was left of his army. Pursued by Grant, he was cornered and forced to surrender at Appomattox, Virginia, April 9, 1865. Other Confederate armies still holding out in various parts of the South surrendered over the next few weeks.

Lincoln did not live to receive news of the final surrenders. On April 14, 1865, he was shot in the back of the head while watching a play in Ford's Theater in Washington. His assassin, pro-Southern actor John Wilkes Booth, injured his ankle in making his escape. Hunted down by Union cavalry several days later, he died of a gunshot wound, apparently self-inflicted. Several other individuals were tried, convicted, and hanged by a military tribunal for participating with Booth in a conspiracy to assassinate not only Lincoln, but also Vice President Johnson and Secretary of State Seward.

THE ORDEAL OF RECONSTRUCTION

Lincoln's Plan of Reconstruction

Reconstruction began well before fighting of the Civil War came to an end. It brought a time of difficult adjustments in the South.

Among those who faced such adjustments were the recently freed slaves, who flocked into Union lines or followed advancing Union armies or whose plantations were part of the growing area of the South that came under Union military control. Some slaves had left their plantations, and thus their only means of livelihood, in order to obtain freedom within Union lines. Many felt they had to leave their plantations in order to be truly free, and some sought to find relatives separated during the days of slavery. Some former slaves also seemed to misunderstand the meaning of freedom, thinking they need never work again.

To ease the adjustment for these recently freed slaves, Congress in 1865 created the Freedman's Bureau, to provide food, clothing, and education, and generally look after the interests of former slaves.

Even before the need to deal with this problem had forced itself on the Northern government's awareness, steps had been taken to deal with another major adjustment of Reconstruction, the restoration of loyal governments to the seceded states. By 1863 substantial portions of several Southern states had come under Northern military control, and Lincoln had set forth a policy for re-establishing governments in those states.

Lincoln's policy, known as the Ten Percent Plan, stipulated that Southerners, except for high-ranking rebel officials, could take an oath promising future loyalty to the Union and acceptance of the end of slavery. When the number of those who had taken this oath within any one state reached ten percent of the number who had been registered to vote in that state in 1860, a loyal state government could be formed. Only those who had taken the oath could vote or participate in the new government.

Tennessee, Arkansas, and Louisiana met the requirements and formed loyal governments but were refused recognition by Congress, which was dominated by Radical Republicans.

The Radical Republicans, such as Thaddeus Stevens of Pennsylvania, believed Lincoln's plan did not adequately punish the South, restructure Southern society, and boost the political prospects of the Republican party. The loyal southern states were denied representation in Congress and electoral votes in the election of 1864.

Instead the Radicals in Congress drew up the Wade-Davis Bill. Under its stringent terms a majority of the number who had been alive and registered to vote in 1860 would have to swear an "ironclad" oath stating that they were now loyal and had never been disloyal. This was obviously impossible in any former Confederate state unless blacks were given the vote, something Radical Republicans desired but Southerners definitely did not. Unless the requisite number swore the "ironclad" oath, Congress would not allow the state to have a government.

Lincoln killed the Wade-Davis Bill with a "pocket veto," and the Radicals were furious. When Lincoln was assassinated the Radicals rejoiced, believing Vice President Andrew Johnson would be less generous to the South or at least easier to control.

Johnson's Attempt at Reconstruction

To the dismay of the Radicals, Johnson followed Lincoln's policies very closely, making them only slightly more stringent by requiring ratification of the Thirteenth Amendment (officially abolishing slavery), repudiation of

Confederate debts, and renunciation of secession. He also recommended the vote be given to blacks.

Southern states proved reluctant to accept these conditions, some declining to repudiate Confederate debts or ratify the Thirteenth Amendment (it nevertheless received the ratification of the necessary number of states and was declared part of the Constitution in December 1865). No Southern state extended the vote to blacks (at this time no Northern state did, either). Instead the Southern states promulgated black codes, imposing various restrictions on the freedom of the former slaves.

Foreign Policy Under Johnson

On coming into office Johnson had inherited a foreign policy problem involving Mexico and France. The French Emperor, Napoleon III, had made Mexico the target of one of his many grandiose foreign adventures. In 1862, while the U.S. was occupied with the Civil War and therefore unable to prevent this violation of the Monroe Doctrine, Napoleon III had Archduke Maximilian of Austria installed as a puppet emperor of Mexico, supported by French troops. The U.S. had protested but for the time could do nothing.

With the war over, Johnson and Secretary of State Seward were able to take more vigorous steps. General Philip Sheridan was sent to the Rio Grande with a military force. At the same time Mexican revolutionary leader Benito Juarez was given the tacit recognition of the U.S. government. Johnson and Seward continued to invoke the Monroe Doctrine and to place quiet pressure on Napoleon III to withdraw his troops. In May 1866, facing difficulties of his own in Europe, the French emperor did so, leaving the unfortunate Maximilian to face a Mexican firing squad.

Johnson's and Seward's course of action in preventing the extension of the French Empire into the Western Hemisphere strengthened America's commitment to and the rest of the world's respect for the Monroe Doctrine.

In 1866 the Russian minister approached Seward with an offer to sell Alaska to the U.S. The Russians desired to sell Alaska because its fur resources had been largely exhausted and because they feared that in a possible war with Great Britain (something that seemed likely at the time) they would lose Alaska anyway.

Seward, who was an ardent expansionist, pushed hard for the purchase of Alaska, known as "Seward's Folly" by its critics, and it was largely through his efforts that it was pushed through Congress. It was urged that purchasing Alaska would reward the Russians for their friendly stance toward the U.S. government during the Civil War at a time when Britain and France had seemed to favor the Confederacy.

In 1867 the sale went through and Alaska was purchased for $7,200,000.

Congressional Reconstruction

Southern intransigence in the face of Johnson's relatively mild plan of Reconstruction was manifested in the refusal of some states to repudiate the Confederate debt and ratify the Thirteenth Amendment. The refusal to give the vote to blacks, the passage of black codes, and the election of many former high-ranking Confederates to Congress and other top positions in the Southern states, played into the hands of the Radicals, who were anxious to impose harsh rule on the South. They could now assert that the South was refusing to accept the verdict of the war.

Once again Congress excluded the representatives of the Southern states. Determined to reconstruct the South as it saw fit, Congress passed a Civil Rights Act and extended the authority of the Freedman's Bureau, giving it both quasi-judicial and quasi-executive powers.

Johnson vetoed both bills, claiming they were unconstitutional; but Congress overrode the vetoes. Fearing that the Supreme Court would agree with Johnson and overturn the laws, Congress approved and sent on to the states for ratification (June1866) the Fourteenth Amendment, making constitutional the laws Congress had just passed. The Fourteenth Amendment defined citizenship and forbade states to deny various rights to citizens, reduced the representation in Congress of states that did not allow blacks to vote, forbade the paying of the Confederate debt, and made former Confederates ineligible to hold public office. With only one Southern state, Tennessee, ratifying, the amendment failed to receive the necessary approval of three-fourths of the states. But the Radicals in Congress were not finished. Strengthened by victory in the 1866 elections, they passed, over Johnson's veto, the Military Reconstruction Act, dividing the South into five military districts to be ruled by military governors with almost dictatorial powers. Tennessee, having ratified the Fourteenth Amendment, was spared the wrath of the Radicals. The rest of the Southern states were ordered to produce constitutions giving the vote to blacks and to ratify the Fourteenth Amendment before they could be "readmitted." In this manner the Fourteenth Amendment was ratified.

Realizing the unprecedented nature of these actions, Congress moved to prevent any check or balance from the other two branches of government. Steps were taken toward limiting the jurisdiction of the Supreme Court so that it could not review cases pertaining to congressional Reconstruction policies. This proved unnecessary as the Court, now headed by Chief Justice Salmon P. Chase in place of the deceased Taney, readily acquiesced and declined to overturn the Reconstruction acts.

To control the president, Congress passed the Army Act, reducing the president's control over the army. In obtaining the cooperation of the army, the Radicals had the aid of General Grant, who already had his eye on the 1868 Republican presidential nomination. Congress also passed the Tenure of Office Act, forbidding Johnson to dismiss cabinet members without the Senate's permission. In passing the latter act, Congress was especially thinking of Radical Secretary of War Edwin M. Stanton, a Lincoln holdover whom Johnson desired to dismiss.

Johnson obeyed the letter but not the spirit of the Reconstruction acts, and Congress, angry at his refusal to cooperate, sought in vain for grounds to impeach him until in August 1867, Johnson violated the Tenure of Office Act (by dismissing Stanton) in order to test its constitutionality. The matter was not tested in the courts, however, but in Congress, where Johnson was impeached by the House of Representatives and came within one vote of being removed by the Senate. For the remaining months of his term he offered little further resistance to the Radicals.

The Election of 1868 and the Fifteenth Amendment

In 1868 the Republican convention, dominated by the Radicals, drew up a platform endorsing Radical Reconstruction. For president, the Republicans nominated Ulysses S. Grant, who had no political record and whose views—if

any—on national issues were unknown. The vice-presidential nominee was Schuyler Colfax.

Though the Democratic nomination was sought by Andrew Johnson, the party knew he could not win and instead nominated former Governor Horatio Seymour of New York for president and Francis P. Blair, Jr. of Missouri for vice president. Both had been Union generals during the war. The Democratic platform mildly criticized the excesses of Radical Reconstruction and called for continued payment of the war debt in greenbacks, although Seymour himself was a hard-money man.

Grant, despite his enormous popularity as a war hero, won by only a narrow margin, drawing only 300,000 more popular votes than Seymour. Some 700,000 blacks had voted in the Southern states under the auspices of Army occupation, and since all of these had almost certainly voted for Grant, it was clear that he had not received a majority of the white vote.

The narrow victory of even such a strong candidate as Grant prompted Republican leaders to decide that it would be politically expedient to give the vote to all blacks, North as well as South. For this purpose the Fifteenth Amendment was drawn up and submitted to the states. Ironically, the idea was so unpopular in the North that it won the necessary three-fourths approval only with its ratification by Southern states required to do so by Congress.

Post-War Life in the South

Reconstruction was a difficult time in the South. During the war approximately one in ten Southern men had been killed. Many more were maimed for life. Those who returned from the war found destruction and poverty. Property of the Confederate government was confiscated by the federal government, and dishonest Treasury agents confiscated private property as well. Capital invested in slaves or in Confederate war bonds was lost. Property values fell to one-tenth of their pre-war level. The economic results of the war stayed with the South for decades.

The political results were less long-lived but more immediately disturbing to Southerners. Southerners complained of widespread corruption in governments sustained by federal troops and composed of "carpetbaggers," "scalawags" (respectively the Southern names for Northerners who came to the South to participate in Reconstruction governments and Southerners who supported the Reconstruction regimes), and recently freed blacks.

Under the Reconstruction governments, social programs were greatly expanded, leading to higher taxes and growing state debts. Some of the financial problems were due to corruption, a problem in both North and South in this era when political machines, such as William Marcy "Boss" Tweed's Tammany Hall machine in New York, dominated many Northern city governments and grew rich.

Southern whites sometimes responded to Reconstruction governments with violence, carried out by groups such as the Ku Klux Klan, aimed at intimidating blacks and white Republicans out of voting. The activities of these organizations were sometimes a response to those of the Union League, an organization used by Southern Republicans to control the black vote. The goal of Southerners not allied with the Reconstruction governments, whether members of the Ku Klux Klan or not, was "redemption" (i.e., the end of the Reconstruction governments).

By 1876 Southern whites had been successful, by legal means or otherwise, in "redeeming" all but three Southern states. The following year the federal government ended its policy of Reconstruction and the troops were withdrawn, leading to a return to power of white Southerners in the remaining states.

Reconstruction ended primarily because the North lost interest. Corruption in government, economic hard times brought on by the Panic of 1873, and general weariness on the part of Northern voters with the effort to remake Southern society all sapped the will to continue. Diehard Radicals such as Thaddeus Stevens and Charles Sumner were dead.

Corruption Under Grant

Having arrived in the presidency with no firm political positions, Grant found that the only principle he had to guide his actions was his instinctive loyalty to his old friends and the politicians who had propelled him into office. This principle did not serve him well as president. Though personally of unquestioned integrity, he naively placed his faith in a number of thoroughly dishonest men. His administration was rocked by one scandalous revelation of government corruption after another. Not every scandal involved members of the executive branch, but together they tended to taint the entire period of Grant's administration as one of unparalleled corruption.

The "Black Friday" Scandal

In the "Black Friday" scandal, two unscrupulous businessmen, Jim Fiske and Jay Gould, schemed to corner the gold market. To further their designs, they got Grant's brother-in-law to convince the president that stopping government gold sales would be good for farmers. Grant naively complied, and many businessmen were ruined as the price of gold was bid up furiously on "Black Friday." By the time Grant realized what was happening, much damage had already been done.

The Credit Mobilier Scandal

In the Credit Mobilier scandal, officials of the Union Pacific Railroad used a dummy construction company called Credit Mobilier to skim off millions of dollars of the subsidies the government was paying the Union Pacific for building a transcontinental railroad. To ensure that Congress would take a benevolent attitude toward all this, the officials bribed many of its members lavishly. Though much of this took place before Grant came into office, its revelation in an 1872 congressional investigation created a general scandal.

The "Salary Grab Act"

In the "Salary Grab Act" of 1873, Congress voted a 100 percent pay raise for the president and a 50 percent increase for itself and made both retroactive two years back. Public outrage led to a Democratic victory in the next congressional election and the law was repealed.

The Sanborn Contract Fraud

In the Sanborn Contract fraud, a politician named Sanborn was given a contract to collect $427,000 in unpaid taxes for a 50 percent commission. The commission found its way into Republican campaign funds.

The Whiskey Ring Fraud

In the Whiskey Ring fraud, distillers and treasury officials conspired to defraud the government of large amounts of money from the excise tax on whiskey. Grant's personal secretary was in on the plot, and Grant himself naively accepted gifts of a questionable nature. When the matter came under investigation, Grant endeavored to shield his secretary.

The Bribing of Belknap

Grant's secretary of war, W. W. Belknap, accepted bribes from corrupt agents involved in his department's administration of Indian affairs. When the matter came out, he resigned to escape impeachment.

The Liberal Republicans

Discontentment within Republican ranks with regard to some of the earlier scandals as well as with the Radicals' vindictive Reconstruction policies led a faction of the party to separate and constitute itself as the Liberal Republicans. Besides opposing corruption and favoring sectional harmony, the Liberal Republicans favored hard money and a laissez-faire approach to economic issues. For the election of 1872 they nominated *New York Tribune* editor Horace Greeley for president. Eccentric, controversial, and ineffective as a campaigner, Greeley proved a poor choice. Though nominated by the Democrats as well as the Liberal Republicans, he was easily defeated by Grant, who was again the nominee of the Radicals.

Economic Issues Under Grant

Many of the economic difficulties the country faced during Grant's administration were caused by the necessary readjustments from a wartime back to a peacetime economy.

The central economic question was deflation versus inflation or, more specifically, whether to retire the unbacked paper money, greenbacks, printed to meet the wartime emergency, or to print more.

Economic conservatives, creditors, and business interests usually favored retirement of the greenbacks and an early return to the gold standard.

Debtors, who had looked forward to paying off their obligations in depreciated paper money worth less than the gold-backed money they had borrowed, favored a continuation of currency inflation through the use of more greenbacks. The deflation that would come through the retirement of existing greenbacks would make debts contracted during or immediately after the war much harder to pay.

Generally, Grant's policy was to let the greenbacks float until they were on par with gold and could then be retired without economic dislocation.

Early in Grant's second term the country was hit by an economic depression known as the Panic of 1873. Brought on by the overexpansive tendencies of railroad builders and businessmen during the immediate post-war boom, the Panic was triggered by economic downturns in Europe and, more immediately, by the failure of Jay Cooke and Company, a major American financial firm.

The financial hardship brought on by the Panic led to renewed clamor for the printing of more greenbacks. In 1874 Congress authorized a small new issue of greenbacks, but it was vetoed by Grant. Pro-inflation forces were further enraged when Congress in 1873 demonetized silver, going to a straight gold standard. Silver was becoming more plentiful due to Western mining and

was seen by some as a potential source of inflation. Pro-inflation forces referred to the demonetization of silver as the "Crime of '73."

In 1875 Congress took a further step toward retirement of the greenbacks and return to a working gold standard when, under the leadership of John Sherman, it passed the Specie Resumption Act, calling for the resumption of specie payments (i.e., the redeemability of the nation's paper money in gold) by January 1, 1879.

Disgruntled proponents of inflation formed the Greenback party and nominated Peter Cooper for president in 1876. However, they gained only an insignificant number of votes.

The Disputed Election of 1876

In the election of 1876, the Democrats campaigned against corruption and nominated New York Governor Samuel J. Tilden, who had broken the Tweed political machine of New York City.

The Republicans passed over Grant, who was interested in another term and had the backing of the remaining hard-core Radicals, and turned instead to Governor Rutherford B. Hayes of Ohio. Like Tilden, Hayes was decent, honest, in favor of hard money and civil service reform, and opposed to government regulation of the economy. In their campaigning, the Republicans resorted to a tactic known as "waving the bloody shirt." Successfully used in the last two presidential elections, this meant basically playing on wartime animosities, urging Northerners to vote the way they had shot, and suggested that a Democratic victory and a Confederate victory would be about the same thing.

This time the tactic was less successful. Tilden won the popular vote and led in the electoral vote 184 to 165. However, 185 electoral votes were needed for election, and 20 votes, from the three Southern states still occupied by federal troops and run by Republican governments, were disputed.

Though there had been extensive fraud on both sides, Tilden undoubtedly deserved at least the one vote he needed to win. Congress created a special commission to decide the matter. It was to be composed of five members each from the Senate, the House, and the Supreme Court. Of these, seven were to be Republicans, seven Democrats, and one an independent. The Republicans arranged, however, for the independent justice's state legislature to elect him to the Senate. When the justice resigned to take his Senate seat, it left all the remaining Supreme Court justices Republican. One of them was chosen, and in a series of eight-to-seven votes along straight party lines, the commission voted to give all 20 disputed votes—and the election—to Hayes.

When outraged congressional Democrats threatened to reject these obviously fraudulent results, a compromise was worked out. In the Compromise of 1877, Hayes promised to show consideration for Southern interests, end Reconstruction, and withdraw the remaining federal troops from the South in exchange for Democratic acquiescence in his election.

Reconstruction would probably have ended anyway, since the North had already lost interest in it.

PRACTICE TEST 1

CLEP History of the United States I

Also available at the REA Study Center (*www.rea.com/studycenter*)

This practice test is also offered online at the REA Study Center. All CLEP exams are computer-based, and our test is formatted to simulate test-day conditions. We recommend that you take the online version of the test to receive these added benefits:

- **Timed testing conditions**–helps you gauge how much time you can spend on each question
- **Automatic scoring**–find out how you did on the test, instantly
- **On-screen detailed explanations of answers**–gives you the correct answer and explains why the other answer choices are wrong
- **Diagnostic score reports**–pinpoint where you're strongest and where you need to focus your study

PRACTICE TEST 1

CLEP History of the United States I

(Answer sheets appear in the back of the book.)

TIME: 90 Minutes
120 Questions

DIRECTIONS: Each of the questions or incomplete statements below is followed by five possible answers or completions. Select the best choice in each case and fill in the corresponding oval on the answer sheet.

1. In the impeachment process against the president, the _____ determines the guilt or innocence of the president.

   (A) House of Representatives
   (B) Senate
   (C) Supreme Court
   (D) Cabinet
   (E) American people

2. The right to a speedy trial is guaranteed Americans by

   (A) the Declaration of Independence.
   (B) the First Amendment.
   (C) the Third Amendment.
   (D) the Sixth Amendment.
   (E) Article II of the Constitution.

3. According to Article II of the U.S. Constitution, the sole authority to suspend the writ of *habeas corpus* resides in

   (A) the Supreme Court.

(B) the president.
(C) the attorney general.
(D) the Congress.
(E) the state governors.

4. In James Madison's "Federalist Paper Number Ten," the most dangerous threat to the U.S. Constitution was presented by

(A) the president's war powers.
(B) factions.
(C) the Supreme Court.
(D) a standing army.
(E) freedom of speech.

5. The Dutch colony at New Netherland was categorized by all of the following EXCEPT

(A) its great reliance upon the fur trade.
(B) friendly relations with neighboring Amerindians.
(C) relatively small population.
(D) ethnic diversity of settlers.
(E) a desire for its own wealth.

6. North American Indian cultures were characterized by all of the following EXCEPT

(A) a diversified economy of hunting, fishing, and farming.
(B) a division of labor by gender.
(C) a reliance on oral culture.
(D) an animistic religion that worshipped the spiritual elements of nature.
(E) the lack of the presence of warfare.

7. Spanish colonization of the New World was characterized by all of the following EXCEPT

(A) ruthless exploitation of the Indians.
(B) establishing African slavery in the Americas.
(C) reliance upon large families as settlers.
(D) introduction of the horse to America.
(E) the creation of large agricultural plantations.

8. The Puritans left England to settle in America in order to

(A) establish religious freedom for all Christians.
(B) emulate the Spanish conquistadors.
(C) create a perfect religious utopia.
(D) avoid serving in the English army.
(E) protest the persecution of the Pilgrims.

9. Seventeenth-century English settlers of New England differed from those in Virginia by

(A) living shorter lives because of the harsh climate.
(B) importing large numbers of slaves.
(C) settling on isolated farms.
(D) living in tightly clustered communities.
(E) having large families.

10. King Philip's War of 1675–1676 was fought to

(A) remove Spanish Catholics from Florida.

(B) end Spanish control over the African slave trade.
(C) establish New England trade with the West Indies.
(D) stop the French from settling the Ohio River Valley.
(E) establish English control over the Indians in New England.

11. The only eighteenth century North American British colony with a black population majority was

(A) North Carolina
(B) Virginia
(C) Maryland
(D) South Carolina
(E) Georgia

12. From 1689 until 1763, England fought a series of wars with France for control of North America. Which of the following wars was not part of this series?

(A) King William's War
(B) Queen Anne's War
(C) The Seven Years' War
(D) King George's War
(E) King Philip's War

13. Colonial government in British North America did NOT allow

(A) universal manhood suffrage.
(B) bicameral legislatures.
(C) annual elections.
(D) for a republican form of government.
(E) local units of government to exist.

14. James Otis earned fame for his defense of American political freedom in

(A) his book, *Common Sense*.
(B) the Writs of Assistance case.
(C) the Virginia House of Burgesses.
(D) the Second Continental Congress.
(E) the Boston Tea Party.

15. The Boston Massacre occurred after which of the following events?

(A) The Intolerable Acts
(B) The Townshend Duties
(C) The First Continental Congress
(D) The Battle of Lexington and Concord
(E) The Boston Tea Party

QUESTIONS 16 and 17 refer to the following passage.

I am directly opposed to any purpose of secession. The Constitution was made, not merely for the generation which then existed, but for posterity, undefined, unlimited, permanent, and perpetual . . . and for every subsequent state which might come into the Union, binding themselves by that indissoluble bond.

16. The passage most nearly represents the views of

I. Henry Clay.
II. John C. Calhoun.
III. Daniel Webster.

(A) I only.
(B) II only.
(C) I and II only.
(D) I and III only.
(E) I, II, and III.

17. The passage is from the only debate in which William Seward, Henry Clay, John C. Calhoun, Daniel Webster, Stephen A. Douglas, Salmon Chase, and Jefferson Davis all took part. This debate resulted in

(A) the secession of South Carolina from the Union in 1861.
(B) the Kansas-Nebraska Acts of 1854.
(C) the Missouri Compromise of 1820.
(D) the Compromise of 1850.
(E) the location of the Mason-Dixon line.

18. The battle of Saratoga in 1777 was best known for

(A) near total defeat of Washington by Howe.
(B) securing America an alliance with France.
(C) the first signs of Benedict Arnold's treason.
(D) being the first battle in the South.
(E) the splitting of the American states in half by the Howe brothers.

19. In 1632, England allowed its first proprietary colony as a refuge for Catholics in

(A) Connecticut.
(B) Maryland..
(C) New York.
(D) New Hampshire.
(E) Delaware

20. Prior to 1763, the British policy of mercantilism encouraged the American colonies to

(A) develop native American manufactures.
(B) trade with the French West Indies.
(C) cease importing African slaves.
(D) supply England with raw materials.
(E) All of the above.

21. At the Philadelphia Convention of 1788, the author of the Great Compromise to the U.S. Constitution was

(A) Patrick Henry.
(B) John Adams.
(C) Thomas Jefferson.
(D) Roger Sherman.
(E) James Madison.

22. During the ratification contest, the Antifederalist critique of the proposed U.S. Constitution contained all of the following arguments EXCEPT

(A) the lack of a written Bill of Rights.
(B) the lack of a popular vote for the presidency.
(C) the location of the new government in Washington, D.C.
(D) the powers of the Supreme Court.
(E) the large territory of the United States.

23. Opposition to the Jay Treaty in the U.S. Senate centered around

(A) the opening of American trade with the West Indies.
(B) the British refusal to withdraw troops from American soil.
(C) the settlement of American debts to British merchants.
(D) its inability to stop the practice of British impressment.
(E) None of the above.

24. "Millions for defense, not one cent for tribute" became the nation's rallying cry during

(A) the Whiskey Rebellion.
(B) the Jay Treaty.
(C) Hamilton's fiscal policies.
(D) the XYZ Affair.
(E) Fries Rebellion.

25. In the election of 1800, the House of Representatives selected the president because of the deadlocked election between

(A) John Adams and Thomas Jefferson.
(B) Thomas Jefferson and Aaron Burr.
(C) Thomas Jefferson and Charles Pickney.
(D) James Madison and John Adams.
(E) George Washington and John Adams.

26. Women emerged from the American Revolution with the prescribed new responsibility of

(A) enjoying the vote.
(B) serving in local political office.
(C) becoming public school teachers.
(D) raising sons and daughters as good republican citizens.
(E) All of the above.

27. The Lewis and Clark expedition occurred AFTER which event?

(A) War of 1812
(B) Louisiana Purchase
(C) Embargo of 1807
(D) Nullification Controversy
(E) Missouri Compromise

28. The "Burr Conspiracy" refers to

(A) Aaron Burr's attempt to steal the presidency from Thomas Jefferson in 1800.
(B) Burr's scheme to create a new nation from the Southern territory of the United States.
(C) Burr's attempt to assassinate President James Madison.
(D) Burr's attempt to defraud the Bank of the United States of $20 million.
(E) None of the above.

29. During the War of 1812, the battle waged AFTER the signing of the peace treaty at Ghent was the

(A) Invasion of Canada.
(B) Battle of Lake Erie.
(C) burning of Washington, D.C.
(D) Battle of New Orleans.
(E) None of the above.

30. The principle that "American continents [were not]…subjects for future colonizations by any European power" is expressed directly in

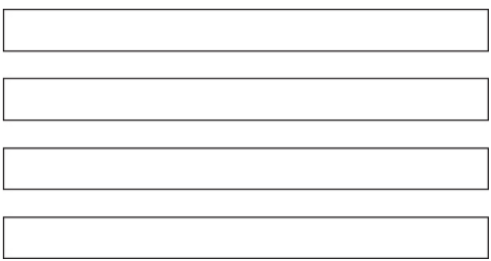
(A) George Washington's farewell address.
(B) the Monroe Doctrine.
(C) the Truman Doctrine.
(D) *McCulloch v. Maryland*.
(E) the Bill of Rights.

31. "John Marshall has made his decision; now let him enforce it," refers to which Supreme Court decision scorned by President Andrew Jackson?

(A) *Gibbons v. Ogden*
(B) *McCulloch v. Maryland*
(C) Dred Scott Case
(D) *Cherokee Nation v. Georgia*
(E) *Marbury v. Madison*

32. Place the following events from the Revolutionary War in correct chronological order. Place the earliest event first.

Treaty of Paris
Cornwallis surrenders
Battle of Camden, South Carolinas
Winter at Valley Forge



Click on a choice, then click on a box.

33. All of the following were major reform movements during the 1830s EXCEPT

(A) Temperence.
(B) Revivalism.
(C) Women's Rights.
(D) Education.
(E) Labor Unions.

34. Andrew Jackson referred to the Election of 1824 as "the corrupt bargain" because of

(A) the Whig election smear campaign against him.
(B) wide-scale fraud in the popular vote.
(C) the selection of Henry Clay as President John Quincy Adams' secretary of state.
(D) the Senate's choice of John Quincy Adams as president.

(E) the lack of a popular vote for the electoral college.

35. Andrew Jackson's impact on the office of the presidency is characterized by a reliance on

(A) the veto as a political weapon.
(B) a "kitchen cabinet."
(C) the spoils system.
(D) public opinion.
(E) All of the above.

36. Jackson's reasons for his veto of the Second Bank of the United States included

(A) the Bank of the United States was a monopoly.
(B) fear of foreign control of the United States through the Bank.
(C) the Bank's political uses of its funding.
(D) the Bank was unconstitutional.
(E) All of the above.

37. The historian most associated with the view of slavery as crushing African-Americans into a "sambo personality" is

(A) Herbert Aptheker.
(B) George Fitzhugh.
(C) Harriet Beecher Stowe.
(D) Eugene Genovese.
(E) Stanley Elkins.

38. The slavery as a "positive good" argument was presented by

(A) Benjamin Lundy.
(B) Henry Clay.
(C) George Fitzhugh.
(D) Stephen Douglas.
(E) William Lloyd Garrison.

39. Although Texas claimed its independence from Mexico in 1837, it was not admitted as an American state until 1845 because

(A) of prolonged treaty negotiations with Mexico.
(B) of the doctrine of Manifest Destiny.
(C) Sam Houston's hatred of President Martin Van Buren.
(D) the North's fear of a growing slave power in the United States.
(E) of strong anti-American sentiment among Texas settlers.

40. Select the statement which BEST represents Abraham Lincoln's public position on slavery in the Election of 1860.

(A) "We must purge this land by blood."
(B) "We consider the slaveholder a relentless tyrant."
(C) "On the issue of slavery I will not retreat a single inch."
(D) "If I can maintain the Union with slavery I shall; if I can maintain the Union without slavery I shall."
(E) "Slavery is the most dreaded disease known to civilized mankind."

41. The Mexican-American War resulted in Mexico ceding all of the following territories to the United States EXCEPT

(A) Texas.
(B) New Mexico.
(C) California.

(D) Nevada.
(E) Washington.

42. Which of the following events occurred last?

(A) Kansas-Nebraska Act
(B) Nat Turner Rebellion
(C) Seneca Falls Convention
(D) Lincoln-Douglas debates
(E) Homestead Act

43. Northern denunciation of the Compromise of 1850 was directed primarily toward

(A) the Fugitive Slave Law.
(B) statehood for California.
(C) the acquisition of New Mexico and Utah as slave territories.
(D) the gag rule in the House of Representatives.
(E) continuation of the African slave trade.

44. The Dred Scott decision in 1857 by Chief Justice Roger Taney declared

(A) African-Americans were citizens.
(B) slaves legally could sue in federal courts.
(C) slaves were not property.
(D) the Missouri Compromise was unconstitutional.
(E) All of the above.

45. In the election of 1860, Abraham Lincoln's total of the popular vote was

(A) 80 percent.
(B) 70 percent.
(C) 60 percent.
(D) 50 percent.
(E) 40 percent.

46. The Emancipation Proclamation immediately freed the slaves

(A) throughout the United States.
(B) only in the border states.
(C) throughout the South only.
(D) in Maryland and Tennessee.
(E) None of the above.

47. Because of its acceptance of the states' rights doctrine, the Confederacy most closely resembled

(A) the British Constitution.
(B) the Articles of Confederation.
(C) Napoleonic France.
(D) the United States Constitution.
(E) None of the above.

48. During the Civil War, President Lincoln gave evidence of his democratic beliefs by

(A) sponsoring the Homestead Act.
(B) the recruitment of black soldiers into the Northern Army.
(C) the Emancipation Proclamation.
(D) the Fourteenth Amendment.
(E) his actions during his first four months in office.

49. The vast majority of settlers who traveled to the Far West because of the Homestead Act's grant of a free 160-acre farm

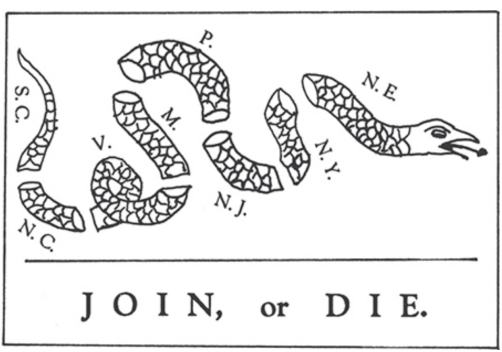
(A) proposed and established democracy in the region.
(B) were supporters of the Democratic party.
(C) returned East after failing as farmers.
(D) were ex-slaves.
(E) were recent immigrants from Eastern Europe.

50. According to most historians, the major failure of Northern Reconstruction was its inability to

(A) educate the ex-slaves.
(B) provide the vote to ex-slaves.
(C) provide economic independence to ex-slaves.
(D) control the Northern desire to punish the South.
(E) establish civil rights for the ex-slaves.

51. The president associated with the Sellout of 1876 was

(A) U.S. Grant.
(B) Ben Tilden.
(C) Andrew Johnson.
(D) Rutherford B. Hayes.
(E) William Howard Taft.



52. The cartoon above by Benjamin Franklin (1754) offered a warning to the 13 colonies if they

(A) refused to enter the Seven Years' War.
(B) continued to follow the British policy of mercantilism.
(C) did not protest the Stamp Act.
(D) continued trading with French Canada.
(E) rejected the Albany Plan.

QUESTIONS 53 and 54 refer to the following passage.

The major problems of this country today are the result of too many immigrants and the corrupt influence of Papists (Roman Catholics). The immigrants are stealing jobs that belong to the native-born American citizens. Their low moral values threaten the very fabric of our society. The Papists serve Rome, not the United States. They would turn governmental power over to the Pope in a second, if given the chance. Therefore we believe that Papists should not be allowed to hold political office in the United States. Immigrants should be required to live in the United States for at least 21 years before being eligible to vote.

53. The passage most closely represents the views of which political party?

(A) Free Soil party
(B) Know-Nothing party
(C) Populist party
(D) Republican party
(E) Whig party

54. The political philosophy represented in this passage achieved its peak in popularity around

(A) 1825.
(B) 1835.
(C) 1845.
(D) 1855.
(E) 1865

55. Which of the following led to European discovery and exploration of the Americas?

(A) Discovery of new land routes to Asia
(B) Breakdown of the Genoese and Venetian monopoly over Mediterranean-European trade
(C) Decline of commercial banking
(D) Development of new navigational instruments
(E) Success of the Crusades in bringing Christian control of the Middle East

56. Roger Williams came into conflict with the Puritan authorities for advocating that

(A) the land belonged by right to the English.
(B) government rested upon the consent of the governed.
(C) political leaders could have no authority over religious matters.
(D) religion should be based on direct intuition of God and his love.
(E) no one had the right to worship according to their individual conscience.

57. Which of the following was NOT one of the Middle Colonies?

(A) New Jersey
(B) Connecticut
(C) New York
(D) Delaware
(E) Pennsylvania

58. Which of the following did NOT characterize French settlement in the New World?

(A) The French controlled access to the Mississippi River and the St. Lawrence River.

(B) The French established trade in furs.
(C) The French developed widespread settlement in the interior of the continent.
(D) The French established a single government for all of New France.
(E) The French generally established good relations with the Indians.

59. The key British victory in the French and Indian War was at

(A) Louisburg.
(B) Fort Frontenac.
(C) Fort Duquesne.
(D) Crown Point.
(E) Ticonderoga.

60. Which of the following prevented the entrance of Texas into the Union after it gained independence in 1836?

(A) Texas wanted to permit slavery
(B) Opposition to Mexicans residing within American territory
(C) Inability to control Indian tribes in the area
(D) The influence of Catholicism on Texas
(E) Disagreement over the southern boundary of Texas

61. The "Middle Passage" refers to

(A) the route traveled by Lewis and Clark through the Rocky Mountains.
(B) the route to the Orient sought by Henry Hudson.
(C) the road established between Cumberland, Maryland, and Vandalia, Illinois.
(D) the route across Panama for those heading to the California gold fields.
(E) the voyage between Africa and the Americas taken by the slave traders.

62. All of the following were advocates of religious toleration EXCEPT

(A) William Penn.
(B) John Winthrop.
(C) Roger Williams.
(D) Lord Baltimore.
(E) Thomas Jefferson.

63. According to British mercantilist policy, the colonies would perform all of the following functions EXCEPT

(A) provide markets for British goods.
(B) produce manufactured goods.
(C) provide raw materials for British manufacturing.
(D) encourage the growth of a strong merchant fleet.
(E) provide bases for the Royal Navy.

64. The Intolerable Acts of 1774 were passed in response to

(A) the Boston Tea Party.
(B) the Boston Massacre.
(C) formation of the Continental Congress.
(D) the Gaspee Affair.
(E) creation of the Committee of Correspondence.

65. Which of the following served as an American commander during the American Revolution?

(A) William Howe

(B) John Burgoyne
(C) Nathaniel Greene
(D) Barry St. Leger
(E) Henry Clinton

66. The Constitutional Convention took place in 1787 in what city?

(A) New York
(B) Philadelphia
(C) Washington, D.C.
(D) Baltimore
(E) Boston

67. Alexander Hamilton's "Report on Public Credit" proposed which of the following?

(A) Repudiate the Confederate debts
(B) Establish a protective tariff
(C) Offer bonuses to encourage manufacturing
(D) Assume the state debts
(E) Establish a national bank

68. Under Thomas Jefferson, the Republicans

(A) reversed Federalist measures for funding the national debt.
(B) renewed the charter of the Bank of the United States.
(C) reduced the federal budget.
(D) enlarged the United States Army.
(E) increased the national debt.

69. The Adams-Onis Treaty (1819) gave the United States

(A) Louisiana
(B) Oregon
(C) Texas
(D) California
(E) Florida

70. Which of the following is NOT associated with the "American System"?

(A) A protective tariff to stimulate new industries
(B) Henry Clay
(C) The Second Bank of the United States
(D) Federally funded internal improvements
(E) Bonuses to new industries

71. The Bill of Rights

(A) is the first ten amendments to the Constitution.
(B) limited the powers of the federal government to those specifically named in the Constitution.
(C) gave citizens freedom of religion, assembly, speech and press, and the right of petition.
(D) guaranteed the rights of persons accused of crime.
(E) All of the above.

72. The most important difference between the South and other sections of the United States prior to 1860 was which of the following?

(A) Slavery
(B) Economic diversification
(C) Rural patterns of living

(D) Development of transportation systems
(E) Population growth

73. The Jacksonian era was notable for its

(A) decrease in the number of active voters.
(B) destruction of the spoils system.
(C) opposition to party nominating conventions.
(D) support of Indian rights.
(E) rhetorical egalitarianism.

74. What group of immigrants prior to the Civil War helped stimulate formation of the American, or "Know-Nothing," party?

(A) Italians
(B) Russian Jews
(C) Slavs
(D) Irish
(E) Chinese

75. The term "scalawag" was used during Reconstruction to describe

(A) the freed slaves.
(B) Northerners who came into the South.
(C) members of the Ku Klux Klan.
(D) native-born Southerners who cooperated with the Northerners.
(E) blacks who served in the Southern state legislatures.

76. The "Crime of '73" refers to

(A) the Bland-Allison bill which required the Treasury Department to purchase between $2 million and $4 million worth of silver each month.
(B) the Sherman Silver Purchase Act which required the Treasury Department to purchase 4.5 million ounces of silver each month.
(C) the removal of silver coins from the list of standard coins.
(D) the decision to purchase silver at the ratio of 16 to 1 in relation to gold.
(E) the refusal to coin silver purchased by the Treasury Department.

77. Which of the following acts was NOT passed during the Civil War (1861–1865)?

(A) Morrill Tariff Act
(B) National Banking Act
(C) Homestead Act
(D) Conscription Act
(E) Tenure of Office Act

78. The map above represents European powers in North America as of

(A) 1600.
(B) 1682.
(C) 1713.
(D) 1763.
(E) 1783.

79. By 1860 approximately how many slaves lived in the South?

(A) 2 million
(B) 3 million
(C) 4 million
(D) 5 million
(E) 6 million

80. Andrew Jackson contributed to the depression of 1837 by doing which of the following?

(A) Placing federal funds in the Bank of the United States
(B) Issuing the Specie Circular
(C) Establishing the Independent Treasury

(D) Opposing the Ordinance of Nullification
(E) Vetoing the renewal of the charter of the Bank of the United States

81. The Twelfth Amendment (1804) to the Constitution

(A) required the electoral college to vote separately for president and vice president.
(B) provided for freedom of religion.
(C) limited the president to two terms.
(D) prohibited the manufacture and sale of alcoholic beverages.
(E) gave the right to bear arms.

82. *The Federalist Papers*

(A) were written anonymously by Alexander Hamilton, John Jay, and James Madison.
(B) argued that under the Constitution the states would relinquish too much sovereignty.
(C) opposed ratification of the Constitution without the addition of a bill of rights.
(D) convinced Patrick Henry to support the Constitution.
(E) stressed that the Constitutional Convention was instructed to revise the Articles of Confederation, not to write a new constitution.

83. The Ostend Manifesto of 1854 concerned which of the following?

(A) Hawaii
(B) Alaska
(C) Puerto Rico
(D) Cuba
(E) Guam

84. The Declaratory Act of 1766

(A) required the colonists to provide barracks and supplies for British troops.
(B) forbade the American colonists to issue paper money.
(C) established a new duty on molasses.
(D) stated that Parliament had the power to make laws binding on the colonies.
(E) established a tax on licenses, legal documents, and newspapers.

85. Which of the following writers was NOT a part of the "American Renaissance" of the mid-nineteenth century?

(A) Henry James
(B) Nathaniel Hawthorne
(C) Walt Whitman
(D) Henry David Thoreau
(E) Herman Melville

86. Secessionist feeling during the War of 1812 was strong in

(A) New England and the West.
(B) New England.
(C) the South.
(D) the South and West.
(E) the West.

87. Which of the following is associated with early English settlement in the New World?

(A) Joint-stock companies
(B) Encomienda
(C) Prince Henry the Navigator
(D) George III
(E) Republicanism

88. After 1840, the Northeast's primary economic concern was

(A) international commerce.
(B) agriculture.
(C) manufacturing of finished products.
(D) production of raw materials.
(E) national commerce.

89. By the middle 1760s the most influential citizens in the New England towns were the

(A) ministers.
(C) merchants.
(E) laborers.
(B) artisans.
(D) farmers.

90. Which of the following was NOT a Union strategy in the Civil War?

(A) Fight a defensive war
(B) Blockade the Confederate coastline
(C) Seize control of the Mississippi River
(D) Seize Richmond, Virginia
(E) Control the interior railroad lines of the South

91. Place the following causes/events of the Mexican War in correct chronological order. Place the earliest event first.

Declaration of war on Mexico
Treaty of Guadalupe-Hidalgo
Annexation of Texas by the U.S.
Texas wins independence from Mexico

Click on a choice, then click on a box.

92. The ordinances of 1785 and 1787 established all of the following EXCEPT

(A) division of the Northwestern lands into townships.

(B) reservation of one section in each township for support of public schools.
(C) establishment of territorial government.
(D) protection of slavery.
(E) a procedure for achieving statehood.

93. Which of the following was NOT originally a proprietary colony?

(A) Georgia
(B) South Carolina
(C) Maryland
(D) Virginia
(E) Pennsylvania

94. Which of the following contributed significantly to the growth of antislavery sentiment in the 1850s?

(A) The establishment of the American Anti-Slavery Society
(B) Publication of *Uncle Tom's Cabin*
(C) William Lloyd Garrison's founding of *The Liberator*
(D) Passage of the "gag" rule by the House of Representatives
(E) Creation of the Liberty party

95. The panic of 1857 fundamentally resulted from

(A) the violence in Kansas.
(B) the economic impact of gold from California.
(C) the Dred Scott decision.
(D) excessive investments in railroads.
(E) the secessionist movement in the South.

96. Which of the following was NOT characteristic of Spanish civilization in the New World?

(A) The mission system
(B) Slavery
(C) The viceroy
(D) The search for gold and silver
(E) Republican government

97. All of the following are associated with the Pilgrims EXCEPT

(A) separatism.
(B) Massachusetts Bay Colony.
(C) Mayflower Compact.
(D) Squanto.
(E) Plymouth.

98. Which of the following colonies was established so that debtors freed from English prisons could start a new life?

(A) Georgia
(B) Maryland
(C) North Carolina
(D) New Jersey
(E) Delaware

99. The French and Indian War or Seven Years' War resulted in which of the following after the signing of the Treaty of Paris in 1763?

(A) Spain gained control of Florida.

(B) The British occupied Cuba and the Philippines.
(C) The British gained control of Guadeloupe and Martinique.
(D) The Spanish obtained New Orleans and Louisiana.
(E) The French retained Quebec.

100. Which of the following does NOT correctly describe the Southern colonies?

(A) They were the most English of the colonies.
(B) They were largely urban.
(C) The plantations were on the coastal plains.
(D) Tobacco and rice were the chief cash crops.
(E) Most Southerners lived on small farms.

101. The Treaty of Ghent, which ended the War of 1812, included which of the following?

(A) Settlement of Canadian border problems
(B) Recognition of American neutral rights
(C) Restoration of territory taken during the war
(D) Cessation of the impressment of American seamen
(E) Transfer of Canadian land to the United States

102. The Iroquois Confederation included all of the following Indian tribes EXCEPT

(A) Sioux.
(B) Mohawk.
(C) Seneca.
(D) Oneida.
(E) Cayuga.

103. What was the first college to be established in colonial America?

(A) King's College (Columbia)
(B) College of William and Mary
(C) Harvard College
(D) Queen's College (Rutgers)
(E) College of New Jersey (Princeton)

104. The British government faced all of the following problems in 1763 EXCEPT

(A) war debts.
(B) defense costs.
(C) independence movements in colonial America.
(D) government of Florida and Canada.
(E) ownership of the western lands of colonial America.

105. Which of the following was feared as a mob leader by British colonial authorities?

(A) Thomas Jefferson
(B) Patrick Henry
(C) John Adams
(D) James Otis
(E) Samuel Adams

106. Which of the following does NOT appear in the Declaration of Independence?

(A) A portrayal of the king as an evil ruler

(B) An argument for religious toleration
(C) A statement of the basic principles of democracy
(D) An announcement that a state of war existed with Great Britain
(E) An argument for the right of Americans to revolt

107. The government under the Articles of Confederation had all of the following powers EXCEPT

(A) regulation of weights and measures.
(B) establishment of a post office.
(C) creation of a navy.
(D) coinage of money.
(E) taxation.

108. The Jay Treaty (1794) provided for

(A) the acceptance of American trade with the French West Indies.
(B) free navigation of the Mississippi.
(C) an ending of impressment of American seamen.
(D) the settlement of the Canadian boundary.
(E) evacuation of English troops from their posts along the Great Lakes.

109. The XYZ Affair of 1797–98 resulted in

(A) a new treaty with France.
(B) a quasi-war with France.
(C) an American loan to France.
(D) a declaration of war on France.
(E) an apology to France for remarks that President Adams made to Congress.

Growth of White Population, Massachusetts Bay, 1700–1740

Year	*Total Population*
1700	55,941
1710	62,390
1720	91,008
1730	114,116
1740	151,613

110. Based on the above chart, in what year did the population of Massachusetts Bay grow by the largest percentage?

(A) 1700
(B) 1710
(C) 1720
(D) 1730
(E) 1740

111. Which of the following was resolved by negotiation soon after the Treaty of Ghent (1814)?

(A) Disarmament of the Great Lakes
(B) Impressment of American seamen
(C) Neutral rights
(D) Boundary of the Oregon territory
(E) Elimination of land fortification, armaments, and troops along the Canadian border

112. After 1815, the Southern economy was increasingly tied to what crop?

(A) Wheat
(B) Tobacco
(C) Corn
(D) Rice
(E) Cotton

113. Which of the following states provoked the nullification crisis?

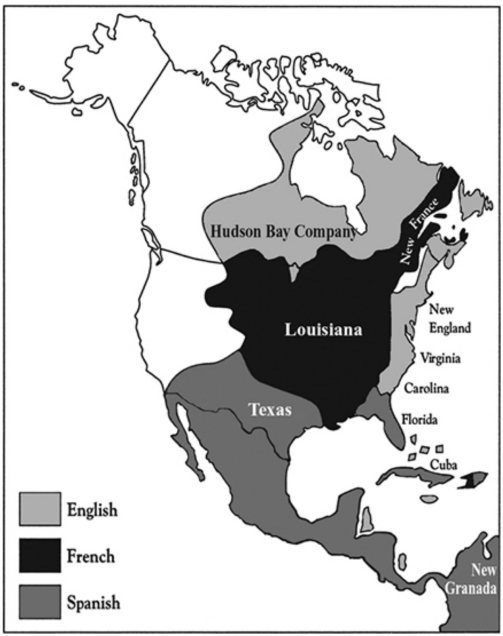
(A) South Carolina
(B) Georgia
(C) Virginia
(D) North Carolina
(E) Alabama

114. Which of the following was not involved in American exploration of the West?

(A) Meriwether Lewis
(B) Zebulon Pike
(C) John Charles Frémont
(D) Aaron Burr
(E) William Clark

115. Who served as president of the Second Bank of the United States?

(A) Roger B. Taney
(B) William Morgan
(C) Nicholas Biddle
(D) Daniel Webster
(E) Robert Y. Hayne



116. The above map represents European powers in North America as of

(A) 1600.
(B) 1682.
(C) 1713.
(D) 1763.
(E) 1783.

117. During the Civil War, the term "Copperhead" referred to

(A) Northerners who opposed the Civil War.
(B) Northerners who called for the abolition of slavery.
(C) Southerners who opposed the Confederacy.
(D) Southerners who called for the abolition of slavery.
(E) Northerners who supported slavery.

118. Which of the following was NOT part of the Radical Republican program for Reconstruction?

(A) Division of the South into military districts
(B) The Fourteenth Amendment
(C) Enlargement of the powers of the Freedmen's Bureau
(D) Division of the plantations and distribution of the land to the freed slaves
(E) Guarantees that the freed slaves could vote and hold office

119. The Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo (1848) included all of the following EXCEPT

(A) the United States paid Mexico $15 million.
(B) land south of the Gila River.
(C) the United States assumed $3 million in debt owed by the Mexican government to Americans.
(D) the United States gained Texas, New Mexico, and Upper California.
(E) the United States promised to respect the religious preferences and civil and property rights of Mexicans in the newly acquired territory.

120. Which of the following was NOT concerned with either slavery or blacks?

(A) Emancipation Proclamation
(B) Thirteenth Amendment
(C) Sixteenth Amendment
(D) Freedmen's Bureau
(E) Fourteenth Amendment

PRACTICE TEST 1

Answer Key

1. (B)
2. (D)
3. (D)
4. (B)
5. (B)
6. (E)
7. (C)
8. (C)
9. (D)
10. (E)
11. (D)
12. (E)
13. (A)
14. (B)
15. (B)
16. (D)
17. (D)
18. (B)
19. (B)
20. (D)
21. (D)
22. (C)
23. (D)
24. (B)
25. (B)
26. (D)

27. (B)
28. (B)
29. (D)
30. (B)
31. (D)
32. 4, 3, 2, 1
33. (E)
34. (C)
35. (E)
36. (E)
37. (E)
38. (C)
39. (D)
40. (D)
41. (E)
42. (E)
43. (A)
44. (D)
45. (E)
46. (E)
47. (B)
48. (A)
49. (C)
50. (C)
51. (E)
52. (B)
53. (B)
54. (D)
55. (D)
56. (C)
57. (B)
58. (C)
59. (A)
60. (A)
61. (E)
62. (B)
63. (B)
64. (A)
65. (C)
66. (B)
67. (D)
68. (D)
69. (E)
70. (E)
71. (A)
72. (A)
73. (E)
74. (D)
75. (D)
76. (C)
77. (E)
78. (D)
79. (C)
80. (B)
81. (A)
82. (A)
83. (D)
84. (D)
85. (A)

86. (B)
87. (A)
88. (C)
89. (C)
90. (A)
91. 4, 3, 1, 2
92. (D)
93. (D)
94. (B)
95. (D)
96. (E)
97. (B)
98. (A)
99. (D)
100. (B)
101. (C)
102. (A)
103. (C)
104. (C)
105. (E)
106. (B)
107. (E)
108. (E)
109. (B)
110. (C)
111. (A)
112. (E)
113. (A)
114. (D)
115. (C)
116. (C)
117. (A)
118. (D)
119. (B)
120. (C)

PRACTICE TEST 1

Detailed Explanations of Answers

1. **(B)** The impeachment process in American government is actually a two-part process. In Article I, Section 2 (I, 2), the House of Representatives holds the sole right to initiate impeachment against a president. The House acts as a grand jury in this phase and its impeachment of a president only amounts to an announcement to the Senate that the second phase of the process must begin. According to I, 3, the Senate, with the chief justice of the Supreme Court presiding, begins a trial on the guilt or innocence of a president regarding the bill of impeachment. If found guilty, the president is removed from office. Thus, the Senate acts as a petit jury and determines innocence and guilt. Andrew Johnson, the seventeenth president, and Bill Clinton, the forty-second president, have been the only two presidents impeached by the House of Representatives (in 1867 and 1999, respectively). Neither one was removed from office by the Senate. President Richard Nixon was neither impeached nor removed from office by this process.

2. **(D)** It is in the Sixth Amendment that Americans are guaranteed the right to a "speedy trial." The entire amendment deals specifically with the rights of the accused in a criminal procedure. The amendment reflects the fears of the Antifederalists that "justice delayed was justice denied" and that the key to the survival of the Constitution, as with all republics, lay foremost in its capacity to administer justice to its citizens. Although the Declaration of Independence advances principles on the fundamental rights of all people, these rights are stated generally and lack the specific language of the Sixth Amendment. The First Amendment focuses on free speech, assembly, religion, and the right to petition, while the Third Amendment deals with the illegal quartering of soldiers in private homes. Article II focuses on the Congress of the United States and not individual rights.

3. **(D)** Only Congress has the authorization to suspend the writ of *habeas corpus*. The writ is one of our judicial system's basic protections for citizens from arbitrary arrest. The writ demands that arresting officers must present their evidence before a court official within 48 hours after the arrest of a suspect. Thus, the accused is presented with charges and evidence quickly to preserve the principle of innocent until proven guilty. The only American president to suspend the writ without Congressional authorization was Abraham Lincoln, who during the Civil War suspended it in Maryland and Tennessee. This action was later approved by Congress as an emergency wartime action. The attorney general was granted similar emergency powers regarding the writ by Congress in the McCarran Internal Security Act of 1950. This power ceased to function in 1970. Neither the Supreme Court nor the state governors have ever been granted this power temporarily by Congress.

4. **(B)** According to most political scientists, James Madison's *Tenth Federalist* ranks behind only the Declaration of Independence and the U.S. Constitution as a document fundamental to American government. During the ratification contest over the Constitution in New York, Madison, along with Alexander Hamilton and John Jay, authored a series of letters in defense of the Constitution that were signed under the pseudonym "Publius." It was Madison's *Tenth* letter that showed how the Constitution differed from all previous political systems in that it allowed for expansive freedom for its citizens, yet still provided an energetic government. According to Madison, however, the only serious threat to the Constitution would arise from a single interest group, or faction, becoming dominant in our government. Madison believed a large territory and diverse population would prevent that from ever occurring. Madison supported a strong president and Supreme Court, and authored the Bill of Rights in 1790–1791.

5. **(B)** The Dutch had extremely hostile relations with neighboring Amerindians because of the Dutch exploitation of the fur trade. Indeed, one of the bloodiest European-Indian wars occurred in 1643 between the Dutch and the Algonquian Indians which nearly annihilated the tribe. The Dutch came to America to exploit its land and peoples as did the Spanish. They sought wealth primarily through the lucrative fur trade. Because of their small native population, the Dutch were forced to attract settlers from all over Europe to populate their colony. As a result, New Netherland was ethnically diverse and this often led to internal struggling among the diverse colonists. Because of the harsh economic conditions

established by the Dutch patroon system of farming, few European settlers were attracted to New Netherland.

6. **(E)** Prior to the arrival of Columbus, North American Indians had a record of warfare no better nor worse than their European counterparts. The primary cause of intra-tribal warfare was the violation by one tribe of another tribe's territories. The Indians did have a diversified economy with the notable exception of the Great Plains Indians who were nomadic hunters only. Generally, Indian males hunted and fished while women practiced communal farming methods. Because of the large number of language groups in North America, Indian culture remained oral and relied upon face- to-face communication. Indian religions stressed that all life was sacred and that all of nature contained a spiritual element. As a result, Indian deities tended to be associated with the forces of nature and nature was seen as animistic.

7. **(C)** The ideal colonial for Spain was an unmarried young male bent on achieving sudden fame and wealth through military exploitation of the Indians. During the sixteenth century about 1,500 conquistadors arrived per year seeking only to gain a rapid fortune and return to Spain. To achieve this end, the conquistadors conquered the Indians through military force and exploited their labor as slaves on large plantations called adelatandos. Only after the Indian population succumbed did the Spanish introduce African slavery to the Americas through the efforts of Charles V and Las Casas. Prior to Columbus' arrival, there were no horses known to the Western Hemisphere.

8. **(C)** As with the Pilgrims, the Puritans sought to create a perfect religious utopia in America. The Puritans believed they were the last hope to establish true Christianity in the world and fled the persecutions of James and Laud to create isolated communities of devoted Puritans. As a result, they feared all outsiders to their ways and punished the practitioners of any other religions in their midst. The Puritans extended their fear of other religious groups to include the Pilgrims and were especially hateful of the Spanish who were much too worldly and Catholic for the Puritans. The Puritans were not pacifists and proved this during the English Civil War, 1641–1660, and the Pequot War in 1675–1676 in New England.

9. **(D)** Contrary to popular views, New Englanders enjoyed a life expectancy of close to 70 years for men and 62 years for women in the seventeenth century. Earlier estimates of life expectancy too often factored a high infant mortality into the equation to conclude with an inaccurate assessment of life expectancies in the 40's for both men and women. Both Virginians and New Englanders had average family sizes of between six and eight throughout the seventeenth century. Slavery never grew beyond small portions in New England because of the lack of large plantations in the region. Instead, Puritans tended to reside in highly isolated villages or towns. Here each Puritan community huddled together and worked closely to establish their separate religious utopias. The harsh New England climate, rocky soil, and thick forests all worked to support the Puritan pattern of settlement by townships.

10. **(E)** The Puritan Wars of 1675–1676 with the Wampanoag Indians and other New England tribes was a direct result of white settlement encroaching on traditional Indian lands. After the hanging of three Indians in 1675, Metacomet, or King Philip, organized the Wampanoags into a unified force to drive the English from New England. Despite being

outnumbered, the Indians destroyed many New England settlements and drove back the Puritans repeatedly. During the winter of 1675–1676, the Puritans counterattacked and defeated the Wampanoags and Philip. Indian losses were close to 40 percent of their population in New England. The war effectively ended Indian resistance to white settlement in New England.

11. **(D)** South Carolina earned its distinct population ratios with a black:white ratio of 20:1. In large part, this was owing to the harsh work in the colony's rice fields, which were little better than marshes and swamps. Because of the fear of diseases such as malaria and the demanding nature of the work on a rice plantation, South Carolina farmers were unable to attract white indentured servants and were compelled to rely on black slaves almost exclusively as a labor force. All the remaining Southern colonies held a black:white ratio where slaves comprised about 12–15 percent of the total population throughout the colonial period.

12. **(E)** King Philip's War in Massachusetts was not part of the four great imperial wars between England and France for control of North America. (See Question 10 on King Philip's War.) Each of the other wars were fought for control of North America. Of the four wars, only the Seven Years' War (1756–1763) began in America and spread to Europe. In this final war, England and France fought for control of the Ohio Territory. The French were finally defeated and ceded all of Canada to England at the peace treaty. Thus, in 1763, England was the master of the entirety of North America for the first time. The other wars for the most part ended without conclusive victors: King William's War (1690–1697); Queen Anne's War (1702–1713); and King George's War (1744–1748).

13. **(A)** Colonial Americans believed that the vote belonged only to those members of society who had a large stake in society's well being. As a result, they allowed only white adult males with sufficient property and in many cases the correct religion to vote. In order to vote in most colonies, one had to be white, male, 21 years or older, a property owner, and a Protestant. These electoral qualifications disenfranchised all blacks, women, non-Protestants, and poor from being politically active through the vote. Annual elections were the rule for the lower legislative houses; local government and county government were very active throughout the colonial period; bicameral legislatures were the norm for the colonies; all 13 colonies claimed to have created a republican form of government to replicate that of England's.

14. **(B)** In 1761, the young Massachusetts lawyer James Otis burst across the political horizon with his assault on the general search warrants issued to British customs officials in the Writs of Assistance case. Since 1760, England had sought a method to curb colonial smuggling and New England trade with France during the Seven Years' War. The issuance of the writs allowed officials to ransack private homes searching for evidence. In arguing against the writs, Otis advanced the view that an act of Parliament was subject to review by the higher law of the English Constitution. Otis lost the case, but advanced a view of higher law and constitutions that most Americans came to accept. Thomas Paine was the author of *Common Sense*. Otis never spoke in Virginia and during the 1770s was to play a minimal political role because of diminishing psychological faculties.

15. **(B)** Taking place in March 1770, the Boston Massacre occurred AFTER the Townshend Duties of 1767. All other events took place after 1770: Boston Tea Party (1773); First Continental Congress (1774); Intolerable Acts (1774); and the Battle of Lexington and Concord (1775). The massacre itself was a relatively small, local incident involving Boston dock workers and British soldiers that resulted in seven Bostonians being shot. However, the radicals used the incident to their advantage and propagandized the event into a major blow against American freedom.

16. **(D)** Both Henry Clay (I) and Daniel Webster (III) were ardent supporters of the Union and believed that once a state had joined the Union that state could never secede. They felt that all grievances must be resolved within the framework of the Constitution, which in their view did not allow states to secede when grievances were not resolved to their liking, or for any other reason. John C. Calhoun (II), however, was a leader in the states' rights movement and believed states could secede whenever they wanted to. His views were diametrically opposed to those expressed in the passage.

17. **(D)** The passage is from a speech made by Henry Clay during the debate over the Compromise of 1850. The Compromise sought to resolve differences between Northern and Southern states over the issues of slavery and prohibition against its expansion into western territories such as New Mexico and California. This debate was the only one in which all of the people named were present. While Henry Clay was present for the debate of the Missouri Compromise in 1820 (C), younger statesmen such as Stephen A. Douglas, Jefferson Davis, Salmon Chase, and William Seward were not. The Missouri Compromise debate, as well as the decision over the location of the Mason-Dixon line (E), never raised the issue of secession as openly as the debate over the Compromise of 1850, and while impassioned speeches such as the one quoted were given on the issue of slavery, they were not given on the issue of secession. While both the Kansas-Nebraska Acts (B) and the secession of South Carolina (A) sparked impassioned speeches, they both occurred after the deaths of Calhoun and Webster, so they could not have participated in these debates.

18. **(B)** The major victory of the Americans at Saratoga did much to convince the French to join in an alliance with the Americans against England. According to our French ambassador, Benjamin Franklin, the French were hesitant to assist the Americans because they saw little hope for an American military victory over England. However, General Gates' victory over General Burgoyne gave the Americans new hope and the desperately needed French alliance and loan. Now England faced a war on two fronts. Saratoga was the turning point in the military phase of the American Revolution. Neither Washington nor Howe participated at the Battle of Saratoga which took place in New York.

19. **(B)** In 1632, the English Catholic Lord Baltimore purchased the colony of Maryland as a refuge and haven for persecuted English Catholics. As a proprietary colony, Maryland never attracted many Catholics and the settlers constantly were contesting with the Baltimore family for power. New York, New Hampshire, and Delaware were royal colonies directly under the control of the British monarch. Connecticut was a compact/contract colony that remained largely independent of British rule up to the American Revolution.

20. **(D)** The British policy of mercantilism encouraged the American colonists to serve as a source of raw materials (i.e., fish, fur, lumber, food, etc.) for the mother country. The policy of mercantilism was an economic policy for the British Empire in North America. It was first proposed in the 1590s by Richard Hakluyt and guided the British Parliament throughout the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries. Under mercantilism, the American colonies were to engage in exclusive trade with England and not any other foreign powers, including the French West Indies. Mercantilism promoted a system of economic specialization between England and America, whereby the colonies would serve as the suppliers of raw materials and the consumers of British manufactured goods (i.e., hats, paints, carriages, clothing). Thus, the policy of mercantilism discouraged the development of American manufacturing as it would prove an unwanted competitor to British industry. The British Parliament never discouraged Americans from the importation of black slave labor.

21. **(D)** Roger Sherman was the author of the Great Compromise at the Philadelphia Convention. The issue at hand was the proposed Virginia Plan versus the New Jersey Plan at the Convention. The delegates were equally divided between support of the Virginia Plan (a legislature based on population and favoring the large/populous states) and the New Jersey Plan (a legislature granting each state an equal vote and favoring the small states). This division resulted in a deadlock and threatened the ability to produce a new government for the nation. The deadlock was broken when Sherman proposed the creation of a two house (bicameral) legislature/congress, with the Senate based on the New Jersey Plan (two senators per state) and the House of Representatives based on the Virginia Plan (one representative per 25,000 inhabitants). With the approval of the compromise, the 55 delegates were able to produce the U.S. Constitution. Patrick Henry, as an Antifederalist, never attended the Convention. Adams and Jefferson also were not in attendance as they were serving overseas as America's ambassadors to England and France, respectively. James Madison, as one of the authors of the Virginia Plan, did not author the Compromise.

22. **(C)** The Antifederalists never voiced concern in 1788–1789 over the location of the government in Washington, D.C. because it was not proposed as the new seat of government until 1790 with the accepted Constitution already in operation. During the newspaper debates over the Constitution, the Antifederalists expressly and vehemently denounced the powers of the Supreme Court as too broad and that the national court would overshadow the state courts under the Constitution. These opponents of the Constitution also feared the indirect election of the president through the electoral college system as one that would encourage plots and conspiracies. Finally, the two gravest defects of the Constitution in the eyes of the Antifederalists were that it did not guarantee the rights of its citizens in writing (ultimately, this complaint would lead to the Bill of Rights as the first 10 amendments to the Constitution) and that no single republican form of government could effectively rule over such a large territory as the original American states.

23. **(D)** In 1794, George Washington appointed John Jay as special ambassador to negotiate a treaty with Great Britain. Because of his lack of diplomatic leverage, Jay secured a treaty in which England agreed only to the removal of British troops from American soil. England refused to

allow the Americans open trade with the West Indies and refused to stop the impressment of American sailors (a practice whereby Americans virtually were kidnapped into serving 10–20 year terms in the British navy). Revolutionary War debts remained open to negotiation by the two parties. Although the Treaty passed the Senate by a single vote, opposition from the Republican party was most intense over the issue of impressment.

24. **(D)** During his first year as president, John Adams faced a crisis with France that threatened the honor and sovereignty of America. In 1796, the French navy began seizing American ships on the Atlantic and confiscating their cargo. Adams was informed by three French agents (X, Y & Z were their code names) that French minister Talleyrand would accept a bribe of $250,000 and an interest-free loan of $12 million to negotiate this issue. Adams prudently leaked this demand to the American press who rallied the nation around the slogan listed in Question 24. Adams was able to avoid war with France, but did not offer the tribute demanded and saved the honor of the new nation. This was the one event Adams took greatest pride in for the remainder of his life.

25. **(B)** According to the Constitution, the House of Representatives was empowered to select the president from the two top vote getters if no candidate received over 50 percent of the electoral vote. In the election of 1800, John Adams and Charles Pickney were the Federalist party candidates for president and vice president, while Jefferson and Aaron Burr were the nominees of the Democratic-Republican party. However, the ballots cast by the electoral college never indicated who was president and who was vice president. Thus, Jefferson and Burr were tied. Burr sought to steal the presidency from Jefferson and the House cast 37 separate votes before deciding on Jefferson upon the advice of Alexander Hamilton. This election led to the ratification of the Twelfth Amendment to the Constitution in 1804 which ordered all future ballots to designate a candidate's office.

26. **(D)** After the American Revolution, American women were advised by authors and ministers that they could best serve the nation by becoming "republican mothers." This concept encouraged women to retain their domain in the household and seek to enter the public world vicariously through their sons. Mothers were advised to teach their sons the republican virtues of truth, frugality, sense of public service, honor, and wisdom. Women were not granted the right to vote, hold any public office, or teach in public schools. Instead, they were advised to keep the home as their domain and only take a half-step toward public life.

27. **(B)** In 1803, Thomas Jefferson sought to purchase American trade rights to use the Mississippi from France. Because of Napoleon's need for capital to finance his European wars, he offered to sell Jefferson all of the Louisiana Territory instead. After the purchase of this seemingly tractless wilderness, Jefferson witnessed the Lewis and Clark expedition to explore the region embark in 1804. Lewis and Clark crossed the continental United States and reached the Pacific coast in 1806. The Louisiana Purchase was approved by the Senate in 1803. The Nullification Controversy with South Carolina occurred in 1831–1832 and the Missouri Compromise was in 1819–1820.

28. **(B)** In 1805, Aaron Burr entered into one of the boldest schemes in American history. Because he was removed from the vice presidency in

1804 and defeated for governor of New York, Burr desperately planned a plot with Spain to kidnap President Jefferson and accept for ransom a large territory in the southwestern United States as a new independent country under his control. Burr was arrested at the eleventh hour of the conspiracy and placed on trial for treason. Chief Justice John Marshall used the case to embarrass Jefferson in 1807 and actually acquitted Burr of the treason charges on a very liberal reading of the treason law requiring two eyewitnesses to the same overt act. Burr attempted neither to assassinate Madison nor defraud the Bank of the United States.

29. **(D)** The Treaty of Ghent ending the War of 1812 was signed on December 24, 1815. Two weeks later, because news of the treaty had yet to arrive in America, the Battle of New Orleans was fought on January 8, 1815. The Americans under the leadership of Andrew Jackson earned a major victory, killing over 2,000 British soldiers while suffering only 13 casualties. The invasion of Canada, which ended in American defeat, was in 1812. The Battle of Lake Erie took place in 1813 and proved a major American naval victory. The burning of Washington, D.C. by the British took place in 1814.

30. **(B)** In 1823, President James Monroe announced to Congress his three principles for foreign policy that later were labeled the Monroe Doctrine. In addition to pledging that Americans would remain free of European wars and threatening American war for any future European colonization of the Western Hemisphere, Monroe uttered the words quoted in Question 30. This doctrine established the areas of North and South America as an American sphere of influence. England supported the doctrine primarily to prevent a major European war over the crumbling Spanish empire. The issue of American continents and European colonization was not the focus of any of the other choices. Washington's farewell address of 1796 only warned Americans to avoid future European wars; the Truman Doctrine of 1947 was Truman's outline for combatting worldwide Communism; *McCulloch v. Maryland* involved the rights of the national government over the states in 1819. The Bill of Rights does not deal with foreign policy matters directly.

31. **(D)** In 1832, Jackson is said to have uttered these words in reaction to Chief Justice Marshall's decision in the case of the *Cherokee Nation v. Georgia*. Although Marshall rejected the Cherokee nation's argument that they existed as a "nation within a nation," he nonetheless ruled that the Cherokees could not be legally moved from their lands as the state of Georgia desired. The Cherokees were finally removed in 1837–1838 along the Trail of Tears. In this case, Jackson reminded the Court that its power was totally dependent upon the Executive branch's willingness to enforce the law. In *Gibbons* (1824), the Court ruled on commerce; in *McCulloch* (1819), the court ruled on the superior power of the national government over the states; *Dred Scott* (1857) was a decision by Roger Taney on slavery; and *Marbury v. Madison* (1803) established the power of judicial review.

32. Winter at Valley Forge (1777)
Battle of Camden, South Carolina (1780)
Cornwallis surrenders (1781)
Treaty of Paris (1783)

33. **(E)** During the 1830s, America underwent a series of major reform movements in an effort to create the perfect society. One of the largest

movements throughout the decade was the Temperance Movement to rid American society of its reliance upon alcoholic consumption. (Consumption of alcohol averaged one-half pint per male per day throughout the decade.) In addition, the attempt to perfect Americans through the means of religion gave rise to the Second Great Awakening, or revivalism. The Seneca Falls Convention of 1848 announced the drive for women's rights during this time, as well as efforts to reform America's schools and greatly expand the public school system. The only movement that did not enjoy a large following was the activity of labor unions. Generally, unions were depicted as forces opposed to American individualism and a foreign import from Europe that threatened basic American freedoms.

34. **(C)** In 1824, no candidate received a clear majority in the electoral college. Although Jackson had outpolled his nearest rival in the popular vote, 43 percent to 30 percent, the House of Representatives still selected the second candidate, John Quincy Adams, over Jackson. Jackson became outraged when he discovered that Henry Clay, a presidential candidate, swung his support to Adams and was named secretary of state by Adams. Jackson was convinced that a deal had been struck and the popular vote denied. Jackson never discussed fraudulent voting practices and the Whig party was not identified with campaign smears during this election.

35. **(E)** Andrew Jackson had the single greatest impact on the office of the presidency of any president other than Washington during the nineteenth century. Jackson completely transformed the office from a pawn of political parties to a strong and independent force in American government and politics. He established his power through the use of the veto (i.e., the Maysville Veto, the veto of the Second Bank of the United States, etc.) as an offensive rather than defensive political weapon. In addition, he was able to bypass both congressional and party control of his Cabinet by appointing an unofficial inner circle of top advisors called "the kitchen cabinet." Jackson also used his power to appoint civil servants for the federal government with a vengeance and replaced earlier office holders with officials who were personally loyal to him, creating the "spoils system." Finally, Jackson skillfully used public opinion to back his policies whenever he felt it was required, as in his struggles with Nicholas Biddle over the Second Bank of the United States.

36. **(E)** President Jackson led an assault on the Second Bank under the directorship of Nicholas Biddle in 1832. Known as Jackson's Bank War, the president was outraged by the Bank's pro-Eastern and pro-business policies under Biddle. In 1832, Jackson refused to recharter the Bank on the grounds that the Bank was an illegal monopoly and had no constitutional authority to exist. In addition, Jackson publicly rallied the American people around his crusade by stating fears that the Bank's foreign creditors could use the Bank to control American foreign policy and that the Bank catered to the needs and interests of a wealthy elite at the cost of high taxes and no benefits to the American farmer and workingman.

37. **(E)** In 1961, Stanley Elkins published his controversial work *Slavery*. In this study, Elkins likened the conditions of blacks under slavery to Jewish inmates of Nazi concentration camps during World War II. According to Elkins, the American system of slavery relied upon physical and psychological torture of African-Americans to such a degree that it crushed them psychologically and produced the "Sambo personality"—

infantile-like adults who lacked strong self-esteem and initiative and who often adopted the views of white racism as their own internal values of self-hate. Herbert Aptheker was a Marxist scholar who advanced the view of slaves as heroic rebels. George Fitzhugh was the Southern champion of slavery as a positive good in the 1850s and viewed all black people as innately inferior to whites and as a result they advanced under slavery. Stowe's depiction of slaves in *Uncle Tom's Cabin* displayed blacks as human beings with a full range of virtues and courage. Eugene Genovese is a contemporary historian whose classic *Roll Jordan Roll* examines African-American slave culture and depicts a strong culture grounded by strong and stable people and not "Sambo" personalities.

38. **(C)** In the 1850s, the most ardent defender of Southern slavery was George Fitzhugh. In works such as *Cannibals All,* Fitzhugh pointed out that all great empires and civilizations of the past had relied upon slavery and that slave owners actually were civilizing "savage" Africans as much as could be expected under slavery. Fitzhugh also pointed out that unlike the treatment of "wage slaves" up north (factory workers), slaves were cared for while aged and infirm by the slave owner. It was Fitzhugh's view that because of the community of interest under slavery, slavery actually proved more human toward its workers (slaves) than Northern capitalism did toward its workers. Benjamin Lundy sought to end slavery through the American Colonization Society, as did William Lloyd Garrison through the Abolitionists or American Anti-Slavery Society. Both Henry Clay and Stephen Douglas sought compromise solutions to the political crisis of slavery that adopted a strong stance on neither side of the slavery issue.

39. **(D)** The delay in admitting Texas to the Union was largely owing to Northern fears that the great size of the Texas territory would produce at least 10 new slave states and thus shift the balance of power established under the Missouri Compromise of 1819 to the slave states. Texas settlers since gaining their independence from Mexico in 1837 had been clamoring for entry into the United States and appealed to the American belief that it was the nation's destiny to reach the Pacific under Manifest Destiny doctrines. Treaty negotiations with Mexico over the extent of Texas' border did not take place until 1845–1846 and led directly to the Mexican-American War. Sam Houston's views toward Van Buren had little impact on the Texas as a state issue.

40. **(D)** During the election of 1860, Lincoln sought to reduce the issue of slavery to a secondary status before the primary concern of keeping the nation united. As a result, Lincoln varied widely in his public views on slavery, but never waivered from his belief that the primary issue in the election was keeping the union together. John Brown in 1859 uttered the words of needing to purge America by blood of the sin of slavery. The quotes from (B), (C), and (E) were all representative of the extreme abolitionist position adopted by William Lloyd Garrison and his followers who desired to end slavery immediately even at the cost of losing the South to secession. Lincoln never advocated the Abolitionist position.

41. **(E)** At the close of the Mexican-American War in 1847, Mexico ceded to the United States portions of present-day Texas, Nevada, New Mexico, California, Utah, Arizona, and Wyoming for $15 million. The state of Washington was part of the Louisiana Purchase of 1803.

42. **(E)** The Nat Turner Rebellion occurred in 1831 as the bloodiest slave uprising in American history when 55 whites were killed by about 15 slaves in Virginia. The Kansas-Nebraska Act was passed in 1854 and sought to establish the principle of popular sovereignty in the two territories on the issue of slavery to promote the presidential ambitions of Senator Stephen Douglas of Illinois. The Seneca Falls Convention convened in 1848 as a militant expression of women's rights led by Lucretia Mott and Elizabeth Cady Stanton. The Lincoln-Douglas debates took place in 1858 as both candidates vied for the Senate seat in Illinois. The Homestead Act was passed by Congress in 1862 and granted a free 160-acre farm in the Far West (Great Plains region) to any American citizen 21 years of age or older who would work the land for five years.

43. **(A)** Northerners were outraged by the measure of the Compromise of 1850 known as the Fugitive Slave Law. Although the North had gained victories in the Compromise in California's admission as a free state and the end of slave auctions in Washington, D.C., they felt the price of victory was too high with the Fugitive Slave Law. Under this law, all Americans legally were required to assist in the return of all runaway or "fugitive" slaves to their masters. Abolitionists like Garrison denounced the act as an attempt to force every Northerner to become part of the dreaded slave system. The importation of African slaves legally had ended in 1808 and the Gag Rule on tabling abolition petitions in Congress without discussion was enacted in 1837. Northern concern over Utah and New Mexico had been voiced during debates over the Wilmot Proviso at the end of the Mexican-American War.

44. **(D)** In 1857, the Supreme Court under Roger Taney sought to offer a final solution to the crisis over slavery in the Dred Scott case. Here a black slave sued for his freedom on the grounds he was in Northern territory which had outlawed slavery. Taney ruled that Scott could not sue in the Court because blacks were not and could never become citizens of the United States. In addition, Taney ruled the Missouri Compromise of 1819 and all other laws prohibiting slavery unconstitutional as violations of the "due process clause" of the Fifth Amendment regarding property.

45. **(E)** In the election of 1860, the strength of sectionalism in the country was apparent with the nomination of four sectional candidates for president. As the Republican party's candidate, Lincoln mustered only 40 percent of the popular vote but carried a majority of electoral college votes to win the election. John Breckinridge for the Southern Democrats earned 18 percent of the popular vote, while Stephen Douglas and the Northern Democrats earned 30 percent. John Bell of the Constitutional Union party was able to gather only 13 percent of the vote. Thus, Lincoln was seen as a minority president lacking a national mandate and representing only the interests of the North.

46. **(E)** Lincoln's issuance of the Emancipation Proclamation in January 1863 was greeted with joyous celebration in the North. However, a strict legal reading of the document indicates that it effectively did not free a slave. Lincoln's proclamation freed only those slaves in territories in rebellion against the United States, an area which by definition Lincoln had no authority. The proclamation was silent on those slaves who were held in Maryland and Tennessee, two areas under Lincoln's control. Slavery finally was ended by an act of Congress in 1865 through the Thirteenth Amendment to the Constitution.

47. **(B)** The Confederate government's adoption of a states' rights system of government most closely represents the Articles of Confederation from 1784–1788. Both systems of government rely on the friendly cooperation of its member states, have no coercive power over the states, and cannot act directly on its citizens but must go through the states. The British Constitution, U.S. Constitution, and Napoleonic France all established strong central/national governments with local government units that are subordinate to the national government. Another term for the Confederacy and the Articles used by political scientists is state-centered federalism.

48. **(A)** Lincoln's faith in democracy is best reflected in his sponsorship of the Homestead Act, which granted a free 160-acre farm in the Great Plains to any American citizen willing to work the land for five years. This Act gave rise to the great westward migration of up to four million Americans from 1865 to 1900. Lincoln was extremely reluctant to enlist black volunteers during the Civil War and was forced to this action only in 1863 with the creation of the 54th Massachusetts regiment. Black troops, about 185,000, were kept in segregated units under white officers. Lincoln's passage of the Emancipation Proclamation was more an act of political subterfuge than an effort in democracy as the Proclamation never really freed a slave. The Fourteenth Amendment was ratified in 1867 after Lincoln's death. During his first four months in office, Lincoln ran the Civil War as a virtual dictator, usurping Congressional powers of raising and supporting an army while Congress was on leave.

49. **(C)** Despite their great exodus westward under the Homestead Act, the vast majority of the four million homesteaders from 1865 to 1900 failed. The main problem they faced was that a 160-acre farm was too small to support profitable agriculture in this region because of water shortages and soil conditions. The Great Plains required large farming methods that were beyond the means of most homesteaders. Most ex-slaves remained in the South as sharecroppers after the War, although a sizeable minority did serve as cowboys on the Santa Fe cattle drives. Most recent immigrants from Eastern Europe at this time congregated in America's Northern and Eastern cities as factory workers. The homesteaders retained their allegiance to the Republican party for it had sponsored the Act.

50. **(C)** At the close of the Civil War, the Radical Republicans pledged to the ex-slaves that they would establish the freed black's economic independence in the South. The Radicals planned to do this by confiscating all Southern plantations of more than 200 acres and subdividing these farms into 40-acre farms to be given to the ex-slaves along with a free mule. This "40 acres and a mule" program was never established and most ex-slaves were forced to work for their former masters under sharecropping, a system of exploitation that reduced most Southern blacks to abject poverty. The Radicals did establish the Freedman's Bureau which established free public schools in the South for ex-slaves, provided the vote to the ex-slaves, and protected the black voter before the attacks of white terrorist groups such as the Ku Klux Klan and the White Camelia, and satisfied most Northerners that the South was paying for secession and Civil War.

51. **(D)** The Republican President Hayes was responsible for the Sellout of 1876. In the election of 1876, the Republican Hayes and Democrat Tilden ended in an electoral tie for the presidency. Amidst claims of fraudulent

election returns, Hayes met with Southern members of the House of Representatives in New Orleans. In return for their votes, Hayes promised to withdraw Union soldiers from the South and end Reconstruction, effectively granting the white South a free hand in dealing with blacks. Hayes won the election in the South and made good on his bargain. Neither Taft, Johnson, nor Grant were involved in the election of 1876.

52. **(E)** Franklin's famous engraving was intended to muster support for his plan for colonial unity in 1754 known as the Albany Plan. The other delegates to the 1754 Congress rejected Franklin's plan. The 13 colonies would not be united under a single plan of government until the American Revolution through the Continental Congress and later the Articles of Confederation. The Seven Years' War did not begin until 1756, while the Stamp Act was in 1765. The colonies never sought to break from the system of mercantilism and traded with Canada even during the Seven Years' War.

53. **(B)** The passage represents the philosophy and major tenets of the "Know-Nothing" party, which developed in the late 1840s as the culmination of the anti-Catholic and anti-immigrant sentiments which were widespread in the United States at that time. People feared that immigrants were destroying social values, adding to unemployment problems, and disrupting the political process. Many of these immigrants were Catholic, and they were particularly targeted because of their supposed subservience to a foreign leader, the pope. The Know-Nothings promised to end this perceived threat by limiting the rights of Catholics and immigrants to vote and to hold elective office. Free Soilers (A) focused on stopping the expansion of slavery into the western territories. The fledgling Republican party (D) focused on the abolition of slavery. The Whig party (E) was a mainstream party that refused to take radical positions on the issues of Catholicism and immigrants, and was destroyed by the development of the more radical parties. The Populist party (C) was formed in the 1890s by farmers seeking to redress economic concerns ignored by the major political parties. The Populists never blamed their problems on immigrants and Catholics and never included restrictive policies against them in their platform.

54. **(D)** The Know-Nothing party evolved out of a secret society known as the "Order of the Star Spangled Banner." It rapidly gained support, especially in coastal cities where the number of immigrants and Catholics were high. The party became the second largest political party in the country by 1855. However, its narrow focus and its lack of nationally recognized, competent, and experienced leaders left it unable to accomplish its stated goals. People quickly grew disillusioned and flocked to other parties focusing on other issues ignored by the Know-Nothings, such as slavery and states' rights, which were rapidly becoming the major issues. By 1860, the Know-Nothings were no longer a major political force.

55. **(D)** Under Prince Henry of Portugal new navigational instruments, such as the compass and astrolabe, were developed which, along with improvements in sailing ships, made long-distance ocean voyages possible. The Crusades, although not bringing Christian control to the Middle East, helped stimulate the Renaissance, which in turn developed interest in the larger world. The Genoese and Venetian monopoly created

interest in finding new routes to the East while the development of banking put together capital for financing the search for new trade routes.

56. **(C)** Roger Williams came into conflict with the Puritan authorities because he argued that political leaders could have no authority over religious matters, that the English settlers must buy the land from the Indians, and that individuals had the right to worship according to their individual conscience. After establishing the colony of Rhode Island, Williams included the principle that government rested upon the consent of the governed in the 1644 charter. Anne Hutchinson was exiled from the Massachusetts Bay Colony for advocating that religion should be based on direct intuition of God and his love rather than religious authorities.

57. **(B)** Connecticut was part of New England. Pennsylvania, Delaware, New Jersey, and New York comprised the Middle Colonies.

58. **(C)** French settlement was largely confined to the area north of Montreal to the mouth of the St. Lawrence River. In addition to controlling the St. Lawrence River, the French also controlled access to the Mississippi at New Orleans. Unlike the 13 British colonies, New France had one central government. And also unlike the British, the French, who emphasized the fur trade, tended not to establish permanent settlements in the interior and therefore did not threaten the forests and game necessary to Indian life. The Six Nations, however, never allied with the French.

59. **(A)** The fall of Louisburg in 1758 gave the British a base from which they could cut off French reinforcements and supplies to America. The British conquered Fort Frontenac and Fort Duquesne in 1758 and Crown Point and Fort Ticonderoga in 1759.

60. **(A)** The principal reason for opposition to Texas' entrance into the Union was that it wanted to permit slavery. There was also concern over possible war with Mexico, because it did not recognize Texan independence. Texas entered the Union in 1845.

61. **(E)** The "Middle Passage" refers to the slave traders' route between Africa and the Americas during which 13 to 33 percent of the slaves died. Lewis and Clark crossed the Rocky Mountains at the Bozeman Pass on their 1804–06 expedition. Henry Hudson sought the Northwest Passage in 1609. The National Road was built between 1806 and 1852, connecting Maryland and Illinois. Gold seekers crossed the Isthmus of Panama in 1849.

62. **(B)** John Winthrop, Governor of Massachusetts Bay Colony, opposed religious toleration, supporting the banishment of Roger Williams and Anne Hutchinson. William Penn established toleration in Pennsylvania, Roger Williams in Rhode Island, and Lord Baltimore in Maryland. Later, Thomas Jefferson wrote the Virginia Statute for Religious Freedom (1786).

63. **(B)** Through laws such as the Wool Act (1699), colonial manufacturing was severely restricted.

64. **(A)** The Intolerable Acts, which included the closing of the Port of Boston, were passed in response to the Boston Tea Party of 1773. The Boston Massacre (1770), Continental Congress (1774), Gaspee Affair (1772), and the Committee of Correspondence (1772) were other

elements in the growing tension between Great Britain and its American colonies.

65. **(C)** Nathaniel Greene served as commander of the American troops in the South. The other individuals were all British commanders during the American Revolution.

66. **(B)** The Constitutional Convention met in Philadelphia from May 14 to September 17, 1787. Washington, D.C., did not yet exist.

67. **(D)** Hamilton's "Report on Public Credit" (1790) proposed to assume both the state debts and the debts of the Confederation. In other proposals he sought the establishment of a national bank, a protective tariff, and bounties to encourage manufacturing.

68. **(C)** Largely by reducing the size of the army and navy, Jefferson was able to reduce the federal budget. Although he opposed the Bank of the United States and assumption of state debts, he did not change Federalist policies. Secretary of the Treasury Albert Gallatin tried to pay off the national debt as rapidly as possible.

69. **(E)** The Adams-Onis Treaty (1819) with Spain gave the United States both East and West Florida in return for U.S. payment of up to $5 million in claims by American citizens against the Spanish. Louisiana was purchased in 1803 from France. Texas obtained its independence from Mexico in 1836 and entered the Union in 1845. The 49th parallel was accepted as the border between Canada and Oregon by the U.S. and Great Britain in 1846. And California became an American possession through the Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo in 1848.

70. **(E)** Bonuses to new industries were part of Alexander Hamilton's "Report on Manufactures" (1791). Henry Clay's American System included the protective tariff, the Second Bank of the United States, and federally funded internal improvement.

71. **(E)** The Bill of Rights, the first ten amendments to the Constitution, was proposed by Congress (1789) and ratified by the states (1791). The first nine limited Congress by forbidding it to encroach upon certain basic rights—freedom of religion, speech, and press, immunity from arbitrary arrest, and trial by jury. The Tenth Amendment reserved to the states all powers except those specifically withheld from them or delegated to the federal government.

72. **(A)** Although there may be some disagreement among historians, most see slavery as the key element underlying other differences such as the lack of industrialization, rural patterns of living, and slow development of a transportation system, particularly railroads. The existence of slavery also made the South less attractive to immigrants.

73. **(E)** The Jacksonian era was notable for its rhetorical egalitarianism, hence the term "Jacksonian democracy," but recent research indicates that the period did not experience any significant increase in social mobility. The Jacksonian Democrats supported the spoils system and opposed Indian rights. Both the Democrats and the Whigs used the nominating convention. And the number of active voters increased in response to the new campaign tactics.

74. **(D)** Beginning in the 1830s, the Irish came to America in large numbers, stirring up resentment because of their Catholicism, clannishness, dress,

and accents. The other groups all came to America in significant numbers after the Civil War.

75. **(D)** "Scalawag" referred to native-born Southerners who cooperated, for whatever reasons, with the Northern authorities during Reconstruction.

76. **(C)** In 1873 Congress passed a law taking silver coins off the list of standard coins. The Bland-Allison Act was passed in 1878 and the Sherman Silver Purchase Act in 1890. In 1834 the government had offered to buy silver at a ratio of 16 to 1 in relation to gold. Despite the Sherman Silver Purchase Act, the Treasury Department refused to coin the silver that it purchased.

77. **(E)** The Tenure of Office Act was passed in 1867 in order to reduce the power of President Andrew Johnson. Congress passed the Morrill Tariff Act in 1861, the Conscription Act in 1863, the Homestead Act in 1862, and the National Banking Act in 1863.

78. **(D)** This map represents European powers in North America after the French and Indian War (or Seven Years' War), 1754–63, transferred Canada from France to Great Britain.

79. **(C)** By 1860 the South had nearly 4 million slaves.

80. **(B)** The issuing of the Specie Circular of 1836, which required that only gold or silver or bank notes backed by gold and silver could be used to pay for public land, helped spark the panic of 1837. His withdrawal of federal funds from the Bank of the United States after his 1832 veto of the renewal of the charter also contributed to the expansion in the circulation of bank notes which led to his Specie Circular.

81. **(A)** Because of the tie between Jefferson and Burr in the electoral college vote of 1800, the Twelfth Amendment required that the college vote separately for president and vice president. The First Amendment provided for freedom of religion; the Twenty-second Amendment limited the president to two terms; the Eighteenth Amendment prohibited the manufacture and sale of alcoholic beverages; and the Second Amendment gave the right to bear arms.

82. **(A)** *The Federalist Papers,* a collection of 85 essays, were written anonymously by Alexander Hamilton, John Jay, and James Madison. Seventy-seven of the essays originally appeared in New York newspapers under the pseudonym "Publius." These essays argued for the ratification of the Constitution by stressing the inadequacies of the Articles of Confederation.

83. **(D)** In 1854 the American ministers to Great Britain, France, and Spain met in Ostend, Belgium and issued a statement that became known as the Ostend Manifesto. It said that if Spain would not sell Cuba to the United States, the U.S. had the right to seize the island by force.

84. **(D)** The Declaratory Act of 1766, passed after Parliament rescinded the Stamp Act (1765), asserted that Parliament had the power to make laws that were binding on the American colonists. The other acts referred to are (A) the Quartering Act (1765), (B) the Currency Act (1764), (C) the Sugar Act (1764), and (E) the Stamp Act (1765).

85. **(A)** Henry James wrote his major novels in the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries. Nathaniel Hawthorne published *The Scarlet Letter* in 1850 and *The House of the Seven Gables* in 1851. Walt Whitman published

Leaves of Grass in 1855. Henry David Thoreau wrote *Walden* in 1854, and Herman Melville produced *Moby-Dick* in 1851.

86. **(B)** Secessionist feeling was strongest among the New England Federalists who spoke up strongly for separation from the United States at the Hartford Convention of 1814–15. The Convention, however, only recommended constitutional amendments to weaken Southern power and the Democratic party.

87. **(A)** The joint-stock company was the form of business organization that established Jamestown and Massachusetts, among others. The encomienda was a grant to Indians who lived on a specific piece of land in the Spanish colonies. Prince Henry financed the development of new navigation techniques in the fifteenth century. George III was king of England during the American Revolution, 1776–1783, a period during which republicanism became the dominant political ideology.

88. **(C)** Although after 1840 the Northeast's involvement in both national and international commerce increased, manufacturing became its primary concern. Agriculture and the production of raw materials were of declining importance.

89. **(C)** The merchants, together with lawyers and members of the families of the royal governors, were the most influential citizens in the New England towns. Ministers no longer carried the influence they once had.

90. **(A)** In contrast to the Confederacy, the North was not fighting a defensive war. Rather, it sought to strangle the Confederacy with a blockade; split the Confederacy by controlling the Mississippi and interior railroad lines; and seize Richmond, Virginia, the Confederacy's capital.

91. Texas wins independence from Mexico (1836)
Annexation of Texas by the U.S. (1845)
Declaration of war on Mexico (1846)
Treaty of Guadalupe-Hidalgo (1848)

92. **(D)** The Northwest Ordinance of 1787 barred slavery from the territories.

93. **(D)** Virginia was founded as a joint-stock company in 1607. It became a Royal Colony in 1624.

94. **(B)** Harriet Beecher Stowe's *Uncle Tom's Cabin* was published in 1851–52. The American Anti-Slavery Society was established in 1833. Garrison founded *The Liberator* in 1831. The "gag" rule was passed in 1836, and the Liberty party first appeared in 1840.

95. **(D)** The panic of 1857 resulted primarily from over-speculation in railroad stocks. Many banks failed across the nation, although the North suffered the most and the South the least. By 1858 the economy began picking up, bolstered by European demand for foodstuffs and cotton.

96. **(E)** All authority was centered on the Spanish king, who was represented in the New World by two viceroys, who ruled in his name. The Indians were enslaved until the 1540s and after that were placed under the *repartimiento*, another system of forced labor. The mission system evangelized the Indians for the Roman Catholic church. Until the gold and silver ran out, the Spanish used its American colonies to a large extent as a source of these precious metals.

97. **(B)** The Massachusetts Bay Colony was founded in 1630 by the Puritans, who wanted to purify rather than separate from the Anglican church. The Pilgrims were Separatists who established Plymouth in 1620. The Mayflower Compact was an agreement, signed before landing at Plymouth, to obey all the laws that the group adopted. Squanto was an Indian who helped the Pilgrims survive during their first year by teaching them how to use the plants and other natural resources of the new land.

98. **(A)** James Oglethorpe founded Georgia in 1732 for the purpose of aiding debtors released from British prisons. Sir George Calvert established Maryland in 1632 as a haven for Catholics. North Carolina, then combined with South Carolina, was created in 1663 and unsuccessfully sought to establish a government based on a plan by John Locke. New Jersey was originally part of New Netherlands but after the English takeover was ceded to Lord John Berkeley and Sir George Carteret in 1664. Delaware was founded by Swedes but was taken over by the British in 1664 and given to William Penn in 1682, after which it was part of Pennsylvania.

99. **(D)** In the Treaty of Paris of 1763 France gave up its claims in America except for four islands, including Guadeloupe and Martinique. The Spanish gave up Florida to Great Britain but obtained New Orleans and Louisiana from the French. Although the British occupied Cuba and the Philippines during the war, they returned them to Spain.

100. **(B)** The Southern colonies were largely rural with only two relatively large cities, Charleston and Baltimore. They were closely tied with England. Tobacco was the main cash crop in Maryland, Virginia, and North Carolina while rice was grown in Georgia and the Carolinas. The population lived largely on the coastal plains (or tidewater area) where plantations dominated the economy but most of the population lived on small farms.

101. **(C)** The Treaty of Ghent (1814) included only the cessation of hostilities and restoration of territory taken during the War of 1812.

102. **(A)** The Iroquois Confederation, formed in the 1500s, included the Seneca, Cayuga, Onondaga, Oneida, and Mowhawk tribes, all of which were Eastern woodland groups. In the 1700s the Tuscaroras joined the Confederation. The Sioux lived on the Great Plains.

103. **(C)** Harvard was founded in 1636. The colonial colleges included the College of New Jersey (Princeton) founded in 1746, Rhode Island College (Brown), 1764, Queen's College (Rutgers), 1766, King's College (Columbia), 1754, College and Academy of Philadelphia (Pennsylvania), 1755, Dartmouth, 1761, College of William and Mary, 1693, and Yale College, 1716.

104. **(C)** The independence movement did not begin until after the British began passing new taxes and duties beginning in 1765. In 1763 the British government had a huge debt resulting from the French and Indian War, the need to defend the new territory, and the need to establish British governments for Canada and Florida. It also had to deal with the conflicting claims to land west of the Appalachians by the American colonies.

105. **(E)** Samuel Adams was active in both the Massachusetts legislature and on the streets of Boston in arousing opposition to British policies. Patrick

Henry and Thomas Jefferson were leaders in the Virginia legislature while John Adams served in the Continental Congress. James Otis wrote a number of pamphlets defending American rights.

106. **(B)** There is nothing about religious toleration in the Declaration. The first portion of the Declaration presented the reasons for separation, the second portion outlined a theory of government, and the third section—the final paragraph—announced the existence of a state of war with Great Britain.

107. **(E)** Under the Articles of Confederation, the government could only ask the states for money; it could not directly tax the people. Consequently, the government was crippled even in carrying out the powers assigned to it.

108. **(E)** The Jay Treaty settled the long-standing problem of British troops in American territory, but it did not address adequately such maritime issues as impressment of American sailors by the British and trade in the British West Indies. It did move toward settlement of Canadian boundary problems by establishing a commission to study the matter. Navigation of the Mississippi was settled by the Pinckney Treaty (1795) with Spain.

109. **(B)** Although war was not formally declared, the demand for a bribe before treaty negotiations could begin led to a quasi-war with France in 1797–1798. In addition to the bribe, France had demanded an American loan and an apology for President Adams's remarks regarding France made to the American Congress.

110. **(C)** Between 1710 and 1720 the population of Massachusetts Bay grew by 4.6 percent; between 1700 and 1710 it grew 1.2 percent; between 1720 and 1730 it grew 2.6 percent; and between 1730 and 1740 it grew 3.3 percent.

111. **(A)** In the Rush-Bagot Treaty (1818), Great Britain and the United States agreed to take military ships from the Great Lakes. The other issues either simply faded away or were settled much later.

112. **(E)** With the invention of the cotton gin in 1793 and expansion into the Deep South after 1815, cotton became the dominant cash crop of the Southern economy.

113. **(A)** South Carolina provoked the crisis in 1832 by voting to nullify, or not allowing to go into effect within its borders, the tariffs of 1828 and 1832. The crisis was ended by the 1833 compromise tariff, although Andrew Jackson obtained the power to enforce the revenue laws militarily.

114. **(D)** Aaron Burr served as vice president of the United States between 1801 and 1804. He later was involved in an apparent conspiracy to separate the western states from the Union. Meriwether Lewis and William Clark led an expedition to the West in 1804–06. Zebulon Pike led a military expedition to Colorado in 1806. John Charles Frémont was involved in several western expeditions in the 1830s and 1840s.

115. **(C)** Nicholas Biddle served as president of the Second Bank of the United States. William Morgan was a former Mason who vanished about 1826 just before he was to publish an exposé about the secret organization. Roger B. Taney served as chief justice of the Supreme Court between 1836 and 1864. Daniel Webster was a leader in the Senate, representing

Massachusetts from 1827 to 1850. Robert Y. Hayne represented South Carolina in the Senate between 1822 and 1832, during which he engaged Webster in a famous debate over states' rights.

116. **(C)** This map represents European powers in North America in 1713 after the Treaty of Utrecht transferred Acadia and a portion of Newfoundland from France to Great Britain.

117. **(A)** Northerners who opposed the Union's war effort were called "Copperheads," after the poisonous snake common in the South. Clement L. Vallandigham, a congressman from Ohio, was the most prominent "Copperhead."

118. **(D)** The Radical Republicans did not favor the distribution of plantation land to the freed slaves. The Reconstruction Act of 1867 temporarily divided the South into military districts and guaranteed that freed slaves could vote and hold office. The Radicals also enlarged the powers of the Freedmen's Bureau over the veto of Andrew Johnson and supported the Fourteenth Amendment, which gave the freed slaves certain civil rights.

119. **(B)** Through the Gadsden Purchase in 1853 the land south of the Gila River was purchased from Mexico for a possible transcontinental railroad route. Although Texas had entered the Union in 1845, the Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo established Mexican recognition of the acquisition and the southern boundary at the Rio Grande River.

120. **(C)** The Sixteenth Amendment, passed in 1913, provided for a national income tax. The Emancipation Proclamation (1862) freed slaves in Confederate territory. The Freedmen's Bureau (1865) was created to help the freed blacks. The Thirteenth Amendment (1865) abolished slavery, while the Fourteenth Amendment made the freed slaves citizens of the United States.

PRACTICE TEST 2

CLEP History of the United States I

Also available at the REA Study Center (*www.rea.com/studycenter*)

This practice test is also offered online at the REA Study Center. All CLEP exams are computer-based, and our test is formatted to simulate test-day conditions. We recommend that you take the online version of the test to receive these added benefits:

- **Timed testing conditions**–helps you gauge how much time you can spend on each question
- **Automatic scoring**–find out how you did on the test, instantly
- **On-screen detailed explanations of answers**–gives you the correct answer and explains why the other answer choices are wrong
- **Diagnostic score reports**–pinpoint where you're strongest and where you need to focus your study

PRACTICE TEST 2

CLEP History of the United States I

(Answer sheets appear in the back of the book.)

TIME: 90 Minutes
120 Questions

DIRECTIONS: Each of the questions or incomplete statements below is followed by five possible answers or completions. Select the best choice in each case and fill in the corresponding oval on the answer sheet.

1. All of the following were early explorers of North America EXCEPT

   (A) Francisco Coronado.
   (B) Robert La Salle.
   (C) Samuel de Champlain.
   (D) Francisco Pizarro.
   (E) Jacques Marquette.

2. Which of the following best characterizes Southern society before the Civil War?

   (A) Half of the slaveowners owned five or fewer slaves.
   (B) Most white families owned slaves.
   (C) Most slaveowners owned several hundred slaves.
   (D) The percentage of slaveowners was consistent throughout the South.
   (E) Most slaveowners lived in urban areas.

3. Between 1806 and 1809 nonimportation, nonintercourse, and embargo sought to

   (A) bring peace between France and Great Britain.
   (B) encourage domestic American manufacturing.

(C) force Great Britain to recognize American rights.
(D) balance Southern and Northern economic power.
(E) help Britain in the Napoleonic wars.

4. Which of the following was the first important means of transportation in the United States after independence?

(A) Canals
(B) Turnpikes
(C) Steamboats
(D) Railroads
(E) Clipper ships

5. The Missouri Compromise of 1820 did all of the following EXCEPT

(A) bring in Maine as a free state.
(B) bring in Missouri as a slave state.
(C) prohibit slavery north of latitude 36°30'.
(D) maintain the balance of slave and free states.
(E) establish the principle of popular sovereignty south of 36°30'.

QUESTIONS 6 and 7 refer to the following passage.

During the contest of opinion through which we have passed the animation of discussions and of exertions has sometimes worn an aspect which might impose on strangers unused to think freely and to speak and to write what they think; but this being now decided by the voice of the nation, announced according to the rules of the Constitution, all will, of course, arrange themselves under the will of the law, and unite in common efforts for the common good. . . . Let us, then, fellow-citizens, unite with one heart and one mind. . . . We have called by different names brethren of the same principle.

6. The above passage is most likely to be found in which of the following?

(A) Washington's farewell address
(B) Lincoln's first inaugural address
(C) Jackson's first inaugural address
(D) Jefferson's first inaugural address
(E) Declaration of Independence

7. The author wants primarily to convince his audience that

(A) political parties are harmful.
(B) political strife is foreign to the American character.
(C) party strife is indicative of fundamental philosophical differences.
(D) party strife should be forgotten once the will of the people has been expressed in an election.
(E) only the members of his party are acting in accordance with the rules of the Constitution.

8. The Declaration of Independence stated that

(A) men are created unequal.
(B) governments derive their powers from God.
(C) it was not right that a small island should rule a large continent.
(D) people have the right to abolish governments destructive of their rights.
(E) there shall be no taxation without representation.

9. According to the Treaty of Paris of 1783, the boundaries of the United States were

(A) Canada, the Gulf of Mexico, and the Mississippi River.
(B) Canada, Florida, and the Mississippi River.
(C) Canada, Florida, and the Missouri River.
(D) Canada, Florida, and the Appalachian Mountains.
(E) Canada, the Gulf of Mexico, and the Missouri River.

10. In 1858 at Freeport, Illinois, Stephen Douglas argued that

(A) Congress should bar slavery from the territories.
(B) slavery should be abolished in Washington, D.C.
(C) slavery could be kept out of the territories if people in the territories failed to pass laws to protect it.
(D) the slave trade should be declared illegal.
(E) slavery should be allowed in all the territories.

11. "God has not been preparing the English-speaking and Teutonic peoples for a thousand years for nothing but vain, idle self-admiration. No! He has not made us the master organizers of the world to establish a system where chaos reigns. He has given us the spirit of progress to overwhelm the forces of reaction throughout the earth. He has made us adept in government that we may administer government among savage and senile peoples."

The passage most nearly represents the philosophy of
I. Manifest Destiny.
II. American exceptionalism.
III. Social Darwinism.

(A) I only.
(B) III only.
(C) I and III only.
(D) II and III only.
(E) I, II, and III.

12. Which of the following was NOT involved in the "triangular trade" of the colonial period?

(A) Rum
(B) Molasses
(C) Cotton
(D) Slaves
(E) Tobacco

13. Those who supported ratification of the Constitution were called

(A) Federalists.
(B) Democrats.
(C) Whigs.
(D) Antifederalists.
(E) Republicans.

14. Robert E. Lee surrendered to Ulysses Grant at

(A) Spotsylvania.
(B) Appomattox.
(C) Cold Harbor.
(D) Raleigh.
(E) Richmond.

15. The French and Indian War took place during

(A) 1740–1748.
(B) 1754–1763.
(C) 1689–1699.
(D) 1702–1713.
(E) 1776–1783.

16. Colonial law generally defined slaves as chattel. This meant that slaves were considered as

(A) human beings with limited rights.
(B) servants who served for a limited period of time.
(C) slaves who received freedom upon the death of their masters.
(D) pieces of property with no rights.
(E) employees who received pay for their work.

17. The Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions of 1798 introduced which of the following ideas?

(A) Federal laws take precedent over state wishes.
(B) The years of residence required for naturalization should be increased from five to 14.
(C) It is illegal to make "false, scandalous, malicious" statements against the federal government.
(D) Individual states could nullify or set aside federal laws with which they disagreed.
(E) A protective tariff was harmful to the economic interests of the South.

18. The Judiciary Act of 1789 established

(A) a nine-judge Supreme Court.
(B) 13 circuit courts.
(C) three district courts.
(D) the office of attorney general.
(E) the power of the Supreme Court to review the constitutionality of federal laws.

19. Alexander Hamilton's legislative program for the new republic included all of the following EXCEPT

(A) the Bank of the United States.
(B) organization of the federal judiciary.
(C) assumption of Confederation and state debts.
(D) promotion of domestic manufacturing.
(E) a system of excise taxes.

20. "If slavery is not wrong, nothing is wrong! Slavery is a moral evil that cannot be allowed to expand into the western territories although we should not forcefully attempt to eliminate it in states that already allow it. Black Americans are the equal of every living man in their right to life, liberty and the fruit of their own labor. But they are not yet educated enough nor qualified for the full legal rights of citizenship."

This passage most nearly represents the views of

(A) Stephen A. Douglas.
(B) John Brown.
(C) John C. Breckinridge.
(D) Abraham Lincoln.
(E) Dred Scott.

21. The leading scientist in colonial America was

(A) John Peter Zenger.
(B) Jonathan Edwards.
(C) William Byrd.
(D) Benjamin Franklin.
(E) George Whitefield.

22. Which of the following correctly describes women's rights in mid-nineteenth century America?

(A) A married woman controlled her own property.
(B) Husbands were forbidden to beat their wives.
(C) Women could freely enter professions such as medicine and law.
(D) Women could not claim money they had earned.
(E) Women had the right to vote in federal elections.

23. Under Lincoln's plan of Reconstruction, Southern states could resume their part in the Union after

(A) 50 percent of the voters as of 1860 took an oath of allegiance.
(B) 10 percent of the voters as of 1860 took an oath of allegiance.
(C) allowing blacks to vote.
(D) adopting the Thirteenth Amendment which abolished slavery.
(E) repudiating debts accumulated under the Confederacy.

Give me your hand master. Now that I get a good hold on the tree I can help you out of your trouble.
My friend I think you had better are all under to get ashore; one of it is a thief are that cover you.
You go to thunder! Do you think I'll let an inferior Nigger take Me by the hand? No, sir, it is a white man's government.
RE-CONSTRUCTION,
OR A WHITE MAN'S GOVERNMENT.

24. Which of the following best expresses the point of view of the cartoon?

(A) Southern whites and blacks can never be reconciled.
(B) Southern whites would willingly be reconciled with blacks.
(C) Blacks have no interest in reconciliation with Southern whites.
(D) The president must take a forceful role in reconciling Southern whites and blacks.
(E) Reconciliation of Southern whites and blacks is simply a matter of recognizing the new realities.

25. Which of the following was NOT characteristic of pre-Civil War American cities?

(A) Rapidly rising death rates
(B) Increase of crime
(C) Extensive sewer systems
(D) Growth of slums
(E) Increase of population

26. The first armed conflict in 1775 between the Americans and British soldiers took place at

(A) Fort Ticonderoga.
(B) Bunker Hill.
(C) Lexington-Concord.
(D) Boston.
(E) Yorktown.

27. By opening territory north of 36°30′ to slavery, the Kansas-Nebraska Act repealed the

(A) Dred Scott decision.
(B) Compromise of 1850.
(C) Wilmot Proviso.
(D) Missouri Compromise.
(E) Northwest Ordinance.

28. By February 1, 1861, which group of states had seceded from the Union?

(A) Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana, Texas, South Carolina
(B) Mississippi, Arkansas, Missouri, Alabama, Georgia, Florida
(C) Arkansas, Tennessee, North Carolina, Virginia
(D) Texas, Louisiana, Arkansas, Mississippi, Alabama
(E) Kentucky, Mississippi, Arkansas, Missouri, Alabama, Georgia

29. In 1819 the United States obtained Florida from

(A) Great Britain.
(B) Spain.
(C) France.
(D) Mexico.
(E) Portugal.

30. Which of the following does NOT describe the Louisiana Purchase of 1803?

(A) The United States purchased Louisiana from France for $15 million.
(B) Jefferson expanded the powers of the presidency.
(C) French power expanded in the Western Hemisphere.
(D) The United States doubled in size.
(E) The treaty of cession left some of the boundaries vague.

31. What territory gained independence in 1836?

(A) California
(B) Oregon
(C) Texas
(D) Kansas-Nebraska
(E) Missouri

32. The Whiskey Rebellion of 1794 protested

(A) prohibition.
(B) a 25 percent tax on whiskey.
(C) government regulation of whiskey production.
(D) the lifting of import duties on whiskey.
(E) a 30 percent drop in whiskey prices.

33. Which of the following best describes the First Bank of the United States?

(A) It was solely a private business enterprise.
(B) It was solely a federal government enterprise.
(C) It was a joint private-public enterprise.
(D) It was a joint state-federal government enterprise.
(E) It was a joint state-private enterprise.

34. Which of the following correctly describes the Puritans?

(A) Their primary goal was to find gold.
(B) They established the Virginia colony.
(C) They established an economy based on tobacco.
(D) They wanted to build a society based upon biblical teachings.
(E) They established religious toleration.

35. The Federal Constitution

(A) abolished slavery.
(B) did not count slaves for purposes of representation.
(C) counted 3/5 of slaves for purposes of representation.
(D) explicitly legalized slavery.
(E) counted all slaves for purposes of representation.

36. Historians believe the British trade regulations during the colonial period

(A) were bad for all the American colonies.
(B) favored the Southern colonies over the Northern colonies.
(C) provided both advantages and disadvantages for the American colonies.
(D) encouraged the development of colonial industry.
(E) favored the Northern colonies over the Southern colonies.

37. The Northwest Ordinance of 1787 established what precedent for new territories?

(A) Support for public education
(B) Equality of new states with old
(C) Fair treatment of Indians
(D) Prohibition of slavery
(E) Popular sovereignty

38. The American Revolutionaries gained help from which of the following?

(A) France
(B) Mexico
(C) Canada
(D) Italy
(E) Germany

39. In the controversy over the lands belonging by treaty to the "Five Civilized Tribes," the Jackson administration

(A) destroyed the tribes militarily.
(B) forced Georgia to restore the lands to the Indians.

(C) forced the Indians to be removed to the West.
(D) called upon the Supreme Court to decide the issue.
(E) divided the lands between Georgia and the Indians.

40. Which of the following statements best describes the ethnic makeup of colonial America?

(A) French Huguenots settled heavily in New England.
(B) Germans concentrated in Pennsylvania.
(C) The Scotch-Irish moved into the southern tidewater area.
(D) Maryland was largely a Dutch-dominated colony.
(E) Spanish and Portuguese Jews settled in the Appalachian backcountry.

41. Place the following events leading up to the Civil War in correct chronological order. Place the earliest event first.

Kansas-Nebraska Act
Lincoln-Douglas Debates
John Brown's Raid
Election of Abraham Lincoln

Click on a choice, then click on a box.

42. Which of the following was a response to the Stamp Act?

(A) The Boston Tea Party
(B) The Battle of Lexington
(C) The Paxton Boys' march on Philadelphia
(D) Nonimportation of British goods
(E) The Boston Massacre

43. The American public protested the Jay Treaty of 1794 because it

(A) failed to get British soldiers out of the Northwest posts.
(B) arranged compensation for slaves freed by the British during the Revolution.
(C) allowed extensive trade with the West Indies.
(D) did nothing about British seizure of American vessels in the French West Indies.
(E) settled Canadian boundary questions.

44. Which of the following served as a Union general?

(A) Joseph Johnston
(B) Thomas Jackson

(C) William T. Sherman
(D) Robert E. Lee
(E) J.E.B. Stuart

45. The central compromise of the Constitutional Convention involved the issue of

(A) balance of powers within the federal government.
(B) relationship of state and federal powers.
(C) abandonment of the Articles of Confederation.
(D) representation of large and small states.
(E) the powers of the presidency.

46. The map above represents the U.S. in what year?

(A) 1804
(B) 1821
(C) 1845
(D) 1848
(E) 1853

47. Which of the following was NOT a cause of the Panic of 1837?

(A) The building up of surpluses in the nation's factories
(B) Destruction of the Second Bank of the United States
(C) Overextension of bank credit
(D) A poor wheat crop
(E) The Specie Circular of 1836

48. "There is a twofold liberty, natural (I mean as our nature is now corrupt) and civil or federal. The first is common to man with beasts and other creatures. By this, man, as he stands in relation to man simply, hath liberty to do what he lists; it is a liberty to evil as well as to good.... The other kind of liberty I call civil or federal, it may also be termed moral, in reference to the covenant between God and man, in the moral law, and the

politic covenants and constitutions, amongst men themselves. This liberty is the proper end and object of authority, and cannot subsist without it; and it is a liberty to that only which is good, just, and honest." (John Winthrop, 1630)

In this passage, liberty is understood

(A) primarily in communal terms.
(B) as the most important value.
(C) as something incompatible with Puritan society.
(D) primarily in individual terms.
(E) as something to be achieved only in the future, not in the present.

49. Which Supreme Court chief justice oversaw the development of the Court's power to judge the constitutionality of acts of Congress?

(A) John Marshall
(B) John Jay
(C) Roger Taney
(D) Alexander Hamilton
(E) Oliver Wendell Holmes, Jr.

50. Which of the following opposed rechartering the Second Bank of the United States?

(A) Nicholas Biddle
(B) Henry Clay
(C) Daniel Webster
(D) Andrew Jackson
(E) John Marshall

51. Under the Articles of Confederation, the Congress lacked the power to

(A) control foreign affairs.
(B) coin money.
(C) settle disputes among the states.
(D) tax.
(E) borrow money.

52. In the election of 1860, Abraham Lincoln won

(A) a majority of the popular vote.
(B) the electoral votes of Kentucky and Maryland.
(C) less than half of the electoral vote.
(D) the Northern and Midwestern states.
(E) the electoral votes of Virginia and Tennessee.

53. Which of the following groups tended to support the Federalists?

(A) Small farmers
(B) Small businessmen
(C) Wealthy merchants
(D) Baptist and Methodist ministers
(E) Skilled craftsmen

54. Prior to 1763 the British policy of "salutary neglect"

(A) did not enforce the Navigation Acts.
(B) allowed royal colonies to elect their own governors.
(C) took the Royal Navy off the high seas.
(D) encouraged colonists to establish their own parliament.
(E) withdrew British soldiers from North America.

55. What do Gabriel Prosser, Denmark Vesey, and Nat Turner have in common?

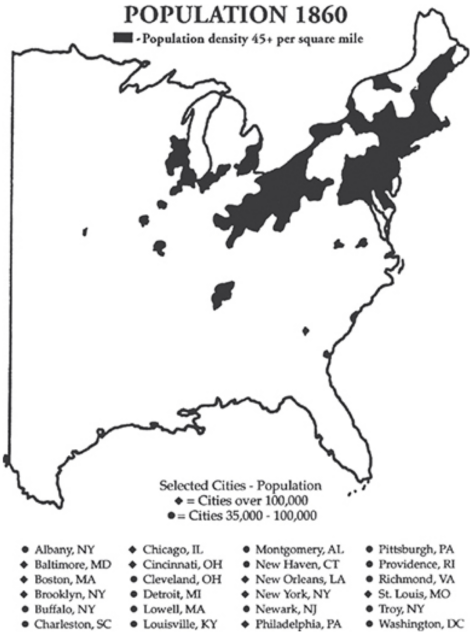
(A) They were active in the Second Great Awakening.
(B) They were early railroad tycoons.
(C) They organized slave rebellions.
(D) They helped form the Whig party.
(E) They were leading New England abolitionists.

56. The *Marbury v. Madison* decision of 1803 established the principle that

(A) the federal government had the power to regulate commerce.
(B) the Supreme Court had the power to declare acts of Congress unconstitutional.
(C) the federal government had the power under the contract clause to protect property rights.
(D) a state lacked the power to block the operation of a federal agency.
(E) that states had the power to determine whether acts of Congress applied within their borders.

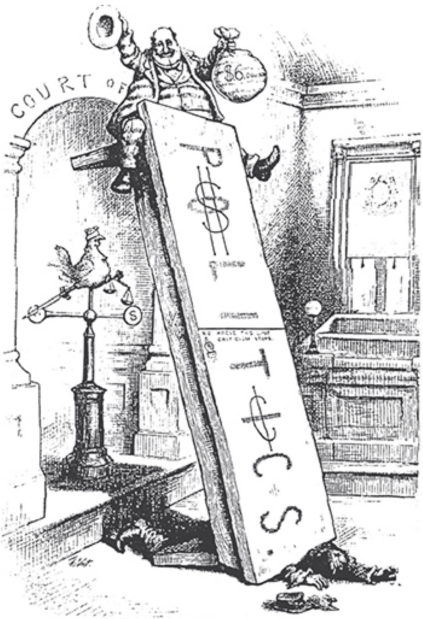
57. The Pinckney Treaty with Spain in 1795 gave Americans the "right of deposit" at New Orleans. This meant that

(A) Americans could land goods at New Orleans and ship them out again without paying taxes.
(B) America had full trading rights with the Spanish.
(C) Americans could ship their goods in Spanish vessels.
(D) New Orleans became an American possession.
(E) American banks could be established in New Orleans.



58. According to the map on the previous page, which state had the greatest degree of urbanization in 1860?

(A) New York
(B) Pennsylvania
(C) Illinois
(D) Massachusetts
(E) Virginia



"The Upright Bench," Which Is Above Criticism.

59. The 1871 cartoon by Thomas Nast shown on the previous page suggests that

(A) justice prevails in New York.
(B) political influence is sold for cash.
(C) the wealthy control New York politics.
(D) New York government is inefficient.
(E) the people are being well-served by New York government.

60. American factory workers of the pre-Civil War period

(A) formed powerful unions.
(B) worked long hours.
(C) had excellent working conditions.
(D) included few children.
(E) were attracted to socialism.

61. Which of the following books was likely to be found in the home of a colonial New Englander?

(A) *The Scarlet Letter*
(B) *Walden*
(C) *Pilgrim's Progress*
(D) *The Holy Bible, Douay version*
(E) *Moby-Dick*

62. The Emancipation Proclamation of 1863

(A) freed all slaves.
(B) freed slaves in the "border states."
(C) freed slaves in areas controlled by the Union army.
(D) freed slaves in areas still in rebellion.
(E) freed slaves in Washington, D.C.

63. The Proclamation of 1763

(A) ordered that settlement be stopped west of the peaks of the Appalachians.
(B) stated that those who broke the trade laws were to be tried in the admiralty courts.
(C) ended the French and Indian War.
(D) forbade trade with the French, Dutch, and Spanish West Indies.
(E) established new taxes on trade.

64. The Nullification Controversy of 1828 to 1833 arose in response to congressional support for

(A) restrictions on slavery.
(B) protective tariff s.
(C) internal improvements.
(D) the Second Bank of the United States.
(E) popular sovereignty.

65. Debate over ratification of the Constitution in New York resulted in the publication of

(A) *The American Commonwealth.*
(B) The Federalist Papers.
(C) Common Sense.
(D) The Age of Reason.
(E) Defense of the Constitutions of Government of the United States of America.

66. Who helped guide the Lewis and Clark expedition and aided in dealing with Indians?

(A) Sacajawea
(B) Zebulon Pike
(C) Sitting Bull
(D) James Wilkinson
(E) Tecumseh

67. Which of the following was part of the Compromise of 1850?

(A) Abolition of the slave trade
(B) A new fugitive slave law
(C) California's entry into the Union on the basis of popular sovereignty
(D) Utah and New Mexico territories to be free
(E) A new eastern border for Texas

68. *Common Sense* was written by

(A) Thomas Paine.

(B) Patrick Henry.
(C) John Locke.
(D) Thomas Jefferson.
(E) John Adams.

69. An indentured servant differed from a slave in that he or she

(A) received wages for their work.
(B) worked for a limited period of time, usually seven years, to repay their passage to America.
(C) was used only for agricultural work.
(D) was held in servitude for life.
(E) was ineligible for the 50 acres of land given under Virginia's headright system.

70. Alexander Hamilton believed that the United States should

(A) repudiate the debts of the Confederation but assume those of the states.
(B) assume the debts of the Confederation but not those of the states.
(C) assume the debts of both the Confederation and the states.
(D) repudiate the debts of both the Confederation and the states.
(E) assume the debts of the Confederation, the states, and local governments.

71. The Bill of Rights guarantees all of the following EXCEPT

(A) the freedom of religion.
(B) the right to a fair trial.
(C) powers not delegated to the federal government by the Constitution are reserved to the states.
(D) the right to bear arms.
(E) the right of women to vote.

72. The followers of Andrew Jackson established what political party?

(A) Whig
(B) Republican
(C) Democratic
(D) Federalist
(E) Populist

73. Beginning in the 1830s, William Lloyd Garrison called for

(A) colonization of slaves.
(B) immediate emancipation of the slaves.
(C) free soil.
(D) step-by-step emancipation of the slaves.
(E) popular sovereignty.

74. The Great Awakening of the 1740s resulted in

(A) the establishment of the Church of England.
(B) a split between religious traditionalists and religious radicals.
(C) an outbreak of witch hunting, resulting in the Salem witchcraft trials.
(D) the hanging of Quakers in Boston.
(E) a revival of denominationalism.

75. George Washington's army faced which of the following problems during the American Revolution?

(A) The British public unanimously supported the policy of its government.
(B) Two-thirds of the colonists opposed the war.
(C) The army was dependent on poorly trained militia.
(D) The army used conventional military tactics.
(E) The British government was able to give its full attention to the war.

76. Regarding interpretation of the Constitution, Alexander Hamilton wrote:

"It leaves, therefore, a criterion of what is constitutional, and of what is not so. This criterion is the *end*, to which the measure relates as a *means*. If the *end* be clearly comprehended within any of the specified powers, and if the measure have an obvious relation to that *end*, and is not forbidden by any particular provision of the Constitution, it may safely be deemed to come within the compass of the national authority."

In this passage Hamilton is arguing that

(A) the Constitution delegates implied powers to the federal government.
(B) the Constitution must specifically state that the federal government has the power to take a particular action.
(C) constitutional questions are to be settled by the Supreme Court.
(D) all implied powers are reserved to the states.
(E) the Constitution states both the ends and means of government action.

77. Which of the following was NOT a major writer of the pre-Civil War period?

(A) Ralph Waldo Emerson
(B) William Dean Howells
(C) Nathaniel Hawthorne
(D) Herman Melville
(E) Washington Irving

78. According to the Dred Scott decision,

(A) only people living within a territory could forbid slavery there.
(B) slaves were citizens of the United States.
(C) Congress had no power over slavery in the territories.
(D) the Missouri Compromise was constitutional.
(E) slaves taken temporarily into a free state were free.

79. Which of the following was NOT a Northern advantage in the Civil War?

(A) It was fighting a defensive war.
(B) It had greater manufacturing capacity.
(C) It owned greater railroad trackage.
(D) It had a larger population.
(E) The mountain chains ran north and south.

80. Which of the following does NOT apply to the Monroe Doctrine?

(A) It forbade Spain from attempting to restore control over its former colonies in the Western Hemisphere.
(B) It was based upon the assumption that the British navy would defend the principles of the Doctrine.
(C) It allowed the United States to take action in European affairs.
(D) It blocked a possible move by Russia to possess the Pacific Coast.
(E) It allowed European nations to use force of arms in order to collect debts from Latin American nations.

81. A revolution in what country made American neutrality an issue in the 1790s?

(A) Great Britain
(B) Spain
(C) Netherlands
(D) France
(E) Germany

82. The main source of revenue for the Confederacy during the Civil War came from

(A) income taxes
(B) high protective tariffs
(C) property taxes
(D) printing treasury notes
(E) taxes on railroads

83. Place the following events in correct chronological order. Place the earliest event first.

Coercive Acts
Missouri Compromise
Louisiana Purchase
Northwest Ordinance

Click on a choice, then click on a box.

84. The colonial South was divided into all of the following EXCEPT

(A) the Piedmont.
(B) the Great Plains.
(C) the backcountry.
(D) the Tidewater.
(E) the Fall Line.

85. Andrew Jackson's Specie Circular sought to

(A) pay off the government debts.
(B) slow down speculation in public land.
(C) replace the Bank of the United States with an independent treasury.
(D) end the financial panic of 1837.
(E) establish the free coinage of silver.

86. The "Intolerable Acts" of 1774 included all of the following EXCEPT

(A) the closing of Boston harbor.
(B) new taxes on glass, tea, lead, and paper.
(C) making the Massachusetts council and judiciary appointive.
(D) allowing trials of accused colonial officials to be moved to England.
(E) authorizing the governor to limit town meetings to as few as one a year.

87. According to the Constitution, the president is chosen by

(A) the House of Representatives.
(B) popular vote of the people.
(C) the electoral college.
(D) the Senate.
(E) both Houses of Congress.

88. Which of the following did NOT take place during the Grant presidency?

(A) John Wesley Powell's exploration of the Grand Canyon
(B) Last federal troops removed from the South
(C) Settlement of the Alabama claims
(D) Completion of the first transcontinental railroad
(E) Credit Mobilier Scandal

89. The "Revolution of 1800" resulted in the election of

(A) John Adams.
(B) Thomas Jefferson.
(C) James Monroe.
(D) James Madison.
(E) John Quincy Adams.

90. The following table represents the amount of continental currency required to buy $1.00 in specie. In what year did the currency's value decline by the largest percentage?

1777	January	1.25	October	3.00
1778	January	4.00	October	5.00
1779	January	8.00	October	30.00
1780	January	42.50	October	77.50
1781	January	100.00	April	167.50

(A) 1777
(B) 1778
(C) 1779
(D) 1780
(E) 1781

91. The term "Middle Colonies" refers to which of the following groupings?

(A) New York, Pennsylvania, New Jersey, Delaware
(B) Georgia, South Carolina, Virginia, Maryland
(C) New Hampshire, New York, Virginia
(D) Massachusetts, New Hampshire, Connecticut, Rhode Island
(E) North Carolina, Virginia, Maryland, Delaware

92. Which of the following battles effectively ended the American Revolution?

(A) Yorktown
(B) Brandywine Creek

(C) Saratoga
(D) Princeton
(E) King's Mountain

93. The Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution

(A) authorized income taxes.
(B) disallowed any former Confederate officeholder from becoming a U.S. Senator under any circumstances.
(C) repudiated federal war debts.
(D) gave blacks federal and state citizenship.
(E) required the former Confederate states to pay off their debts incurred during the Civil War.

94. Which of the following does NOT describe colonial government in America?

(A) During the 1700s the assemblies became more powerful.
(B) In royal colonies the governor could summon or dismiss the assembly.
(C) Compared with England, the right to vote was limited to a few individuals.
(D) The assemblies controlled the raising and spending of tax money.
(E) In proprietary colonies the proprietor appointed the governor.

95. The War of 1812 resulted in which of the following?

(A) New territory for the United States
(B) Resumption of the status quo prior to the war
(C) Defeat of the United States
(D) The strengthening of the Federalist party
(E) Loss of United States territory

96. Article I of the U.S. Constitution establishes

(A) freedom of speech.
(B) the powers of the presidency.
(C) freedom of assembly.
(D) the powers of Congress.
(E) the powers of the Supreme Court.

97. In order for a treaty to become law, the _____ must ratify the treaty after it has been negotiated by the _____.

(A) House of Representatives … Senate
(B) Congress … president
(C) Supreme Court … Senate
(D) Senate … president
(E) president … Senate

98. The first presidential election that relied upon the popular vote to select the electoral college was held in

(A) 1789
(B) 1800
(C) 1824
(D) 1916
(E) 1928

99. The American commitment to the "unalienable rights" of "life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness" is most clearly expressed in

(A) the U.S. Constitution.

(B) the Declaration of Independence.
(C) the Bill of Rights.
(D) the Twenty-fifth Amendment.
(E) *Plessy v. Ferguson*.

COTTON PRODUCTION AND SLAVE POPULATION, 1790–1860

Year	*Cotton Bales Produced*	*Number of Slaves*
1790	4,000	697,897
1820	73,222	1,538,098
1840	1,347,640	2,487,213
1860	3,841,416	3,957,760

100. The table above shows which of the following for the period 1790 to 1860?

(A) Cotton was the largest crop in the South.
(B) Slaves were efficient workers.
(C) Slavery was profitable.
(D) Cotton production was a primary cause for the growth of slavery.
(E) Northern textile mills required more Southern cotton.

101. The Mayflower Compact of 1620 established

(A) a land of religious freedom.
(B) the colony of Massachusetts.
(C) a royal colony.
(D) Plymouth colony.
(E) the colony of Rhode Island.

102. On the eve of Columbus's first arrival in 1492, the native Indian population of the Western Hemisphere is estimated at

(A) 1–5 million.
(B) 10–20 million.
(C) 25–40 million.
(D) 50–60 million.
(E) 80–100 million.

103. Columbus undertook his 1492 voyage to the Americas to

(A) Christianize the Indian population.
(B) prove that the Earth was round.
(C) discover new worlds.
(D) test the geographic theories of Ptolemy.
(E) secure wealth and power for himself and the Spanish throne.

104. Jamestown survived as the first permanent English settlement in America because

(A) the settlers followed the example of Roanoke.
(B) of the emergence of tobacco as a cash crop.
(C) of the religious convictions of its first settlers.
(D) of the mild climate of Virginia.
(E) of its use of Indian slaves as a labor force.

105. Roger Williams is best known in American history as

(A) advocating the uniting of church and state into a theocracy.
(B) an early champion of religious freedom.

(C) the chief justice at the Salem witch trials.
(D) the founder of New Hampshire.
(E) the first royal governor of Massachusetts.

106. Indentured servants in colonial America experienced

(A) great upward economic mobility.
(B) political power.
(C) racial harmony with black slaves.
(D) a high standard of living.
(E) low social status.

107. During the seventeenth century, black slaves in the Southern colonies

(A) came directly from East Africa.
(B) grew slowly as a labor force.
(C) were treated the same as slaves in the British West Indies.
(D) were allowed to set their children free.
(E) lived mostly in urban areas.

108. The Dominion of New England was

(A) the title of the first book published in America.
(B) the name given to Massachusetts by John Winthrop.
(C) an attempt to reorganize the British Empire by James II.
(D) the first American public school.
(E) the official name of the Puritan religion.

109. William Penn's plans for a Quaker colony in Pennsylvania included all of the following EXCEPT

(A) establishing peaceful relations with the Indians.
(B) allowing for religious freedom.
(C) establishing a democracy.
(D) the making of an economic profit.
(E) establishing a colony loyal to Great Britain.

110. At the close of the Seven Years' War in 1763, France ceded to Great Britain

(A) the French West Indies.
(B) Florida.
(C) Canada.
(D) the African slave trade.
(E) the Louisiana Territory.

111. England passed the Stamp Act in 1765 to

(A) punish Americans for protests to the Sugar Act.
(B) control the American press.
(C) raise money to reduce England's national debt.
(D) allow for illegal search-and-seizure of smugglers.
(E) allow Americans to settle the Ohio River Valley.

112. The eighteenth century population in British North America

(A) nearly doubled every 25 years.
(B) became increasingly more homogeneous.
(C) had a life expectancy of 45 years for males.
(D) was clustered inside the new cities of the colonies.
(E) was comprised of less than two percent African-Americans.

113. All of the following are major figures in the Enlightenment EXCEPT

(A) Benjamin Franklin.
(B) William Bradford.
(C) John Locke.
(D) Sir Isaac Newton.
(E) Thomas Jefferson.

114. After the American Revolution, the Loyalists did NOT

(A) return to Great Britain.
(B) emigrate to Canada.
(C) sue America for property loss.
(D) settle in the West Indies.
(E) create their own American colony in Ohio.

115. The Articles of Confederation created for the 13 states

(A) a strong national government.
(B) a sound national economy.
(C) a league of friendship among 13 independent countries.
(D) the Bill of Rights.
(E) interstate trade agreements.

116. During the winter of 1786, Shays' Rebellion indicated to most Americans

(A) the political dangers of the post-war recession.
(B) the weaknesses of state government.
(C) the need to reform the Articles of Confederation.
(D) the desperation of the yeoman farmer in America.
(E) All of the above.

117. In seventeenth century New England, married women were denied the right to

(A) vote for elected officials.
(B) divorce their husbands.
(C) arrange marriages for their children.
(D) own property.
(E) All of the above.

118. The passage of the Declaratory Act in 1766 by Parliament was greeted in America by

(A) the creation of the Continental Congress.
(B) mob violence against British merchants.
(C) refusal to pay these new taxes.
(D) little attention to its statement of parliamentary sovereignty.
(E) Tories fleeing to Canada.

119. During the Washington administration, the secretary of the treasury, Alexander Hamilton, proposed an economic program which included all of the following EXCEPT

(A) establishing close ties between the national government and American business.
(B) establishing a national bank.
(C) having the states pay off the total war debt.
(D) imposing new taxes through customs duties and excise taxes.
(E) retiring the full national debt but maintaining deficit government spending.

120. During the 1790s, Federalists and Republicans openly disagreed over

(A) the extent of popular control of government.
(B) foreign policy toward England and France.
(C) the activities of Citizen Genet.
(D) the fiscal policies of the national government.
(E) All of the above.

PRACTICE TEST 2

Answer Key

1. (D)
2. (A)
3. (C)
4. (B)
5. (E)
6. (D)
7. (D)
8. (D)
9. (B)
10. (C)
11. (E)
12. (C)
13. (A)
14. (B)
15. (B)
16. (D)
17. (D)
18. (D)
19. (B)
20. (D)
21. (D)
22. (D)
23. (B)
24. (E)
25. (C)
26. (C)
27. (D)
28. (A)
29. (B)
30. (C)
31. (C)
32. (B)
33. (C)
34. (D)
35. (C)
36. (C)
37. (B)
38. (A)
39. (C)
40. (B)
41. 1, 2, 3, 4
42. (D)
43. (D)
44. (C)

45. (D)
46. (B)
47. (A)
48. (A)
49. (A)
50. (D)
51. (D)
52. (D)
53. (C)
54. (A)
55. (C)
56. (B)
57. (A)
58. (A)
59. (B)
60. (B)
61. (C)
62. (D)
63. (A)
64. (B)
65. (B)
66. (A)
67. (B)
68. (A)
69. (B)
70. (C)
71. (E)
72. (C)
73. (B)
74. (B)
75. (C)
76. (A)
77. (B)
78. (C)
79. (A)
80. (C)
81. (D)
82. (D)
83. 1, 4, 3, 2
84. (B)
85. (B)
86. (B)
87. (C)
88. (B)
89. (B)
90. (C)
91. (A)
92. (A)
93. (D)
94. (C)
95. (B)
96. (D)
97. (D)
98. (C)
99. (B)
100. (D)
101. (D)
102. (E)
103. (E)

104. (B)
105. (B)
106. (E)
107. (B)
108. (C)
109. (C)
110. (C)
111. (C)
112. (A)
113. (B)
114. (E)
115. (C)
116. (E)
117. (A)
118. (D)
119. (E)
120. (E)

PRACTICE TEST 2

Detailed Explanations of Answers

1. **(D)** Francisco Pizarro explored Peru while Francisco Coronado travelled through the area of Texas, Oklahoma, and Kansas. Robert La Salle and Jacques Marquette pursued the Mississippi River, and Samuel de Champlain explored the New England coast, Lake Champlain, and the Great Lakes.

2. **(A)** Of the 400,000 slaveholders, about 200,000 owned five or fewer slaves. Only about 1 in 4 white Southerners belonged to a slaveholding family, but the percentage varied from region to region. Relatively few slaveholders lived in urban areas.

3. **(C)** Nonimportation (1806), embargo (1807), and nonintercourse (1809) all sought to force the British to recognize American rights on the sea.

4. **(B)** Turnpikes became popular in the 1790s and canals after the completion of the Erie Canal in 1825. The steamboat was introduced in 1807 and became particularly popular in the 1830s.

5. **(E)** The Missouri Compromise, engineered by Henry Clay, maintained the balance of slave and free states by bringing in Maine as a free state and Missouri as a slave state. It sought to diff use slavery as an issue in westward expansion by prohibiting slavery north of latitude 36°30′, but it said nothing about popular sovereignty south of that line.

6. **(D)** The passage is from Jefferson's first inaugural address, March 1801. Coming after the extremely heated electoral campaign of 1800, it was followed immediately by Jefferson's famous statement, "We are all Republicans, we are all Federalists."

7. **(D)** Jefferson was trying to convince his audience that party strife should be forgotten once the will of the people has been expressed in an election (D). Jefferson recognized the inevitability of party politics in a democratic system, so he would not have argued against them (A), or that the strife caused by parties is foreign to the American character (B). Fundamental philosophical differences (C) are what give rise to different parties, and

are not the topic of this passage, nor is Jefferson arguing that only his party acts in accordance with the Constitution (E).

8. **(D)** The Declaration argued that all men are created equal and are endowed with rights, that government is instituted for the purpose of preserving these rights and gains its powers from the governed, and that people have the right of revolution when government becomes despotism. It was Thomas Paine's *Common Sense* that argued that a small island should not rule a large continent. No taxation without representation was a popular phrase of Americans after the Stamp Act of 1765.

9. **(B)** The Treaty recognized Canada, Florida, and the Mississippi River as the boundaries of the United States. Florida went to Spain. The Missouri River lies west of the Mississippi while the Appalachians lay within the United States of 1783.

10. **(C)** In response to Lincoln's question of how he could support both popular sovereignty and the Dred Scott decision, Stephen Douglas said that slavery could be kept out of the territories if people there failed to pass laws to protect it. This became known as the Freeport Doctrine and lost Douglas support in the South.

11. **(E)** The passage is taken from a speech by U.S. Senator Albert Beveridge, an ardent imperialist, and represents a philosophy based on Manifest Destiny (I), American exceptionalism (II), and Social Darwinism (III). The doctrine of Manifest Destiny stated that it was the destiny of the United States to dominate and rule all of the American continent. It was based on the belief that the American people and American democracy were superior to other peoples and governments in the Americas. This is related to the concept of American exceptionalism (II), which stated that America was God's chosen nation and Americans were God's chosen people. The two concepts went hand-in-hand, because if Americans were God's chosen people, then it was God's will that they should someday dominate North America, if not the rest of the world. When Darwin's ideas were published, hypothesizing survival of the fittest, many Americans quickly embraced them because they were easily translated into Social Darwinism, the belief that "superior" cultures will naturally come to dominate "inferior" cultures. This line of reasoning was used to establish "scientific" support for the concepts of Manifest Destiny and American exceptionalism. Together they provided a compelling, even if distorted, rationale for American imperialism.

12. **(C)** Cotton did not become a major product until the invention of the cotton gin in the 1790s. Sugar or molasses was purchased in the West Indies and taken to New England where it was manufactured into rum. The rum was then traded in Africa for slaves. In other forms of the triangular trade, tobacco was a major product.

13. **(A)** Those who supported the Constitution were called Federalists, while the Antifederalists opposed it. The Whigs, Republicans, and Democrats were political parties that emerged later in the country's history.

14. **(B)** Lee surrendered to Grant at the Appomattox Courthouse on April 9, 1865. Spotsylvania and Cold Harbor were battles between Lee and Grant that preceded the surrender. Joseph E. Johnston surrendered to William T. Sherman at Raleigh on April 17, 1865. Richmond was the capital of the Confederacy.

15. **(B)** The French and Indian War was the culmination of a series of wars between France and England: King William's War (1689–1697), Queen Anne's War (1700–1713), King George's War (1740–1748), and the French and Indian War (1754–1763). The American Revolution took place between 1776 and 1783.

16. **(D)** "Chattel" was the legal term for a piece of property. Black slaves were not considered human beings and therefore had no rights, nor were they employees. Servants who served for a limited period of time were called indentured servants. Individual masters might grant slaves freedom in their wills, but this happened infrequently.

17. **(D)** The Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions (1798) introduced the idea of nullification in response to the Alien and Sedition Acts (1798), which changed the years of residence necessary for naturalization and placed sharp limits on freedom of speech.

18. **(D)** The Judiciary Act of 1789 provided for a six-judge Supreme Court, 13 district courts, three circuit courts, and the office of attorney general. It gave the Supreme Court the power to review state laws that conflicted with federal statutes.

19. **(B)** As secretary of the treasury, Hamilton was concerned with economic issues, thus he promoted the Bank of the United States, assumption of Confederation and state debts, excise taxes, and manufacturing, though the latter was unsuccessful in Congress. Congress passed the Judiciary Act in 1789, but it was not Hamilton's proposal.

20. **(D)** The paragraph summarizes the position taken by Abraham Lincoln during the Lincoln-Douglas debates in 1856. Lincoln was in a very difficult position throughout these debates and walked a political tightrope, opposing slavery on moral grounds while at the same time trying not to offend a sometimes violent racist electorate. Lincoln truly believed slavery to be a moral wrong that could not be allowed to expand. Hence, he adopted the inherently contradictory position of opposing slavery on moral grounds, but refusing to support efforts to eliminate it completely; claiming that blacks were equal to anybody, but refusing to support full citizenship for blacks. Stephen Douglas (A) never denounced slavery as immoral. Douglas never viewed blacks as the equal of whites and never argued for any rights for blacks. He openly stated during the Lincoln-Douglas debates that he wanted citizenship only for whites. John Brown (B) went to the other extreme. He was an ardent abolitionist who wanted not only an end to slavery and full rights for blacks, he wanted a military invasion of the South to force Southern slaveowners to release their slaves. His ill-conceived occupation of the Federal arsenal in Harpers Ferry, Virginia, was an attempt to begin a national insurrection that would lead to emancipation of the slaves. John Breckinridge (C) was the Kentucky lawmaker who ran as a Southern Democrat against Abraham Lincoln in the 1860 presidential election. As such he led the movement to protect states' rights and to preserve slavery as an institution. Dred Scott (E) was the center of the controversial Supreme Court decision of March 1857, in which the Court ruled that Scott, a freed slave, had no right to sue in the federal courts and could be returned to slavery.

21. **(D)** Benjamin Franklin made important discoveries regarding electricity. John Peter Zenger was a newspaper editor involved in a 1735 libel case. Jonathan Edwards was the New England preacher who probably started

the Great Awakening. William Byrd was one of the leading Virginia planters of the early eighteenth century. George Whitefield was a British itinerant evangelist who preached throughout the American colonies during the Great Awakening.

22. **(D)** In most states women had no claim to money they earned; it was controlled by their husbands, as was their own property. Husbands could legally beat their wives "with a reasonable instrument." And the professions were largely closed to women. Women did not have the right to vote in federal elections until the passage of the Nineteenth Amendment in 1920.

23. **(B)** According to Lincoln's plan, the former Confederate states could resume their part in the Union after 10 percent of the voters as of 1860 took an oath of allegiance to the United States Constitution. The Wade-Davis Bill, which Lincoln killed by a pocket veto, required 50 percent of the voters as of 1860 to take an oath of allegiance. The Thirteenth Amendment was not adopted until after Lincoln's death, although Lincoln did require states to abolish slavery. Neither black voting rights nor Confederate debts were part of Lincoln's plan.

24. **(E)** This cartoon portrays a rather passive role for President Grant, suggesting that Southerners need only heed his advice to accept the new social realities and all will be well. There is no hint that the federal government might need to bring its weight to bear upon the situation.

25. **(C)** The population growth of pre-Civil War cities generally outdistanced the sewer systems. This contributed to the increasing death rate, especially in the growing slums. With the growth of slums came an increase in crime.

26. **(C)** The conflict at Lexington-Concord occurred April 19, 1775. Fort Ticonderoga was captured by the Americans on May 10, 1775 and the Battle of Bunker Hill took place on June 17. The British were forced to leave Boston in March 1776 and surrendered to Washington at Yorktown in 1781.

27. **(D)** By organizing Kansas-Nebraska on the basis of popular sovereignty, the Kansas-Nebraska Act repealed the Missouri Compromise of 1820 which had barred slavery north of 36°30´. The Wilmot Proviso was not passed by Congress. The Compromise of 1850 had nothing directly to do with slavery north of 36°30´. Dred Scott would not be decided until 1857. The Northwest Ordinance of 1787 had outlawed slavery in the western lands given up by the original 13 states.

28. **(A)** The first group of states to secede were Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana, Texas, and South Carolina. After Lincoln called up troops in April 1861, Arkansas, Tennessee, North Carolina, and Virginia seceded. Missouri, Kentucky, Maryland, and Delaware were slave states that never seceded.

29. **(B)** England had returned Florida to Spain in 1783. In 1819 through the Adams-Onis Treaty, Spain ceded Florida to the United States in return for an American promise to pay $5 million to American citizens for claims against Mexico.

30. **(C)** The Louisiana Purchase effectively ended Napoleon's dream of power in the Western Hemisphere. He sold the territories, which he had purchased from Spain, because of difficulties in Haiti and need of money.

31. **(C)** Texas won independence from Mexico in 1836 through rebellion. California briefly became independent in 1846. The other territories never became independent.

32. **(B)** The 1794 Whiskey Rebellion opposed a 25 percent tax on whiskey proposed by Hamilton and passed by Congress; government regulation of whiskey production, import duties, and prohibition did not emerge as issues until much later.

33. **(C)** The First Bank of the United States was a joint private-public enterprise, with stock owned by both the federal government and private individuals and representatives of the government and private sector serving as directors.

34. **(D)** The Puritans, who established the Massachusetts Bay colony, sought to build a society based upon the will of God as revealed in the Bible according to their understanding. Rather than establishing religious toleration, they allowed only their Congregational church free exercise of religion. It was the founders of the Virginia colony who sought gold and later established tobacco as the basis of their economy.

35. **(C)** The Constitution in Article 1, Section 2 counted 3/5 of "other persons" than free persons for the purposes of representation. It otherwise ignored the issue of slavery, except for providing for the return of runaway slaves in Article 1, Section 9.

36. **(C)** The British trade regulations provided both advantages and disadvantages for the American colonies. For example, while guaranteeing access to the British market, they prevented access to the markets of other countries. Individual laws often favored certain colonies over others, but as a whole they did not favor one section of the American colonies.

37. **(B)** While the Northwest Ordinance provided support for public education, prohibited slavery, and sought fair treatment of Indians, the only precedent it established was a procedure for a territory to become a state equal with all existing states. Popular sovereignty emerged later as a policy to allow states to decide for themselves whether to be slave or free.

38. **(A)** The Americans signed an alliance with France in 1778. Spain and the Netherlands came to American aid within the next year.

39. **(C)** The Jackson administration forced the tribes to be removed to the West. The Seminoles of Florida, however, resisted for several years. The Supreme Court had decided the issue in the Indians' favor but Jackson ignored the decision.

40. **(B)** The Germans, known as the Pennsylvania Dutch, settled heavily in Pennsylvania. The French Huguenots could be found in New York and South Carolina. The Scotch-Irish settled the frontier areas of the Middle and Southern colonies. The Dutch were concentrated in New York, although the English were the dominant ethnic group even in that colony. Spanish and Portuguese Jews could be found in the urban areas of New York, Rhode Island, and South Carolina.

41. Kansas-Nebraska Act (1854)
Lincoln-Douglas Debates (1858)
John Brown's Raid (1859)
Election of Abraham Lincoln (1860)

42. **(D)** The Stamp Act Congress of 1765 established the nonimportation or boycott of British goods. The Paxton Boys marched on Philadelphia in response to Indian uprisings in 1763. The Boston Tea Party responded to the 1773 Tea Act, while the Battle of Lexington took place in 1775. The Boston Massacre occurred in 1770.

43. **(D)** The Jay Treaty of 1794 said nothing about British seizure of American vessels in the French West Indies, a major problem for Americans. Although the Treaty arranged to get British soldiers out of the Northwest posts, it obtained only limited trading rights with the West Indies and did nothing about compensation for slaves.

44. **(C)** William T. Sherman directed the "march to the sea" of 1864, capturing Savannah and splitting the Confederacy. Joseph Johnston served the Confederacy at the Battle of Seven Pines (1862) and Vicksburg (1862–1863). Thomas "Stonewall" Jackson played important roles for the Confederacy at the Second Battle of Bull Run (1862) and Chancellorsville (1863). Robert E. Lee commanded the Army of Virginia at such battles as Antietam (1862) and Gettysburg (1863). J.E.B. Stuart fought for the Confederacy at the Second Battle of Bull Run (1862), Chancellorsville (1863), and Gettysburg (1863).

45. **(D)** The central compromise was the agreement that all states would be represented equally in the Senate and by population in the House. There was general agreement that the Articles must be abandoned, that the federal government must be more powerful than the states, and that the legislative and executive powers must be balanced.

46. **(B)** The Missouri Compromise of 1820 brought Missouri into the Union as a slave state in 1821 and Maine as a free state in 1820.

47. **(A)** The United States still had a basically agricultural economy, hence factories had only a marginal effect on the total economy. The destruction of the Bank of the United States took away the major control over the state chartered banks and many of them became over-extended. Many banks failed after the 1836 Specie Circular. A poor wheat crop also forced the U.S. to use gold and silver to purchase grain from other countries.

48. **(A)** In this statement liberty is understood in terms of the group rather than the individual. Rather than being the primary value, liberty is subordinate to the good. In this sense, liberty is compatible with Puritan society and achievable in the present, although these ideas do not appear directly in the passage quoted.

49. **(A)** John Marshall served as chief justice from 1801 to 1835, during which the Court successfully claimed the power to determine the constitutionality of acts of Congress. John Jay served as chief justice from 1789 to 1794 and Roger B. Taney served from 1836 to 1864. Alexander Hamilton never served on the Supreme Court.

50. **(D)** Andrew Jackson vetoed in 1832 the rechartering of the Second Bank of the United States. Nicholas Biddle served as president of the Second Bank of the United States, and Henry Clay and Daniel Webster supported its rechartering in Congress. John Marshall served as chief justice of the Supreme Court.

51. **(D)** Under the Articles of Confederation, Congress had the power to control foreign affairs, make war, settle disputes between the states, and coin or borrow money, but it did not have the power to tax.

52. **(D)** Although Lincoln won only 40 percent of the popular vote and none of the Southern or border states, he won the electoral votes of the Northern and Midwestern states as well as California and Oregon. He would have won even if all the votes against him had gone to a single candidate.

53. **(C)** Wealthy merchants, holders of government bonds, owners of large plantations, former officers of the Continental Army, Episcopal and Congregational ministers, important lawyers, and those involved in export and shipping tended to support the Federalists.

54. **(A)** The policy of "salutary neglect," described by Prime Minister Robert Walpole in the 1720s, made little attempt to enforce the Navigation Acts, passed in the 1660s to control colonial trade. The royal navy remained on the high seas and royal governors continued to be appointed by the king. Britain never encouraged the American colonies to establish their own parliament.

55. **(C)** Gabriel Prosser plotted a rebellion in Virginia in 1800 but was betrayed. Denmark Vesey similarly organized an uprising in South Carolina in 1822 but was discovered. Nat Turner led a rebellion in Virginia in 1831 that resulted in over 60 deaths.

56. **(B)** In *Marbury v. Madison* the Supreme Court claimed the power to determine the constitutionality of acts of Congress. In *Gibbons v. Ogden* (1824) it gave the federal government the power to regulate commerce. *Dartmouth College v. Woodward* (1819) extended federal protection to property rights under the contract clause, and *McCulloch v. Maryland* (1819) declared that a state could not block a federal agency. Nullification was the doctrine that a state could declare a federal law inoperative within its borders, a position advocated by South Carolina in the 1830s.

57. **(A)** The "right of deposit" meant that Americans could land their goods at New Orleans and ship them out again without paying taxes. The treaty also opened the Mississippi to American shipping for three years and settled the boundary with Florida.

58. **(A)** New York had two cities over 100,000 in population and three with between 35,000 and 100,000.

59. **(B)** Boss Tweed's moneybag and the dollar and cent signs indicate that political influence was up for sale. The cartoon does not say who was buying influence nor does it bring up the issue of efficiency.

60. **(B)** During the first half of the nineteenth century, American factory workers labored from 60 to 72 hours a week. Although some attempted to form unions, none were long-lasting. Working conditions allowed little concern for health and safety. Children made up a significant proportion of the work force. Socialism was not yet an important movement in the United States.

61. **(C)** *Pilgrim's Progress* was published by the English Puritan John Bunyan in 1678 and 1684. The Douay version of the Bible was used by Roman Catholics, while Nathaniel Hawthorne's *The Scarlet Letter,* Henry Thoreau's *Walden,* and Herman Melville's *Moby-Dick* were nineteenth century New England works.

62. **(D)** The Emancipation Proclamation of January 1, 1863, freed slaves in areas still in rebellion. The Thirteenth Amendment (1865) abolished slavery entirely.

63. **(A)** The Proclamation of 1763 ordered the ending of settlement west of the peaks of the Appalachians because of increasing problems with the Indians. The Peace of Paris (1763) ended the French and Indian War while the Sugar Act (1764) forbade trade with the non-English West Indies and required trials for those breaking the law to be held in Admiralty Courts, which had no juries. Numerous new taxes were placed on trade beginning in 1765.

64. **(B)** The Nullification Controversy arose in response to the Tariff of 1828 (Tariff of Abominations) and the Tariff of 1832. South Carolina declared the tariffs "null, void, and no law" in their state after February 1, 1833. A compromise tariff in 1833 diff used the situation. Popular sovereignty refers to the policy of having a state decide whether it would be slave or free.

65. **(B)** *The Federalist Papers* were written by John Jay, Alexander Hamilton, and James Madison to support ratification of the Constitution in New York state. Thomas Paine wrote *Common Sense* during the conflict with Great Britain and *The Age of Reason* to support rational religion. James Bryce, an Englishman, wrote *The American Commonwealth* in the late nineteenth century. John Adams's *Defense of the Constitutions of Government of the United States of America* was a history of republican government.

66. **(A)** Sacajawea was an Indian guide and interpreter for Lewis and Clark. Sitting Bull was a Sioux chief of the late nineteenth century. Zebulon Pike was an army officer who explored the West while James Wilkinson served as governor of the Louisiana Territory, and may have been involved in a plan to establish part of the region as a separate nation. Tecumseh led an Indian confederacy in revolt against the United States just prior to the War of 1812.

67. **(B)** A new fugitive slave law was adopted but the slave trade was abolished only in Washington, D.C. California was to enter the union as a free state while Utah and Mexico were left undetermined in regard to slavery. The western border of Texas was also settled.

68. **(A)** Thomas Paine published *Common Sense* in 1776. Thomas Jefferson drafted the "Declaration of Independence" that same year. Patrick Henry became famous for his "Give me liberty or give me death" speech in Virginia in 1775. All three men were indebted to the natural rights philosophy of the British writer John Locke. John Adams wrote *Defense of the Constitutions of Government of the United States of America* in the mid-1780s.

69. **(B)** Indentured servants sold their services for a limited period of time to repay their passage to America. In contrast, slaves were held in servitude for life. Both slaves and indentured servants were used for all types of manual labor but neither received wages for their work, except in special circumstances. At the end of their indenturement, servants usually received 50 acres of land.

70. **(C)** Alexander Hamilton believed that the United States should assume the debts of both the Confederation and the states in order to draw people's loyalty from the states to the federal government, as explained in his *Report on Public Credit* (1790).

71. **(E)** The Bill of Rights, or first 10 amendments to the Constitution, placed limits on the power of the federal government, including freedom

of religion, speech, press, and assembly, right to keep and bear arms, limits on the quartering of troops, limits on the right of government to search, various rights for accused persons, and nonenumerated rights and powers reserved by the states and people.

72. **(C)** The followers of Andrew Jackson established the Democratic party, whose roots could be loosely traced back to the Democratic-Republican (or Republican) party of Thomas Jefferson. The Federalists had died out since 1814 and the Whigs arose in the 1830s in opposition to Jackson and the Democrats. The Populists emerged in the 1880s.

73. **(B)** In 1831 William Lloyd Garrison called for immediate emancipation. He rejected colonization, free soil, and any other step-by-step emancipation as insufficient.

74. **(B)** The Great Awakening, which took place primarily in New England, split both the Congregational and Presbyterian churches between those who emphasized spiritual enthusiasm and those who preferred a more staid, rational approach. The Awakening was interdenominational in character, particularly through the evangelism of George Whitefield. The hanging of Quakers and the witchcraft trials both took place in the seventeenth century. The Church of England was not an established, or state supported, church in New England, where Congregationalism was established.

75. **(C)** Washington was dependent upon poorly trained militia to man his army. The British public was divided in its support of Britain's policy while about one-third of the American colonists opposed the war. Washington did not depend on conventional military tactics and began fighting in ways new to the English. The attention of the British government was also diverted by continuing conflict with France.

76. **(A)** Alexander Hamilton was arguing for "broad construction" of the Constitution, asserting that as long as the Constitution did not prohibit an action it was allowable when it carried out an end or goal of the Constitution. Thomas Jefferson argued for "strict construction," saying that the Constitution must specifically give the federal government a power in order for that power to be constitutional. Hamilton was saying nothing about the Supreme Court and rejected the idea that implied powers were reserved to the states.

77. **(B)** William Dean Howells emerged as a major writer after the Civil War. Irving, Emerson, Hawthorne, and Melville all wrote their major works before the Civil War, although Emerson and Melville lived beyond the war itself.

78. **(C)** In the 1857 Dred Scott decision, the Supreme Court decided that neither Congress nor the people living in a territory could bar slavery from that territory; therefore, the Missouri Compromise was unconstitutional. It also decided that slaves were not citizens, thus Scott had no right to bring his case to the Court.

79. **(A)** The North was fighting an offensive war, for it had to invade the South in order to win.

80. **(C)** The Monroe Doctrine of 1823 pledged that the U.S. would not intervene in European affairs. Because of previous discussions with the British, Monroe knew that the British navy would support the U.S. in opposing Russian or Spanish expansion in the Western Hemisphere.

81. **(D)** The French Revolution, beginning in 1789, made the maintenance of neutrality difficult for the United States for the next two decades.

82. **(D)** The Confederacy borrowed about $15 million from abroad and $100 million from its citizens, raised over $100 million through taxation, and printed over $1 billion in paper money. No income tax was established.

83. Coercive Acts (1774)
Northwest Ordinance (1787)
Louisiana Purchase (1803)
Missouri Compromise (1820)

84. **(B)** The Great Plains refers to the trans-Mississippi West. The Tidewater refers to the area near the sea, the Piedmont includes the foothills on the eastern side of the Appalachians, while the backcountry lay in the Appalachians themselves and westward. The Fall Line is the dividing point between the Tidewater and the Piedmont where the water falls rapidly to the lower land.

85. **(B)** The Specie Circular of 1836 sought to slow down speculation in public land by requiring payment in gold and silver rather than bank notes. Sales of public lands were helping pay off the public debt. The Independent Treasury was not established until the 1840s.

86. **(B)** The Townshend Duties of 1767 placed new duties on glass, tea, lead, and paper. The "Intolerable" or "Coercive Acts" were passed in response to the Boston Tea Party and closed Boston Harbor until the tea was paid for, gave the governor greater powers, made the colony's council appointive rather than elective, and provided that colonial officials accused of capital crimes could have their trials moved to England.

87. **(C)** The electoral college is made up of electors, chosen by the people, and equal in number to the total number of representatives and senators from each state. These electors choose the president.

88. **(B)** Grant served as president from 1869 to 1877. Powell explored the Grand Canyon in 1869, the same year the transcontinental railroad was completed. The Alabama claims were settled in 1872. The Credit Mobilier scandal broke open in 1872. Federal troops were removed from the South in 1877, after Hayes became president.

89. **(B)** Thomas Jefferson was elected in 1800, John Adams in 1796, James Madison in 1808, James Monroe in 1816, and John Quincy Adams in 1824.

90. **(C)** Although the largest dollar amount that the currency declined was $67.50 between January and April, 1781, the largest percentage was in 1779 when it declined 375 percent.

91. **(A)** The "Middle Colonies" include New York, Pennsylvania, New Jersey, and Delaware. "New England" refers to Massachusetts, New Hampshire, Connecticut, and Rhode Island. The "Southern Colonies" were Georgia, South Carolina, North Carolina, Virginia, and Maryland.

92. **(A)** The British won the Battle of Brandywine Creek (1777), while the Americans won at Princeton (1776) and Saratoga (1777), the turning point of the war, and King's Mountain (1780). But it was the British surrender at the Battle of Yorktown (1781) that effectively ended the fighting.

93. **(D)** The Fourteenth Amendment promised that federal war debts would be paid but forbade the payment of Confederate war debts by the United States or any states. It allowed limitations on black voting but provided for a reduction in representation in such cases. It gave blacks federal and state citizenship.

94. **(C)** The right to vote was more widespread in the American colonies than in England because ownership of land was more open. The assemblies gained in power throughout the 1700s because they controlled the "purse strings." Royal governors had the power to summon or dismiss these assemblies, but the assemblies controlled the payment of the governor's salary.

95. **(B)** The Treaty of Ghent (1814) restored the antebellum status quo. Although the United States had attempted to take Canada, it had failed. Despite defeats in many battles and the burning of Washington, D.C., the U.S. was not defeated in the war. The Federalists, who opposed the war and were moving toward supporting secession of the Northeast, were seriously weakened when the war ended.

96. **(D)** Article I of the Constitution deals exclusively with Congress, the legislative branch of government. In this section of the Constitution, the powers and duties of Congress are carefully enumerated in detailed fashion. The most famous section of this article is Article I, Section 8, the "necessary and proper clause," which allows for a broad expanse of Congress' powers to make law. The powers of the presidency are covered in Article II, while those of the Supreme Court in Article III. Guarantees of freedom of speech and assembly are to be found in the first 10 amendments to the Constitution, the Bill of Rights.

97. **(D)** According to Article II, Section 2 (II, 2) of the United States Constitution, the Senate is granted the sole authority to ratify a treaty while the president, or any delegated representative he appoints, alone can negotiate treaties with a foreign nation. This division of power is part of the elaborate checks and balances established in our Constitution by the founding fathers in 1788. This principle is one of the key characteristics of a republican form of government. The system was utilized to prevent one branch of government from becoming too powerful and dictatorial. Neither the Supreme Court nor the House of Representatives was included in this process. In recent years, American presidents have utilized increasingly the device of "executive agreements" with foreign nations to bypass the requirement of Senate approval of treaties. In 1937, the Supreme Court ruled in *United States v. Belmont* that although executive agreements are approved only by the president, they enjoy the same legal status as treaties.

98. **(C)** In the election of 1824, the members of the electoral college were selected by popular vote for the first time. Despite the public's misconceptions, the American president is selected by the electoral college and not the popular vote. Prior to 1824 members of the electoral college were selected by some agency of state government and as a result, the American electorate had little direct say in presidential elections. Today, a candidate requires 270 out of 535 electoral votes to become president. Members of the electoral college are chosen on a state-by-state basis according to party affiliation with the candidate. Each state is granted the same number of electors as its membership in Congress. In a winner-take-all format, a vote for a presidential candidate really is a vote

for his party's state candidates to the electoral college and an indication to the electors from your state as to your candidate of choice. The November presidential election really is an election of the electoral college who meet in December to select the president.

99. **(B)** It is in the Declaration of Independence that Thomas Jefferson expressed the American devotion to these rights. The rights are considered "unalienable" in that they are afforded every human by birth and can be neither given away nor taken away. Jefferson adapted these three rights of life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness from the seventeenth century English philosopher John Locke, who listed the rights as life, liberty, and prosperity. Jefferson prudently left the task of applying the specific meaning of these rights for every future generation of Americans to determine for themselves. The U.S. Constitution adds to these rights in its first ten amendments or Bill of Rights. The Twenty-fifth Amendment deals only with the disability of a president, while the Supreme Court decision of 1896 in *Plessy v. Ferguson* established a doctrine of "separate but equal" and sanctioned de jure racial segregation.

100. **(D)** The only relationship established by the table is between cotton production and slave laborers. As a result, we do not know from the table if the South produced more wheat than cotton. Nor do we know if slavery was profitable as we do not see statistics on the cost of slaves and profits from the sale of cotton over time. We do not know from the table how many slaves were actually used to grow cotton and thus cannot judge labor efficiency. Finally, we do not know from the table where the cotton was exported. The only correlation that is revealed is that cotton production increases always were accompanied by increases in the number of slaves, thus directing one toward the conclusion that slavery grew along with the demand for increased cotton production.

101. **(D)** The original settlers of the Plymouth colony actually had purchased a tract of land in northern Virginia from the Virginia Company. They lost their course in crossing the Atlantic and upon arriving at Cape Cod decided to stay. The settlers feared that because they were occupying land not legally granted to them they would be forced to return to England. As a result, they drew up a contract among all the settlers called the Mayflower Compact to legally establish their existence. The Pilgrim settlers in Plymouth did not establish religious freedom as they only desired freedom for their religion and came to America to erect a religious utopia. In addition, Plymouth did not become part of Massachusetts until 1692 and indeed Puritans and Pilgrims had much dislike for each other and lived as separate, often hostile, colonies until 1692. Rhode Island was founded in 1644 by Roger Williams.

102. **(E)** In recent years, students of population analysis, demographers, have greatly revised the long accepted population estimates of James Mooney in 1925 for the Amerindian in pre-Colombian times. Mooney has estimated that less than 25 million Indians resided in the Americas around the year 1500. The main problem with Mooney's figures is that they were based primarily upon white European eyewitness accounts of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries. Today archaeological findings and sophisticated demographic analysis using the computer have established the Indian population of the Western Hemisphere at nearly 100 million prior to Columbus' arrival. It should be noted that the Indian population stood at its lowest ebb in America in 1886 when there were

less than 250,000 Amerindians. In the 1980 census, the Amerindian population had grown to 1.2 million.

103. **(E)** In his contract with the Spanish monarchy, Columbus established that he and his heirs would receive 40 percent of all wealth taken from the lands he was about to sail to; he would receive the title, Admiral of the Ocean Seas; and he would be named governor of any unchartered areas he came into contact with. Columbus' motives are clear from this contract as power, glory, and wealth. Few educated people in Europe believed that the Earth was flat and Columbus had no desire to serve as a missionary for Christianity. Columbus did not come to America as an explorer; he came as a colonizer, seeking wealth and power. Once he landed in the Americas in 1492, he had proven Ptolemy wrong; a fact little mentioned by Columbus during the remainder of his lifetime.

104. **(B)** The establishment of Jamestown in 1607 as the first permanent English settlement in North America came dangerously close to failure. England had already failed in its initial venture in the 1580s at Roanoke, Virginia. Upon the first arrival of the Jamestown settlers, they indicated they had learned little from Roanoke and repeated the myopic quest for gold and silver rather than plant and secure a food supply. As with Roanoke, during the first harsh winter more than half the settlers perished. Hostile Indians did not bode well for the colony either. It was the combination of the efforts of John Smith and the discovery of tobacco as a cash crop for export to Europe that made the colony able to be economically profitable. According to most historians, the Anglican faith played a minimal role in Virginia throughout the seventeenth century.

105. **(B)** Roger Williams was forced to flee Massachusetts because of his unorthodox religious beliefs. Although a Puritan minister, Williams warned the ministry in Massachusetts that they exerted too much political power and were being corrupted by their theocracy. He was to be put on trial for heresy when he fled to Rhode Island, not New Hampshire. Williams allowed complete religious toleration to all settlers. He died well before the Salem witch trials of 1692–1694. He never served as governor of Massachusetts.

106. **(E)** Recent historical research has indicated that indentured servants, popular myths to the contrary, remained for the most part in the lower sections of colonial society throughout their lives. The low social status was especially true in the Southern colonies throughout the colonial period. Indentured servants generally signed a contract with their masters, trading their labor for room and board, and the learning of a skilled craft for a set number of years (usually seven years). The servants were in many cases treated harshly by their masters and emerged from their servitude impoverished with few skills mastered. Although servants supported Bacon in his rebellion in Virginia, they never gained political power throughout the colonial period. Most servants were very hostile toward black slaves in the South and showed little sympathy for the slave's loss of legal status as a human, a condition never applied to the indentured servant. In sum, the indentured generally arrived in America on the edge of poverty and remained there for the bulk of their lives.

107. **(B)** Slavery as an institution grew very slowly in America, unlike in the British West Indies. Although the first American slaves arrived in 1619 in Jamestown, it was not until the 1790s that slavery as an institution grew substantially. Throughout the 1600s, most Southerners had yet to

determine if they would seek their labor pool through white servants or black slaves. The incident of Bacon's Rebellion convinced many Southern planters that slaves ultimately were easier to control. Few Americans imported their slaves directly from East Africa, preferring their slaves from this region to have been seasoned a few years in the British West Indies. Unlike North American slavery, the slave system in the West Indies was exceptionally brutal, often working slaves to death within seven years of purchase. The children of slaves were always born slaves in the American slave system.

108. **(C)** Upon taking the crown of England in 1686, James II sent Edmund Andros to Boston with a master plan to unite Massachusetts, New Hampshire, New York, New Jersey, and Connecticut into a single colony with Andros as its governor. James was seeking to administer the colonies more closely and hoped to unify the growing empire under this system of consolidation. Andros ruled in such a tyrannical fashion in Massachusetts that he caused an uprising known as the Glorious Revolution where he was imprisoned. A similar uprising took place a year later in 1690 and is known as Leisler's revolt. During this period, James was removed from the throne by Parliament in a separate affair also called the Glorious Revolution. In England, growing fears of James' Catholic leanings led the Protestant Parliament to granting the throne to William and Mary of the Netherlands. All other answers to this question simply are not relevant.

109. **(C)** William Penn established a frame of government that granted the bulk of power to the Penn family and their advisors. Only reluctantly, and after much difficulty with the settlers, did Penn allow them a small voice in government in the colony. Indeed, the term "democracy" was used as a pejorative term throughout the colonial and Revolutionary periods. For the most part, democracy was a nineteenth and twentieth century political development in America. Few colonials believed the people capable of self-rule without some elite guidance and most used the term synomously with "mobocracy." Penn did establish religious toleration under Quaker control in Pennsylvania and during his lifetime the colony enjoyed peaceful relations with the Indians. Penn always envisioned the colony as part of the British Empire and was adamant about making the colony a financial success, which was achieved.

110. **(C)** In 1763, William Pitt had led England to a great victory over France. As he entered the peace talks, Pitt was debating the French offer of all of Canada OR the West Indies sugar islands of Martinique and Guadaloupe as his fruits of victory. Although Pitt knew England was on the verge of bankruptcy and needed the revenue of the islands, he opted for Canada. This combination of a removed French menace from the North and a growing concern over the British national debt would ultimately prove two longterm causes of the American Revolution. France controlled neither Florida, Louisiana, nor the slave trade at the time of the peace.

111. **(C)** The primary purpose behind all of England's measures to raise a tax in America after 1763 was to reduce England's national debt. During the Seven Years' War with France, England was put on the verge of bankruptcy and could not tax its own subjects any higher. As a result, England turned to its colonies to raise the sorely needed revenue. The colonies had enjoyed the fruits of the empire and a policy of salutary neglect where they evaded taxes openly. The Stamp Act required all legal and published documents to bear a stamp issued from England with a

small fee attached. Unlike the mild and sporadic protests against the Sugar Act earlier, Americans responded to the new tax with determined and forceful protests, led by merchants, lawyers, and printers. England had already angered the colonists by refusing their settlement west of Pennsylvania in the Ohio Territory by the Proclamation Line Act of 1763 and allowed illegal searches through the Writs of Assistance in 1760. The Stamp Act was not designed to control the American press.

112. **(A)** The health of the American colonies in the eighteenth century was proven to most Americans by the evidence of their explosive population growth that doubled every generation. In the eighteenth century, a rapidly growing population was considered the ultimate sign of a healthy nation. Along with its rapid growth, the colonies were growing more diverse as a people. New arrivals to America from areas other than England (Germans, Scotch-Irish, and Africans) made the middle and Southern colonies more pluralistic. The African-American population now comprised about 20 percent of the total population, indicating the South's increased reliance upon slaves as a labor source. The five American cities in the eighteenth century held less than 10 percent of the total population but enjoyed a major role in colonial affairs. Life expectancies for men still remained at or about 70 years of age throughout the colonies.

113. **(B)** William Bradford was one of the earliest settlers in Plymouth colony and was a major political force among the Pilgrims into the 1620s. He earned great fame in America for his history of the Pilgrims, *Of Plimouth Plantation*. The Enlightenment as a movement had its genesis in 1686 with the publication of Sir Isaac Newton's *Principia*. Both Franklin and Jefferson were considered the leading American examples of the Enlightenment figure, as was John Locke in England. The Enlightenment placed great faith in a rational universe and natural laws. Its followers believed that through the use of human reason man could discover the laws of nature and achieve perfection through a rational ordering of life. The Enlightenment placed great faith in human progress and believed that a science of human affairs was possible.

114. **(E)** The Loyalists for the most part emigrated out of America. Many returned to England during the war rather than suffer political and economic persecution by the colonials. Some Loyalists founded new settlements during the Revolution and its aftermath in Canada and the West Indies. It is estimated that Loyalists comprised about 20% of the American population during the Revolution. For those who fled the country, England offered modest pensions. These pensions could not replace the loss of their confiscated property by the patriots, an issue of long standing difference between England and America after the Revolutionary War. There was no Loyalist settlement in the Ohio Territory.

115. **(C)** The Articles of Confederation existed as the government of the United States from 1781 through 1788 when it was replaced by the United States Constitution. The Articles existed as a unicameral legislature in which each state had one vote. It was granted no coercive powers over the states and cannot be considered a national government, as it could not act directly on citizens. Because it could not raise taxes directly, but could only request moneys from the states, the Articles had little control over the states' finances. It paid for the war through an

inflationary currency that at times was nearly worthless. After the war, the Articles proved unable to control interstate trade conflicts that led indirectly to the writing of the Constitution. The Bill of Rights was not ratified until 1791, two years after the Articles had expired. At best, it kept the 13 states from dividing through the use of a common enemy, England, during the war.

116. **(E)** In the immediate aftermath of the Revolutionary War in 1783, the British sought to do economically what they had been unsuccessful at militarily. British merchants indebted Americans heavily by extending credit and then in 1785 demanding full payment in gold. American merchants demanded full payment from yeoman farmers and would not accept barter payment as tender. The result was that by 1786, 35 percent of American farmers were in danger of losing their farms through mortgages. The farmers of western Massachusetts requested aid from the state government and when none came took matters into their own hands. The angry farmers closed down the courts to stop foreclosure proceedings against farmers. Massachusetts requested aid from the Articles but the central government was unable to assist Massachusetts. Massachusetts eventually put down the rebellion with a show of force and the rebels scattered. Shays' Rebellion shocked most conservatives in America into recognizing that the Articles were sorely in need of reform. A convention was called for the summer of 1787 to meet in Philadelphia. The 55 delegates to that convention produced the Constitution of the United States.

117. **(A)** Seventeenth century married and single women were denied the right to vote in colonial elections. According to seventeenth-century law, married women (*feme coverts*) did retain the authority to divorce their husbands by proving just cause (i.e., extreme physical cruelty, abandonment, impious behavior). Also, mothers were considered equal partners with fathers in following the New England practice of parental arrangements of marriage for their children as a means of socioeconomic mobility. Finally, women were allowed to own personal property while married, and in many cases land and businesses as well. The denial of political rights to women in colonial America was based on the belief that women were unable to know public affairs as they were restricted in their affairs to the private domain of the household.

118. **(D)** The Declaratory Act was largely ignored by Americans because of their rejoicing over the repeal of the hated Stamp Act of 1765. As its title indicates, the Declaratory Act simply stated that although the notorious Stamp Act had been repealed, Parliament still retained its sovereignty over the American colonies. As a result, the Declaratory Act did not add new taxes, resulted in the temporary "end" of American protests, and actually strengthened the position of the Tories who were loyal to British authority in America. The creation of America's first Continental Congress, as the creation of an extralegal form of government, was an extremely radical act and did not occur until 1774.

119. **(E)** Although Hamilton publicly advocated retirement of the bulk of America's wartime debt to restore faith, he desired to retain a portion of the debt to cement creditors closer to the national government out of their self-interest. As a result, Hamilton supported the notion of deficit spending as a means of attracting creditors to the national government. It was imperative to Hamilton that business interests be attracted to the

national and not state governments. As a result, Hamilton demanded that the new national government assume the war debt of each individual state. In order to pay this sum, he proposed the raising of a revenue through customs duties and excise taxes. To conclude his plan, Hamilton sought to create a national bank with business leaders and government officials in the controlling interest. By these means, Hamilton sought to achieve his goal of uniting business leaders to the new national government during the 1790s. His program was directly opposed by Jefferson and Madison.

120. **(E)** Political parties burst across the nation's political horizon in the 1790s. The existence of political parties had been denounced by the Revolutionary War generation as evil and opposed to the common good of the republic. As a result, political parties virtually were non-existent prior to 1790. However, with the emergence of the Hamiltonian economic program and the start of war between England and France, two viewpoints of the "common good" of America emerged: the Federalists who supported Hamilton, favored England over France, and desired a government dominated by an elite group of politicians; the Democratic-Republicans who supported a nation of small farmers rather than business class, supported Revolutionary France over England, and expressed deep faith in democracy. The two parties openly split over the arrival of the new French minister to the United States in 1793, Edmund "Citizen" Genet. Genet sought to use American public opinion to swing support to France rather than maintain the course of neutrality under Washington.

abolitionists people who were strongly opposed to slavery in the United States and believed that all slaves should be freed.

Adam–Onis Treaty the 1819 agreement under which the Spanish surrendered all their claims to the Florida territory and drew the boundary with Mexico all the way to the Pacific Ocean; the United States, in exchange, agreed to assume $5 million in debts owed to American merchants.

Adams, Charles Francis, Sr. President Lincoln's Ambassador to Great Britain during the Civil War who, along with Secretary of State William Seward, took a hard line in warning Europeans not to interfere; therefore, Britain remained neutral, and other European countries, France in particular, followed its lead.

Adams, John a Federalist and the second president of the United States.

Adams, John Quincy the candidate who ultimately won the 1824 election for president but was frustrated by the Jacksonian opposition at every turn, such as his push for active federal government in the areas of internal improvements and Indian affairs.

Administration of Justice Act one of the Coercive Acts, it provided that royal officials accused of crimes in Massachusetts could be tried elsewhere, where chances of acquittal might be greater.

Age of Jackson (also called *the age of the common man)* the period under President Andrew Jackson that marked a transformation in the political life of the United States characterized by an egalitarian spirit among the people.

Age of Reason Enlightenment thinker Thomas Paine's exposition of the rationalist posture that attacked traditional Christian values and was read widely in the United States during the post-revolutionary years.

Alien Act a 1798 law that raised new hurdles in the path of immigrants trying to obtain citizenship and was aimed at actual or potential Republican opposition to President John Adams's administration, with the result that a number of editors were actually jailed for printing critical editorials.

Amendments to the Constitution statements that guarantee certain individual rights and amend original dictates of the Constitution; the first ten amendments are known as the *Bill of Rights.*

American Colonization Society an organization founded in 1817 that established the colony of Liberia in 1830.

American Revolution (1763–1787) the war fought by American colonists to gain independence from Britain.

American Society for Promotion of Temperance a group organized in 1826 that advocated the abstinence of intoxicating liquors; it was strongly supported by Protestants, but just as strongly opposed by the new Catholic immigrants.

annexation treaty with Texas negotiated by President Tyler's new secretary of state, John C. Calhoun, an 1844 agreement by which the United States would make Texas a U.S. territory; rejected by the Senate because of

Calhoun's identification with extreme proslavery forces and his insertion of proslavery statements into the treaty.

antebellum culture American society in 1840, characterized by transition and instability, with responses being twofold—a movement toward reform and a rising desire for order and control.

Antifederalists those opposing the Constitution in the struggle over its ratification.

Appomattox the site in Virginia where General Robert E. Lee was cornered by General Ulysses S. Grant and forced to surrender in 1865; other Confederate armies still holding out in various parts of the South surrendered over the next few weeks.

Army Act an 1867 law passed by Congress that reduced the president's control over the army.

Arnold, Benedict a general who served brilliantly with the American army in the War of Independence, but then later joined the British and led their troops against the Americans.

Articles of Confederation a framework for a national government devised in 1776 by a committee appointed by the American Congress, which provided for a unicameral Congress in which each state would have one vote, essentially preserving the sovereignty of the states and creating a very weak national government.

Articles of the Constitution the Preamble, Article I—Legislature; Article II—Executive; Article III—Judiciary; Article IV—Interstate Relations; Article V—Amendment Process; Article VI—Supremacy Clause; and Article VII—Ratification.

assassination of President Lincoln before he learned the news of the surrenders, Lincoln was shot in the back of the head while watching a play in Ford's Theater in Washington by pro-Southern actor John Wilkes Booth.

Astor, John Jacob the first American millionaire, who made his money from the profits of the American Fur Company after establishing a fur post at the mouth of the Columbia River; he challenged the British claim to the northwest and lobbied Congress to pass trade restrictions against British furs.

Auburn, New York the site of the first of the new penitentiaries, built in 1821, whose purpose was not to just punish, but to rehabilitate.

Balboa, Vasco Nunez de a Spanish conquistador who, in 1513, crossed the Isthmus of Panama and became the first European to see the Pacific Ocean.

Bank of the United States the national bank that began in 1823 and operated under the direction of Nicholas Biddle, whose conservative economic policy enforced conservatism among the state and private banks and whose enemies questioned the bank's constitutionality; the bank became a lame-duck agency when President Andrew Jackson vetoed a 1932 bill to recharter it.

Barbary War an intermittent war that dragged on from 1801 until 1805 with no decisive settlement—except the gaining of U.S. free access to the Mediterranean; initiated by President Jefferson when he sent a naval force to the Mediterranean to break the North African Muslim rulers' practice of exacting tribute from Western merchant ships.

Battle of Long Island the 1776 defeat of General George Washington and his undertrained, underequipped, and badly outnumbered American army by British General William Howe and Admiral Richard Howe.

Battle of New Orleans an 1815 battle in which General Andrew Jackson decisively defeated the powerful British forces with an army of frontiersmen, blacks, creoles, and pirates.

Battle of Washington Heights a 1776 battle on Manhattan in which General George Washington was forced to retreat across New Jersey pursued by the aggressive British General Lord Cornwallis, a subordinate of General Howe.

Belknap, W.W. President Grant's Secretary of War, who accepted bribes from corrupt agents involved in his department's administration of Indian Affairs.

Bill of Rights ratified in 1791, the first ten amendments to the Constitution, with the first nine setting forth specific guarantees of personal freedoms, such as religion, speech, press, assembly, petition, and a speedy trial by one's peers, and the tenth reserving to the states all powers not specifically withheld from them or granted to the federal government.

Black Friday scandal a scheme by two unscrupulous businessmen, Jim Fiske and Jay Gould, to corner the gold market; they persuaded President Grant's brother-in-law to convince the president that stopping government gold sales would be good for farmers; Grant naively complied, and many businessmen were ruined as the price of gold was bid up furiously on "Black Friday."

Bleeding Kansas the name given by the press to a series of violent incidents in Kansas resulting from a virulently pro-slavery territorial government that was elected by widespread voting fraud (especially on the part of heavily armed Missourians who crossed into Kansas on election day to vote their proslavery principles early and often), and the response by Kansans of denouncing the proslavery government as illegitimate and forming their own free-soil government in an election that the proslavery faction boycotted.

Boone, Daniel a frontiersman who explored parts of the western trans-Appalachian frontier.

booster colleges the higher education products of religious sectarianism as well as local pride that sprang up in new communities as the population moved west.

Boston Massacre an incident, so named—even though the British soldiers involved had acted more or less in self-defense—and widely publicized by Samuel Adams, in which five Bostonians were killed as a result of friction between British soldiers and Boston citizens caused by the Townshend Acts.

Boston Port Act one of the Coercive Acts, which resulted in the closing of the port of Boston to all trade until local citizens would agree to pay for the lost tea (they would not).

Brer Rabbit tales oral literature that was an underground system of ridicule by slaves toward masters.

Bunker Hill the scene of what turned out to be the bloodiest battle (1775) of the War of Independence in which more than 1,000 British soldiers were

killed or wounded as they attempted—ultimately successfully—to remove the colonists from their Boston fortification.

Burr Conspiracy having lost the election for the governorship of New York with Alexander Hamilton leading the opposition and then challenging Hamilton to a duel, which resulted in Hamilton's death, Aaron Burr, then a fugitive, became involved in a scheme to take Mexico from Spain and establish a new nation in the West.

Cabot, John in 1497, sponsored by the king of England in search of a Northwest Passage, he became the first European since the Viking voyages more than four centuries earlier to reach the mainland of North America, which he claimed for England.

Calhoun, John C. a South Carolina Representative in the House, a South Carolina Senator, Vice President in the Adams administration, and Secretary of State in the Tyler administration.

California a former Spanish territory that essentially lost ties to any government after the Mexicans gained independence from Spain in 1821 and paid little attention to it; California experienced substantial immigration of Americans, especially in the 1830s and beyond; along with New Mexico and Mexico, its status in relation to American expansion and the issue of slavery became a source of concern by American politicians.

California Trail a branch from the Oregon Trail that turned southwest in the Rockies and crossed Nevada along the Humboldt River.

Carolina a proprietary colony including all land south of Virginia and north of Spanish Florida that the king of England granted in 1663 to eight loyal noblemen who planned for it an ultimately unworkable hierarchical—almost feudal—society.

carpetbaggers the Southern name for Northerners who came to the South to participate in Reconstruction governments.

Cartier, Jacques authorized by the king of France, he led three expeditions (1534–1542) to the area of the St. Lawrence River as far as Montreal, which he believed might be the Northwest Passage.

Cerro Gordo what has been called "the most important single battle of the [Mexican-American] war," in which General Winfield Scott soundly defeated a superior Mexican force in a seemingly impregnable position, after which he went on to win several more battles and enter Mexico City.

Charles River Bridge v. Warren Bridge an 1837 case whose decision was delivered by Andrew Jackson's new Chief Justice of the Supreme Court, Roger Taney, who ruled that a state could abrogate a grant of monopoly if that original grant had ceased to be in the best interests of the community.

chattel lifelong slaves whose status was inherited by their children.

Chesapeake colonies colonies that had less stable societies than those of New England, partly because of the large number of indentured servants, who were disproportionately men and had short lifespans as a result of mistreatment by their masters.

***Chesapeake–Leopard* Affair** the 1807 incident in which the British ship H.M.S. *Leopard* stopped the U.S.S. *Chesapeake* off the coast of Virginia, and four alleged British deserters were taken off the ship.

Christmas night 1776 the night on which General George Washington and his small army, which was melting away as demoralized soldiers deserted, boldly crossed the Delaware River and defeated the Hessians at Trenton.

Civil Disobedience an essay written by Henry David Thoreau, who was jailed for his refusal to pay his taxes in protest of the Mexican-American War.

Civil War, The the bloody conflict (1850–1860) between the North and the South.

Clay, Henry Speaker of the House of Representatives who formulated a package that both the House and the Senate could accept regarding the admission of Missouri as a state in the Union.

Coercive Acts the British Parliament's response to the 1773 incident in which Bostonians, who were thinly disguised as Indians, boarded British Royal Navy ships and threw the ships' cargo, tea, into Boston Harbor.

Common Sense a pamphlet written by Thomas Paine that called for the immediate independence of the American colonies.

Compromise of 1850 Henry Clay's eight-part proposal intended to lessen the ongoing friction between the North and South.

Compromise of 1877 an agreement whereby Rutherford Hayes promised to show consideration for Southern interests, end Reconstruction, and withdraw the remaining federal troops from the South in exchange for Democratic acquiescence in his election.

Concord the Massachusetts town in which General Thomas Gage led 700 British troops on a 1775 mission to find and destroy a reported stockpile of colonial arms and ammunition, sparking the Battles of Lexington and Concord, beginning the American War of Independence.

concurrent majority the concept that, according to John C. Calhoun in 1828, a federal law deemed harmful to the interests of an individual state could be declared null and void within that state; later, in 1836, Calhoun expanded this concept to extend to a dual presidency that would ensure that the South would be independent of Northern dominance and would forever keep majority rule at bay.

Confederate States of America the states that had seceded from the Union.

Connecticut a colony founded by Puritans who had slight religious disagreements with the leadership of Massachusetts.

conquistadores independent Spanish adventurers who led the powerful Spanish army to conquer the Americas for Spain.

Conscription Act an 1863 law that imposed a draft so that the Union could obtain adequate manpower for the huge armies that would be needed to defeat the South.

Constitution the document written at the Constitutional Convention in 1787 and ratified in 1788 that sets forth the framework of the government of the United States.

Constitutional convention a 1787 meeting in Philadelphia of representatives of states, including James Madison, Alexander Hamilton, Gouverneur Morris, Robert Morris, John Dickinson, and Benjamin Franklin, and presided over by George Washington, whose purpose was to address the inadequacy of the Articles of Confederation.

Continentals paper money bills printed by the American Congress to finance the War of Independence.

Copperheads Northerners who opposed the war and denounced Lincoln as a tyrant and would-be dictator.

Cornwallis, Lord Charles the British General who first served under General William Howe and later continued the Southern Campaign.

Coronado, Vasquez de a Spanish conquistador who led an expedition (1540–1542) from Mexico, north across the Rio Grande and through New Mexico, Arizona, Texas, Oklahoma, and Kansas; he and some of his men were the first Europeans to see the Grand Canyon.

corrupt bargain the rallying cry of supporters of Andrew Jackson after the election of 1824, in which Jackson won 43 percent of the popular vote, but the four-way split among the candidates meant that he received only 38 percent of the electoral votes; under the provisions of the Twelfth Amendment, the top three candidates were voted on by the House of Representatives—leaving candidate Henry Clay out of the running, and he threw his support to John Quincy Adams, who appointed Clay as Secretary of State almost immediately upon becoming the new president.

Cortes, Hernando a Spanish conquistador who, in 1519, led a dramatic expedition against the Aztecs of Mexico that destroyed the Aztec empire and won enormous riches for Spain.

Cotton Kingdom the lands in the Southwest, made up of Alabama, Mississippi, Louisiana, and Texas, that were ideal for the production of short-staple cotton.

crackers (also called *sandhillers)* in the second half of the nineteenth century, approximately a half-million white, underclass Southerners who lived on the edge of the agrarian economy in varying degrees of poverty—sometimes in squalor worse than slaves—and who occupied the barren soils of the red hills or sandy bottoms.

Credit Mobilier scandal a scheme in which officials of the Union Pacific Railroad used a dummy construction company called *Credit Mobilier* to skim off millions of dollars of the subsidies that the government was paying the Union Pacific for building the transcontinental railroad and bribe many members of Congress.

Crime Against Kansas, The a two-day speech made by Senator Charles Sumner of Massachusetts in which he not only denounced slavery, but also made degrading personal references to aged South Carolina Senator Andrew Butler, resulting in physical violence in the Senate.

Crime of '73 the name that supporters of inflation during the Panic of 1873 gave to Congress's demonetization of silver.

cult of domesticity a shift in family responsibilities in the 1860s in which the father was out of the home working, and the burden of childrearing fell more heavily on the mother.

cultural nationalism a feeling by Jeffersonians that their young republic represented the "final stage" of civilization, the "last great hope of mankind."

Currency Act of 1764 a law, pushed through the British Parliament by Prime Minister George Greenville, that forbade any colonial attempts to issue

currency not redeemable in gold or silver.

Davis, Jefferson the U.S. senator from Mississippi who was elected president of the Confederate States of America.

Dawes, William a dispatch rider who spread the news through the countryside of the movement of General Gage's troops on their way to destroy a reported stockpile of colonial arms and ammunition in Concord.

de Soto, Hernando a Spanish conquistador who led a 600-man expedition (1539–1541) through what is now the southeastern United States, penetrating as far west as Oklahoma and discovering the Mississippi River.

death trap a name given to Virginia because its indenture system was open to abuse, often resulting in the mistreatment of the indentured servants, and because of the harsh rule of its governors (appointed by the Virginia Company of London) who had dictatorial powers.

Declaration of Independence primarily the work of Thomas Jefferson of Virginia and formally adopted by the Second Continental Congress on July 4, 1776, a restatement of political ideas that were by then commonplace in America, explaining why the former colonists felt justified in separating from Great Britain.

Declaratory Act passed by the British Parliament in 1776 at the same time that it repealed the Stamp Act, a law that claimed power to tax or make laws for the Americans "in all cases whatsoever."

Delaware at first a part of Pennsylvania that was later granted by William Penn a separate legislature, but not a separate governor, until the American Revolution.

Democracy in America written by Alexis de Tocqueville (a French civil servant who traveled to the United States in the early 1830s to study the American prison system) and published in 1835, a book about his observations that broadly reflected the entire spectrum of the American democratic process and the society in which it had developed.

Department of the Navy an executive department created by Congress following the American uproar against the XYZ Affair and the perception that war with France was imminent.

Dominion of New England a plan by the king of England in 1686 to establish a unified government for all of New England, New York, and New Jersey.

doughface president a president who is a Northern man with Southern principles, President Franklin Pierce being the first.

Douglass, Frederick a former slave who had escaped from his Maryland owner, became a fiery orator for the abolitionist movement, and published his own newspaper, *The North Star.*

Drake, Francis an English sea captain who sailed around South America and raided Spanish settlements on the Pacific coast of Central America before continuing north to California, which he claimed for England.

Dred Scott v. Sandford a case that made its way in 1856 to the Supreme Court, which ruled, at the urging of President Buchanan, not only that Scott (a Missouri slave who had sued for his freedom after having lived for several years in the free state of Illinois and then in the free territory of Wisconsin)

had no standing to sue in federal court, but also that temporary residence in a free state, even for several years, did not make a slave free, and that neither Congress nor territorial governments had the authority to exclude slavery from any territory whatsoever.

Election of 1796 the second election for president and vice president of the United States, in which John Adams, the Federalist candidate, won the highest number of electoral votes, thereby becoming president; Thomas Jefferson, who ran under the opposition banner of the Republicans, received the second-highest number of electoral votes and thereby became vice president.

Election of 1800 the election in which Republicans Thomas Jefferson and Aaron Burr won handily against Federalists John Adams and Charles Pinckney; however, because both received the same number of electoral votes, the selection of the president was left up to the House of Representatives; after a lengthy deadlock, Alexander Hamilton threw his support to Jefferson, and Burr accepted the vice presidency.

Election of 1808 the election in which Republican James Madison won the election over Federalist Charles Pinckney, but the Federalists gained seats in both houses of the Congress.

Election of 1824 the first national election in which members of the Electoral College were now almost universally elected by the people, rather than by the state legislatures, as in the early days.

Election of 1828 a national election characterized by a dirty campaign in which Adams's supporters, calling themselves National Republicans, accused Jackson of adultery and the murder of several militiamen who had been executed for desertion during the War of 1812; Jackson's followers, then called the Democratic Republicans, in turn defamed Adams and his programs and accused him of extravagance with public funds; Jackson won 56 percent of the popular vote and swept 178 of the 261 electoral votes; John Calhoun was elected vice president.

Election of 1832 the national election in which President Jackson soundly defeated Henry Clay in the presidential race and considered his victory a mandate from the people to destroy the Bank of the United States.

Election of 1836 the national election in which Jackson's hand-picked Democratic successor, Martin Van Buren of New York, won, defeating three Whig Party candidates.

Election of 1840 an election with the largest voter turnout to date in which Whig candidate William Henry Harrison won a narrow popular victory, but swept 80 percent of the electoral vote.

Election of 1844 an election that involved the key issues of the annexation of Texas and Oregon, and slavery; the winner of the presidential race was Tennessee politician James K. Polk, who was a staunch Jacksonian and opposed protective tariffs and a national bank but, most importantly, favored territorial expansion, including not only annexation of Texas but also occupation of all the Oregon country.

Election of 1848 an election in which both parties sought to avoid as much as possible the hot issue of slavery in the territories; Whig candidate General Zachary Taylor, whose fame in the Mexican War made him a strong candidate, was elected president (although he knew nothing of politics, had

never voted, liked to think of himself as above politics, and took no position at all with respect to slavery in the territories).

Election of 1856 an election in which Democratic nominee James Buchanan of Pennsylvania won the presidency; his chief qualification for the nomination was that during the slavery squabbles he had been out of the country as American minister to Great Britain and, therefore, had not been forced to take public positions on controversial issues.

Election of 1860 the election in which Abraham Lincoln carried the North, led in popular votes, and, though he was short of a majority in that category, he did have the needed majority in electoral votes and was elected president.

Election of 1864 the election in which incumbent President Lincoln ran on the ticket of the National Union party (essentially the Republican Party with loyal or "war" Democrats) with vice-presidential candidate Andrew Johnson, a loyal Democrat from Tennessee; following the news that General Sherman had taken Atlanta, they won a resounding victory.

Election of 1868 an election in which the Republican convention, dominated by the Radicals, drew up a platform endorsing Radical Reconstruction and nominated Ulysses S. Grant (who had no political record and whose views —if any—on national issues were unknown) as their presidential candidate. Despite his enormous popularity as a war hero, Grant won the presidency by only a narrow margin.

Election of 1876 an election that was disputed when Democratic candidate Samuel Tilden won the popular vote and led Republican candidate Rutherford B. Hayes in the electoral vote 184 to 165; however, 185 electoral votes were needed for election; twenty votes from the three Southern states still occupied by federal troops and run by Republican governments, were disputed, resulting in a vote by a specially created commission of Congress to give all twenty disputed votes—and the election—to Hayes.

Electoral College an institution established as a check on the possible excesses of democracy, in which each state would have the same number of electors as it did senators and representatives combined; when first instituted, the person with the highest number of electoral votes would become president and the person with the second-highest number of votes would become vice president; it was later changed.

electric telegraph an invention of Samuel B. Morse that was first used in 1840 to transmit business news and information using a code of short and long signals transmitted over wires.

emancipation the freeing of slaves in the United States.

Emancipation Proclamation a declaration by President Lincoln freeing all slaves in areas still in rebellion as of January 1, 1863.

Embargo of 1807 Jefferson's response to the cry for war after the *Chesapeake–Leopard* Affair in which he drafted a law prohibiting American ships from leaving port for any foreign destination, thus avoiding contact with vessels of the European powers led by the British or by the French.

Emerson, Ralph Waldo a mid-nineteenth-century American essayist and lecturer who authored *Nature* and *Self-Reliance*.

encomiendas large manors or estates, developed by the Spanish as a system to deal with labor shortages in the Americas and as a reward to successful conquistadores, on which conquistadores ruthlessly managed Indian slaves.

Enlightenment embraced by some Americans, the British intellectual movement whose key concept was rationalism.

enumerated goods products from the American colonies that could be shipped only to England or to other American ports.

Era of Good Feelings the years following the War of 1812, in which the United States experienced rapid economic and social development as well as accelerated westward expansion.

Erie Canal the first canal in the United States, completed in 1825, that linked the Hudson River at Albany, New York, with Lake Erie.

Essex Junto the secessionist movement organized in 1804 by New England Federalists who saw the Western expansion as a threat to their position in the Union and who courted Aaron Burr's support by backing him in a bid for the governorship of New York.

executive departments specified not in the Constitution but by Congress, the first executive departments were the state, treasury, and war, in addition to the offices of attorney general and postmaster-general.

factory system begun in the United States in Boston in 1813, the mass production of goods based on the application of the principle of interchangeable parts.

Federalist era the period following ratification of the Constitution, in which the Federalist majority, which included many members of Congress who had served as delegates to the Constitutional Convention two years before, immediately set about to draft legislation that would fill in the gaps left by the Convention and to erect the structure of a strong central government.

Federalist Papers a series of eighty-five newspaper articles written by Alexander Hamilton, James Madison, and John Jay that brilliantly expounded the Constitution and demonstrated how it was designed to prevent the abuse of power from any direction.

Federalists those favoring the Constitution in the struggle over its ratification; after the formation of the U.S. government, members of one of two new political parties, led by Alexander Hamilton, who favored a strong central government and interpreted the Constitution as having vested extensive powers in the federal government.

Fifteenth Amendment prompted by the narrow victory of even such a strong candidate as Grant, the amendment to the Constitution, drawn up by Republican leaders for purposes of political expediency, that gave the right to vote to all black men, Northern as well as Southern.

First Battle of Bull Run (called First Manassas in the South) a battle in which the Union army was forced to retreat in confusion back to Washington and which demonstrated the unpreparedness and inexperience of both sides.

First Continental Congress the 1774 meeting in Philadelphia of representatives of the colonies who petitioned the British Parliament for

relief from the Coercive Acts and also passed the Suffolk Resolves, denouncing the Intolerable Acts.

Force Bill from Congress of 1833 in response to Calhoun's Ordinance of Nullification, a law obtained by President Jackson that empowered him to use federal troops to enforce the collection of taxes.

Fort Orange a Dutch fur-trading post established in 1624 at the site of present-day Albany by the Dutch West India Company.

Fort Sumter a federal fort in the harbor of Charleston, South Carolina, on which Confederate soldiers opened fire in 1861.

forty-niners miners who moved to California in 1849 in search of gold.

Fourteenth Amendment the 1866 amendment to the Constitution that defined citizenship and forbade states to deny various rights to citizens, reduced the representation in Congress of states that did not allow blacks to vote, forbade the paying of the Confederate debt, and made former Confederates ineligible to hold public office.

Franklin, Benjamin the most notable Enlightenment man in America, whose renown spread to Europe, due to both the wit and wisdom of his *Poor Richard's Almanac* and his scientific experiments.

free school crusade a movement, which had some momentum in the 1830s, to provide public schools, whose stated purpose was to instill in children the social values of thrift, order, discipline, and democracy.

Freedman's Bureau an agency created by Congress in 1865 to provide food, clothing, and education, and generally look after the interests of former slaves.

Frémont, John C. the Republican nominee for president in 1856 who was a former officer in the army's Corps of Topographical Engineers and was known as "the Pathfinder" because of his explorations in the Rockies and the Far West; he carried most of the Northern states and was narrowly defeated, thereby making clear that the Republicans, not the Know-Nothings, would replace the Whigs as the other major party, along with the Democrats.

French and Indian War known in Europe as the Seven Years' War, a conflict between Britain, along with American colonists, and France, along with Indian allies, that began with France's determination to take complete control of the Ohio Valley and western Pennsylvania.

Fugitive Slave Law under the provisions of this strengthened law, blacks living in the North and claimed by slave catchers were denied trial by jury and many of the other protections of due process; Northerners were enraged by the law and believed that it was little better than a legalization of kidnapping.

Fundamental Orders of Connecticut the first written constitution in America, drawn up in 1639, providing for representative government.

Gadsden Purchase the acquisition by President Pierce of a strip of land in what is now southern New Mexico and Arizona along the Gila River for the purpose of providing a good route for a transcontinental railroad across the southern part of the country.

gag rule a resolution that Southern members pushed through the U.S. House of Representatives in 1836 that forbade any discussion on the question of slavery on the floor of the House; the rule remained in effect until 1844.

gang system on large plantations growing cotton, sugar, or tobacco, the practice of white overseers directing black drivers, who in turn supervised large groups of workers in the fields, all performing the same operation.

Georgia a colony founded by British philanthropist trustees in 1732 that was intended to be both a buffer between South Carolina and Spanish-held Florida and a refuge for the poor who could not manage to make a living in Great Britain.

Gilbert, Sir Humphrey an English nobleman who obtained a charter in 1578 that allowed him to found a colony in North America with his own funds and guarantee prospective colonists all the rights of those born and residing in England, thus setting an important precedent for future colonial charters.

Grant, General Ulysses S. first, the overall commander of Union forces in the West, then commander of all Union armies, and then the president of the United States.

Great Awakening a series of religious revivals that occurred throughout the American colonies from the 1720s to the 1740s.

Great Compromise a plan facilitated by Benjamin Franklin that provided for a presidency, a Senate with all states represented equally (by two senators each), and a House of Representatives with representation according to population.

Great Migration the movement of about 20,000 Puritans from England to Massachusetts between 1629 and 1642.

Greenback Party a party formed by disgruntled proponents of inflation that ran a presidential candidate in the 1876 election.

greenbacks paper money not backed by gold.

Greene, Nathaniel General George Washington's most able subordinate, whose brilliant strategy led to a crushing victory over the British at Cowpens, South Carolina, and a near-victory at Guilford Court House, North Carolina, in 1781.

Grenville, George the strongly anti-American Prime Minister of Great Britain who took office in 1763 and set out to solve some of the empire's more pressing problems, including the large national debt and the cost of defending the American frontier.

guerrilla bands American militia that again gained control of areas in the South after the British army left and that were able to deal with those who had expressed loyalty to Britain in the presence of Cornwallis's army.

haciendas large manors or estates, developed by the Spanish as a similar but somewhat milder system than the *encomienda* system, to which Spaniards imported African slaves to supply their labor needs as the Indian population died from overwork and European diseases.

Half-Way Covenant a proposal by some Puritan clergymen in 1662 that provided a sort of half-way church membership for the children of members, even though those children, upon reaching adulthood, did not

profess saving grace as was normally required for Puritan church membership.

Harrison, William Henry an American general who destroyed Tecumseh's village on Tippecanoe Creek and dashed his hopes for an Indian confederacy; invaded Canada in 1813 and defeated a combination British and Indian forces at the Battle of the Thames; and in 1840, was elected the ninth president of the United States; he died a month after his inauguration, thereby serving the shortest term in presidential history.

Hartford Convention an 1814 meeting at which Federalists from the New England states met in Hartford, Connecticut, and drafted a set of resolutions suggesting nullification—and even secession—if their interests were not protected against the growing influence of the South and the West.

Henry, Patrick a member of the Virginia House of Burgesses who introduced seven resolutions denouncing the Stamp Act and denying Parliament's authority to tax the colonies, four of which were passed.

Hessians the name given by the colonists to troops from various German principalities that were hired by the British to supplement their own army.

Homestead Act an 1862 law that granted 160 acres of government land free of charge to any person who would farm it for at least five years; much of the West was eventually settled under the provisions of this act.

House of Burgesses the first representative assembly in North America, founded in 1619 in Virginia through the influence of reformers in the Virginia Company of London to attract more British settlers to Virginia.

house servants black slaves who were usually considered the most favored since they were spared the hardest physical labor and enjoyed the most intimate relationship with the owner's family.

Houston, Sam elected as president of the Republic of Texas in 1836 and the leader of the Texas troops who defeated Mexican dictator Santa Anna at San Jacinto that same year, forcing the Mexicans to let Texas go its own way.

Howe, Richard the brother of General William Howe and the British naval commander in the War of Independence.

Howe, William the general with top command of the British army during the War of Independence.

Hudson, Henry an Englishman who was sent by Holland in 1609 to explore North America in search of a Northwest Passage and who discovered the Hudson River.

Hudson River School a group of mid-nineteenth-century landscape painters, notably George Catlin and John James Audubon, who portrayed the awesomeness of nature in America.

Huguenots French Protestants who attempted to escape persecution in Catholic France by settling in the New World.

Hutchinson, Anne a dissident who openly taught things contrary to Puritan doctrine and was banished from the Massachusetts Bay Colony, whereupon, in 1638, she and her followers founded the settlement of Portsmouth near Narragansett Bay.

Impending Crisis in the South, The a book written by a North Carolinian named Hinton Rowan Helper in which he argued that slavery was

economically harmful to the South and that it enriched the large planter at the expense of the yeoman farmer.

implied-powers stance (also called *the broad interpretation)* the belief by Federalists that the federal government was given all powers that were not expressly denied to it.

indenture system the system of servitude by which the passages to North America of poor British people were paid by American planters (or by the Virginia Company of London) and who, in exchange, had to work for the planters (or the company) for a specified number of years.

Indian Removal Act an 1830 law passed by Congress and supported by President Jackson that provided for federal enforcement of the removal of all Indian tribes to the west of the Mississippi River.

individualism the belief in the importance of individuals, on which a movement of reform, beginning in the 1840s, was centered in the Northeast, especially in New England, and also in the South.

industrialization the rapid development of factories that produced various types of manufactured goods, begun in the United States.

inferior race black people, according to some Southerners who used biblical texts and scientific arguments to justify the enslavement of blacks.

Intolerable Acts the name given by American colonists to the Coercive Acts and the Quebec Act.

Irving, Washington (1783–1859) the best-known American writer of his time who excelled in telling folk tales and local color stories.

Ivy League schools colleges founded primarily for the purpose of training New-Light ministers.

Jackson, Andrew a general in the War of 1812, an unsuccessful presidential candidate in 1824, but elected as president in 1828 and popular with the common man, seeming to be the prototype of the self-made Westerner—rough-hewn, violent, vindictive, with few ideas but strong convictions; more than any president before him, he used his office to dominate his party and the government.

Jackson's Florida Invasion prompted by Indian troubles in the newly acquired areas of western Florida, the invasion by General Andrew Jackson, acting under dubious authority, of Spanish East Florida and the hanging of two British subjects whom he suspected of selling guns and supplies to the Indians.

Jamestown the first permanent English settlement in North America, named after the king of England.

Jay's Treaty with Britain the 1794 treaty negotiated by John Jay with the British that attempted to curtail Britain's seizure of American merchant ships and the forcing of their crews into service with the British navy, as well as to curtail English agitation of their Indian allies on the western borders.

Jay–Gardoqui Negotiations negotiations begun in 1774 between Congress's secretary of foreign affairs, John Jay, and Spanish minister Gardoqui for a treaty that would have granted lucrative commercial privileges to large east-coast merchants, in exchange for U.S. acceptance of Spain's closure of the

Mississippi River as an outlet for the agricultural goods of the rapidly growing settlements in Kentucky and Tennessee.

Jefferson, Thomas the author of the Declaration of Independence; later, an influential member of the Republican Party and the second vice president of the United States.

jeremiads sermons of Puritan ministers who strongly denounced the trend toward secular values.

Jim Crow laws laws that separated the races and restricted the lives of blacks by prejudice everywhere in the United States, even though, by 1850, 200,000 free blacks lived in the North and West.

John Brown's raid the 1859 seizure by John Brown and eighteen followers of the federal arsenal at Harpers Ferry, Virginia, where they took hostages and endeavored to incite a slave uprising.

joint resolution of 1845 President Tyler's successful measure to admit Texas as a state in the Union at the end of his presidency.

joint-stock companies groups of merchants that raised capital by the sale of shares of stock; such companies owned the early English colonies, with all members sharing the profits regardless of how much or how little they worked.

Jones, John Paul the most famous American naval leader during the War of Independence who captured ships and carried out audacious raids even along the coast of Britain itself.

Judiciary Act of 1789 a law that provided for a Supreme Court, with six justices, and invested it with the power to rule on the constitutional validity of state laws; a system of district courts was also established to serve as courts of original jurisdiction, and three courts of appeal were also provided for.

Judiciary Act of 1801 a law passed by the Federalist Congress that allowed President Adams, then at the end of his term, to fill the newly created vacancies with party supporters and also led to the appointment of John Marshall as Chief Justice of the U.S. Supreme Court, thus guaranteeing continuation of Federalist policies from the bench of the high court.

Kansas–Nebraska Act a law, first introduced as a bill in Congress in 1854 by Senator Stephen Douglas of Illinois, whose purpose was to organize the area west of Missouri and Iowa as the territories of Kansas and Nebraska and facilitate the building of a transcontinental railroad on a central route, something that would benefit him and his Illinois constituents; under pressure from Southern senators, Douglas was compelled to include in the bill an explicit repeal of the Missouri Compromise (which banned slavery in the areas in question) and a provision that the status of slavery in the newly organized territories be decided by popular sovereignty; the act aroused a storm of outrage in the North, where the repeal of the Missouri Compromise was seen as the breaking of a solemn agreement.

Kentucky admitted as a state in the Union in 1792.

Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions (aka Resolves) proposals to empower the state bodies to nullify federal laws within those states, which were drawn up by Thomas Jefferson and James Madison—who believed that the

Alien and Sedition Acts were unconstitutional—and then passed only by the Kentucky and Virginia legislatures.

King George's War called the *War of Jenkins' Ear* in Europe and later the *War of the Austrian Succession*, a conflict in 1739 between Britain, along with American troops, and France and Spain.

King Philip (Metacomet) a Wampanoag chief who led a war in 1675 to exterminate the whites in New England.

Kitchen Cabinet a group of partisan supporters who—instead of the appointed cabinet members—had the ear and the confidence of President Andrew Jackson.

Know-Nothing Party so-called because its members were told to answer "I know nothing" when asked about its secret proceedings; the party was anti-foreign and, since many of the foreigners were Catholic, also anti-Catholic; it surged briefly to become the country's second-largest party by 1855, but faded even more quickly because of the ineptness of its leaders and its failure to address the growing urgency of the slavery question.

Ku Klux Klan a group of Southerners who used violence to intimidate blacks and white Republicans out of voting for Reconstruction governments.

Land Ordinance of 1784 a law that provided for territorial government and an orderly system by which each territory could progress to full statehood.

Land Ordinance of 1785 a law that provided for the orderly surveying and distribution of land into townships six miles square, each composed of 36 one-square-mile (640 acre) sections, one of which was to be set aside for the support of education.

Lecompton Constitution a state constitution allowing slavery in Kansas that was drawn up in 1857 by the proslavery government in Kansas, through largely fraudulent means; Kansas voters, when given a chance to express themselves in a fair election, turned down the Lecompton constitution by an overwhelming margin, choosing to remain a territory rather than become a slave state, with Kansas finally being admitted as a free state in 1861.

Lee, General Robert E. overall commander of the Confederate army.

Lewis and Clark the two men (Meriwether Lewis and William Clark) authorized by President Jefferson to lead an expedition to explore the Western territory to the Pacific; with forty-eight men and a guide named Sacagawea (a Shoshone Indian woman), they left St. Louis in 1804, and returned two years later with a wealth of scientific and anthropological information, having strengthened the United States' claim to the Oregon territory.

Lexington the village in which seventy Minutemen awaited General Gage's troops on their way to destroy a reported stockpile of colonial arms and ammunition in Concord; the Minutemen did not lay down their arms at the command of a British officer, but, as they turned to disperse, a shot was fired, the British opened fire and killed eight Americans, most of whom were shot in the back, thereby beginning the War of Independence.

Liberal Republicans a faction of the Republican Party that favored hard money and a laissez-faire approach to economic issues.

Liberator a paper published by William Lloyd Garrison beginning in 1831 that advocated total and immediate emancipation of slaves, thus giving new life to the abolitionist movement.

Liberty Party the first national antislavery party, it fielded a presidential candidate in 1840 on the platform of "free soil," or non-expansion of slavery into the new Western territories, and again in 1844 on the platform of opposing the annexing of Texas based on fears that it would become another slave state.

Lincoln–Douglas debates in the 1858 Illinois senatorial race, debates between the incumbent Democratic senator and front-runner for the 1860 presidential nomination, Stephen A. Douglas, and a Springfield lawyer, little known outside the state, named Abraham Lincoln; despite Lincoln's failure to win the Senate seat, the debates were a major success for him.

Line of Demarcation at Spain's urging, the line that the pope, in 1493, established 100 leagues west and south of the Cape Verde Islands that divided all land into two equal parts—lands east of the line for Portugal and lands west of it for Spain.

literary nationalism despite American publishers' preference to print works from British authors or to import books from Europe, the efforts by a few Americans who were willing to pay the costs of publishing their own works and who found a growing number of readers.

Locke, John a major English political philosopher of the Enlightenment.

Louisbourg a powerful French fortress at the mouth of the St. Lawrence River.

Louisiana Purchase the transaction whereby Napoleon's offer to sell the entire French trans-Mississippi territory—including the port city of New Orleans—to the United States for $15 million, was accepted by President Jefferson's delegation in 1803, thus doubling the territory of the United States.

Lowell System a popular way to staff New England factories during the industrialization of the United States, by which young women who wanted to work for a limited amount of time were hired from the surrounding countryside, brought to mill towns, housed in dormitories, and paid low wages for hard work under poor conditions.

Loyalists American colonists who supported Great Britain and its rule of the colonies.

lyceums mid-nineteenth century popular gatherings at which the public gathered for cultural enrichment.

Macon's Bill No. 2 the 1810 law that replaced the Non-Intercourse Act and gave the president power to prohibit trade with any nation when it violated U.S. neutrality.

Madison, James "the father of the Constitution" and the fourth president of the United States.

Manifest Destiny the belief that the American nation was destined to eventually expand all the way to the Pacific Ocean, and to possibly embrace Canada and Mexico.

Marbury v. Madison an 1801 lawsuit brought by William Marbury, one of President Adams's "midnight appointments," against Secretary of State

James Madison to force delivery of his commission as a justice of the peace in the federal district, with Supreme Court Justice John Marshall refusing to rule on the request, claiming that the law giving the Supreme Court jurisdiction over such matters had exceeded the constitutional grant of powers and thus was unconstitutional.

Marshall Court the Supreme Court under Chief Justice John Marshall from 1801 to 1835, who delivered the majority opinions in a number of critical decisions that served to strengthen the power of the federal government and restrict the powers of state governments.

Marshall, John the Chief Justice of the U.S. Supreme Court and a Federalist, appointed early in 1801.

Maryland the first proprietary colony, granted in 1632 to George Calvert, Lord Baltimore, which was intended to be a refuge for English Catholics, of which Calvert was one.

Massachusetts Bay Colony the colony established in 1629 by a charter granted to the Puritans of the joint-stock company called the Massachusetts Bay Company and settled by the Puritans as a model of what a Christian society ought to be.

Massachusetts Circular Letter a document passed in 1768 by the Massachusetts legislature urging other colonial legislatures to pass petitions calling on the British Parliament to repeal the Townshend Acts.

Massachusetts Government Act one of the Coercive Acts, it greatly increased the power of Massachusetts' royal governor at the expense of the legislature.

Mayflower Compact the document by which the Pilgrims established a foundation for orderly government based on the consent of the governed.

mechanical reaper an invention of Cyrus McCormick, patented in 1834, that enabled a crew of six men to harvest in one day as much wheat as fifteen men could using older methods.

mercantilism the concept that every nation's goal should be to export more than it imported (a favorable balance of trade) and that economic activity should be regulated by the government.

Mexican Cession the land ceded to the United States by Mexico at the conclusion of the Mexican-American War.

Mexican-American War a conflict between the United States and Mexico that began in 1846 as a result of ongoing American interest in the far western lands then held by Mexico.

Minutemen colonial militiamen trained to respond at a moment's notice.

Missouri Compromise an agreement proposed by House Speaker Henry Clay in 1820 that broke the deadlock between the even number of slave-holding and free states about admitting Missouri—where slavery was well-established—as a state in the Union Maine was admitted as a free state at the same time that Missouri was admitted as a slave state, and slavery was prohibited in the remainder of the Louisiana Territory, north of the southern boundary of Missouri.

Monroe Doctrine a statement made by President Monroe in his annual message to Congress that the American hemisphere was "henceforth not to

be considered as subjects for future colonization by any European powers."

Monroe, James the last of the "Virginia Dynasty," the president who was handpicked by the retiring President Madison and elected in 1816 with only one electoral vote opposed, a symbol of national unity.

Mormon migration under the leadership of new church leader Brigham Young, the overland journey of some 85,000 Mormons in 1846 to settle near the Great Salt Lake in what is now Utah (but was then owned by Mexico).

Mormon Republic of Deseret the Mormon settlement founded in 1846 in Utah by Brigham Young.

Mormon War the incident caused by the series of events in which President James Buchanan decided (as a result of public outrage over the Mormons' polygamy) in 1857 to replace Brigham Young with a non-Mormon governor; threats of Mormon defiance led Buchanan to send 2,500 army troops to compel Mormon obedience to federal law; Young responded by calling out the Mormon militia and blocking the passes through which the army would have to advance, resulting in a standoff that was resolved in 1858, with the Mormons accepting the new governor and Buchanan issuing a general pardon.

Mormons members of a unique religion, called *The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints,* founded by Joseph Smith at Palmyra, New York, in the 1820s; the most successful group in the United States that established communal experiments in the mid-nineteenth century; they had a highly organized, centrally controlled system, which provided security and order for the faithful.

Morrill Land Grant Act an 1862 law that offered large amounts of the federal government's land to states that would establish "agricultural and mechanical" colleges.

mountain men adventurers who ventured into the Western frontier to trap beavers for their pelts.

Napoleonic Wars continuing conflicts in Europe between France under Napoleon and the European powers led by Britain in which both sides tried to prevent trade with their enemies by neutral powers, especially the United States.

Nat Turner's revolt the largest slave uprising in U.S. history, in which Nat Turner murdered his master and his family in Southampton County, Virginia, in 1831 and along with seventy-five followers, rampaged through the county and killed about sixty white people.

National Banking Act an 1863 law that facilitated the financing of the war through credit expansion.

National Road a road from Cumberland, Maryland, to Wheeling in what is now West Virginia, completed in 1818 and built with federal funds, that linked the Potomac and the Ohio Rivers.

nativist movement a movement based on alarm on the part of native-born Americans at the rising tide of German and Irish immigration during the late 1840s and early 1850s.

Nauvoo, Illinois the site on the banks of the Mississippi River where, in 1839, the Mormons built the largest city in the state, had their own militia,

and were a political force to be reckoned with.

Navigation Acts laws enacted by the British Parliament (in 1651, 1660, 1663, and 1673) to make the American colonies fit into its scheme of mercantilism; these laws also were the foundation of England's worldwide commercial system and some of the most important pieces of imperial legislation during the colonial period.

New Amsterdam a Dutch fur-trading post established in 1624 on Manhattan Island by the Dutch West India Company.

New England colonies that had stable, well-ordered, and well-educated societies and developed a prosperous economy based on small farming, home industry, fishing, and especially trade and a large shipbuilding industry.

New France following England's successful colonization of Virginia, France's renewed interest in and establishment of fur-trading posts and forts in areas of North America previously visited by French explorers, with the St. Lawrence River being the French gateway to the continent's interior.

New Hampshire a colony whose settlement in 1677 did not involve any disagreement at all among the Puritans but was simply settled as an overflow from Massachusetts.

New Jersey formerly part of the Dutch colony of New Netherlands, taken over by the British, and granted to two of the Carolina proprietors as a proprietary colony.

New Jersey Plan the plan by representatives of smaller states, who objected to the Virginia plan, for the continuation of a unicameral legislature with equal representation for the states as well as sharply increased powers for the national government.

New Lights those in the religious community who accepted the Great Awakening and sometimes suffered persecution because of their fervor.

New Mexico a former territory of Mexico, it became an American territory in 1846; along with Texas and California, its status in relation to American expansion and the issue of slavery became a source of concern by American politicians.

New Netherlands a Dutch colony, established in 1624 by the Dutch West India Company (a joint-stock company) that included fur-trading outposts on Manhattan Island (New Amsterdam) and at the site of present-day Albany (Fort Orange).

New York formerly New Amsterdam (part of the Dutch colony of New Netherlands), taken by force by the British.

New York City by 1830, the largest city in the United States and a primary trade center.

Newburgh Conspiracy the 1783 proposal made by some members of Congress in favor of a stronger national government that the army be used to force the states to surrender more power to the national government when they learned that army troops threatened mutiny because their pay was far in arrears.

Non-Intercourse Act a law passed by Congress in 1809 that opened trade to all nations except France and Britain.

North Carolina an area that developed as an overflow from Virginia with similar economic and cultural features.

Northwest Ordinance of 1787 a law that provided a bill of rights for settlers, forbade slavery north of the Ohio River, and provided for the creation of three to five territories that could be admitted as states to the Union when they reached sufficient populations.

Northwest Passage a water route to the Orient through or around the North American continent that European explorers hoped to find.

Old Lights those in the religious community who rejected the Great Awakening.

Olive Branch Petition a resolution adopted by the Second Continental Congress pleading with King George III to intercede with Parliament to restore peace.

Ordinance of Nullification following President Jackson's support of the higher rates of the new Tariff of 1832, the composition by Vice President John Calhoun, after his resignation of office (duly approved by a special convention) in which customs officials were ordered to stop collecting duties at the port of Charleston.

Oregon country the land between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific Ocean in the northwestern part of the present-day United States, which the United States and Britain had agreed to jointly occupy after the signing of the Adams–Onis Treaty of 1819.

Oregon Fever the movement in the 1840s of thousands of settlers across the Great Plains and the Rocky Mountains to settle in the Oregon country.

Oregon Trail a path that was a 2,000 mile, six-month journey from Independence, Missouri, across the plains along the Platte River, through the Rockies at South Pass, and down the Snake River; during the first half of the 1840s, about 6,000 Americans made this journey, with most of them settling in the Willamette Valley, south of the Columbia River.

Oregon Treaty the 1846 compromise between the United States and Britain, in which the then-current U.S.–Canada boundary east of the Rockies (49° N longitude) was extended westward to the Pacific, thus securing Puget Sound and shared use of the Strait of Juan de Fuca for the United States.

Ostend Manifesto the document sent by President Pierce's diplomats to him urging military seizure of Cuba should Spain remain intransigent in its refusal to sell Cuba to the United States.

Otis Warren, Mercy a revolutionary pamphleteer who published a multivolume *History of the Revolution* in 1805.

Panic of 1873 an economic depression brought on by the over-expansive tendencies of railroad builders and businessmen during the immediate post-war boom and triggered by economic downturns in Europe and, more immediately, by the failure of Jay Cooke and Company, a major American financial firm.

patroon system the Dutch system by which large landed estates were given to wealthy men who transported at least fifty families to New Netherlands; these families then became tenant farmers on the estate of the patron who had transported them.

peculiar institution black slavery, the necessary concomitant of the expanding Southern plantation system.

Penn, William the founder of Pennsylvania and the designer of the city of Philadelphia.

Pennsylvania a colony founded by William Penn in 1681 as a refuge for Quakers that quickly became prosperous, as Penn offered generous terms on land and guaranteed a representative assembly and full religious freedom.

Pennsylvania Dutch German immigrants who settled fairly close to the frontier in Pennsylvania.

Perry, Commodore Matthew lead a U.S. naval force into Tokyo Bay in 1853 on a peaceful mission to open Japan—previously closed to the outside world —to American diplomacy and commerce.

Perry, Oliver Hazard an admiral in the U.S. navy who, in 1813, defeated a British force at Put-In Bay and established control of Lake Erie.

personal liberty laws laws enacted by several Northern states in an attempt to prevent the working of the Fugitive Slave Law.

pet banks so named by President Jackson's critics, various state and local banks to which the federal government's deposits from the Bank of the United States were distributed after its charter expired in 1836.

Pilgrims Separatists who left England in 1620 on the *Mayflower* and established a quiet and prosperous colony in Cape Cod, Massachusetts.

Pinckney Treaty the treaty, ratified by the Senate in 1796, in which the Spanish opened the Mississippi River to American traffic, including the right of deposit in the port city of New Orleans, and recognized the 31st parallel as the northern boundary of Florida.

plantations vast areas of land owned by the elite families of the Chesapeake colonies; these included lavish manor houses from which the planters ruled their agricultural fields, indentured servants, and, later, black slaves.

planter class Southern owners of large farms who also owned fifty or more slaves.

Ponce de Leon, Juan a Spanish conquistador who, in 1513, explored Florida in search of gold and a fabled fountain of youth, neither of which he found, but he did claim Florida for Spain.

Portsmouth a settlement near Narragansett Bay founded by the dissident Puritan Anne Hutchinson in 1638.

power of judicial review over federal legislation first asserted by Supreme Court Justice John Marshall in *Marbury*

v. Madison, a power that has become the foundation of the Supreme Court's check on the other two branches of government.

Powhatan the powerful local Indian chief whose relations with the Jamestown colonists were at best uncertain and often openly hostile, with disastrous results for the colonists.

Preamble of the Constitution "We the People of the United States, in order to form a more perfect Union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquility,

provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America."

Preemption Act a law passed in 1841 that allowed settlers who had squatted on unsurveyed federal lands the first chance to buy the land (up to 160 acres) at low prices once it was put on the market.

Proclamation of 1763 an act by British Prime Minister George Grenville forbidding white settlement west of the crest of the Appalachians, in hopes of keeping the Indians happy and the settlers close to the coast and thus easier to control.

Proclamation of Neutrality President Washington's response to revolutionary France's war with the other European powers in 1792.

Prohibitory Act an act of the British Parliament, approved by the king (who ignored the Olive Branch Petition), declaring the colonies in rebellion and no longer under his protection, essentially declaring war on America.

property qualification for voting a restriction on the right to vote for non-property owners that had been eliminated by most Northern states and expanded the electorate before the election of 1824.

proprietary colony a colony granted by charter of the English monarch to a single individual or groups of individuals who actually owned the colony and was directly responsible for it to the English monarch.

Protective Tariff of 1816 the first protective tariff in U.S. history, it was passed to slow the flood of cheap British manufactured goods into the country.

Protestant Revivalism a powerful force for the improvement of U.S. society in the mid-nineteenth century that offered salvation to all; a strong sectarian spirit split the Protestant movement into many groups.

Providence a settlement near Narragansett Bay founded by the dissident Puritan preacher Roger Williams in 1636.

Puritans religious people who left England to settle in North America because of their belief that the Church of England needed to be reformed.

Quakers members of a religious sect who held many controversial beliefs, such as that all persons had an "inner light" that allowed them to commune directly with God; that human institutions were, for the most part, unnecessary; that the Bible was of little importance; and that they need not show customary deference to those who were considered to be their social superiors.

Quartering Act a law, pushed through the British Parliament by Prime Minister George Grenville, requiring the colonies in which British troops were stationed to pay for their maintenance.

Quebec a trading post, established in 1608 by Samuel de Champlain, from which the rest of what became New France eventually spread in Canada and through the Great Lakes region and the valleys of the Mississippi and Ohio Rivers.

Quebec Act an act passed by the British Parliament that extended the province of Quebec to the Ohio River, established Roman Catholicism as

Quebec's official religion, and set up for Quebec a government without a representative assembly.

Queen Anne's War (1702–1713) known in Europe as the *War of the Spanish Succession,* a conflict involving twelve years of sporadic British and American fighting against France and Spain.

Radical Republicans Republicans who believed that Lincoln's plan did not adequately punish the South, restructure Southern society, or boost the political prospects of the Republican Party.

Raleigh, Sir Walter continuing the efforts of Sir Humphrey Gilbert to colonize North America, he named Virginia for England's queen and chose Roanoke Island, just off the coast of North Carolina, as the site for the first English settlement.

rationalism the belief that human reason was adequate to solve all of mankind's problems and, correspondingly, much less faith was needed in the central role of God as an active force in the universe.

Reciprocity Treaty an 1854 agreement by which President Pierce succeeded in opening Canada to greater U.S. trade.

Reconstruction the rebuilding of the South after the Civil War.

redemption the goal of Southerners not allied with the Reconstruction governments to end those governments.

Report on Manufactures first Treasury Secretary Alexander Hamilton's proposal of an extensive program for federal stimulation of industrial development, through subsidies and tax incentives, with the money needed to fund these programs coming from an excise tax on distillers and from tariffs on imports.

Report on the Public Credit first Treasury Secretary Alexander Hamilton's proposal of the funding of the national debt at face value, federal assumption of state debts, and the establishment of a national bank.

Republicans members of one of the two political parties that emerged after the formation of the U.S. government who were led by Thomas Jefferson and James Madison and held the view (called the *strict interpretation)* that any action not specifically permitted in the Constitution was thereby prohibited.

Revere, Paul a dispatch rider who spread the news through the countryside of the movement of General Gage's troops on their way to destroy a reported stockpile of colonial arms and ammunition in Concord.

Review a newspaper published by James B.D. DeBow that advocated the commercial development and agricultural diversification of the South to lessen its dependency upon Northern bankers and businessmen.

Rhode Island the colony, which granted complete religious toleration, for which Roger Williams received a charter in 1644 to combine Providence, Portsmouth, and other settlements that had sprung up in the Narragansett Bay area.

rise of the railroads the rapid expansion of railroads in the United States, which rose from less than 3,000 miles of railroad track in 1840 America to more than 30,000 miles by 1860.

Roanoke Island an island just off the coast of North Carolina, in 1587, it became the first English settlement in North America but was found deserted by its leader, John White, when he returned in 1590 from England with supplies.

Rolfe, John a Virginia resident who, in 1612, discovered that a superior strain of tobacco, native to the West Indies, could be grown in Virginia, thereby giving Virginia a major cash crop, as there was a large market for this tobacco in Europe.

Romanticism the belief in the innate goodness of man and thus in the possibility of improvement that emphasized emotions and feelings over rationality, on which a movement of reform, beginning in the 1840s, was centered in the Northeast, especially in New England, and also in the South.

Rush-Bagot Treaty an 1817 agreement between Britain and the United States to stop maintaining armed fleets on the Great Lakes and the first "disarmament" agreement of the U.S., which is still in effect.

Salary Grab Act an 1873 law by which Congress voted a 100 percent pay raise for the president and a 50 percent increase for its members and made both retroactive two years back; public outrage led to a Democratic victory in the next congressional election, and the law was repealed.

Salem witch trials trials that were initiated by the claims of several young girls in Salem Village, Massachusetts, that they were tormented by the occult activities of certain of their neighbors and that resulted in the execution of about twenty people.

Sanborn Contract fraud a scheme by a politician named Sanborn, who was given a contract to collect $427,000 in unpaid taxes for a 50 percent commission, which found its way into Republican campaign funds.

Santa Anna, Antonio López de the dictator of Mexico who, in response to Texas's proclamation of independence from Mexico, advanced northward and annihilated the Texan garrisons at the Alamo and at Goliad.

Santa Fe Trail a path from New Mexico northeast to Independence, Missouri, that became an active trading corridor, opening up the Spanish territories to American migration and influence, and also providing the basis for future territorial claims; it created a prosperous trade in mules, gold and silver, and furs, which moved north in exchange for manufactured goods that went south, with American settlements springing up all along the route.

Saratoga the site of the 1777 defeat of the British by American forces, under the command of General Benedict Arnold, which convinced the French to join openly in the war against England.

scalawags the Southern name for Southerners who supported the Reconstruction regimes.

Scott, General Winfield the commander of U.S. forces who was ordered by President Polk to march into Mexico and take Mexico City.

secession crisis the 1860 vote of a special convention made up of delegates elected by the people of South Carolina that declared South Carolina out of the Union.

Second Continental Congress the 1775 meeting in Philadelphia of representatives of the colonies who adopted the New England army around

Boston, calling on the other colonies to send troops and sending George Washington to command it, adopted a "Declaration of the Causes and Necessity for Taking up Arms," and adopted the Olive Branch Petition.

Second Great Awakening in reaction to the trend toward rationalism, the decline in church membership, and the lack of piety, the renewal of personal, heartfelt evangelicalism that began in 1801 at Cane Ridge, Kentucky, and whose social overtones would go on to spark the great reform movements of the 1830s and 1840s.

Secret Six several prominent Northern abolitionists who supported and bankrolled John Brown and his plans to incite a slave uprising across the South.

Sedition Act a 1798 law that widened the powers of President John Adams's administration to muzzle its newspaper critics and was aimed at actual or potential Republican opposition, with the result that a number of editors were actually jailed for printing critical editorials.

Seneca Falls, New York the site of the 1848 meeting and its "Declaration of Sentiments and Resolutions," that began the modern feminist movement in the United States, with the Grimke sisters, Elizabeth Cady Stanton, and Harriet Beecher Stowe being activists in these early days.

Separatists religious people who fled England first to Holland and then settled in North America because of their belief that the Church of England was beyond saving and that they must separate from it; they became known as the Pilgrims.

Seward, William President Lincoln's Secretary of State, who, along with Ambassador to Great Britain Charles Francis Adams, took a hard line in warning Europeans not to interfere; therefore, Britain remained neutral, and other European countries, France in particular, followed its lead.

Seward's Folly so called by its critics, the 1867 purchase advocated by Secretary of State William Seward of Alaska from Russia for $7,200,000.

Shays' Rebellion during economic hard times in 1776 coupled with high taxes intended to pay off the state's war debt, the revolt in which desperate western-Massachusetts farmers, led by war veteran Daniel Shays, shut down courts to prevent judges from seizing property or condemning people to debtors' prison for failing to pay their taxes.

Sherman, General William the union general best known for his 1864 march through Georgia from Atlanta to the sea, arriving at Savannah and turning north into the Carolinas, leaving behind a sixty-mile-wide swath of destruction.

slave codes comprehensive restrictions on slaves' individual freedom that were unevenly applied, resulting in considerable variety in the severity of slaves' lives.

Slater, Samuel an immigrant from Britain who, in 1790, built the first successful cotton-spinning mill in the United States.

Slidell, John an ambassador sent by President Polk to Mexico City with a proposal for a peaceful settlement of the differences between the two countries; Slidell was empowered to pay $5,000,000 for disputed land in southern Texas, $25,000,000 for California, and $5,000,000 for other Mexican territory in the far West.

Smith, Jedediah an explorer who mapped the vast territory that stretched from the Rockies to the Sierra Nevada range and on into California.

Smith, John the ruthless leader of the Jamestown colony who kept it from collapsing in 1608 and 1609 through enforcement of his rule, "He who works not, eats not."

Sons of Liberty an organization formed by James Otis and Samuel Adams in Massachusetts to resist the Stamp Act.

South Carolina an area settled by planters from the island of Barbados who founded Charleston in 1670 and brought with them their black slaves; thus, unlike the Chesapeake colonies of Virginia and Maryland, South Carolina had slavery as a fully developed institution from the outset.

"South Carolina Exposition and Protest" an article published anonymously in 1828 by President Adams's vice president John C. Calhoun that outlined his theory of the concurrent majority.

Southern Campaign following defeats in New England by the colonists and with fewer troops available in America, the British changed strategy to focus on the South and to depend more on Loyalists, whom they believed existed in greater numbers in the South.

Southern Conscription Act an 1863 law that imposed a draft in Confederate states.

Specie Circular an order issued by President Jackson in 1836, intended to slow the inflation of that time, that required payment for public lands in hard money—no more paper or credit.

Specie Resumption Act an 1875 law that called for the resumption of specie payments (i.e., the redeemability of the nation's paper money in gold) by January 1, 1879.

St. Augustine the oldest European settlement in the United States and a fort built by the Spanish in 1565 in Florida to prevent encroachment (especially by the French) on what they considered to be their exclusive holdings in America.

Stamp Act a 1765 law, pushed through the British Parliament by Prime Minister George Greenville, imposing a direct tax on Americans for the first time and requiring Americans to purchase revenue stamps on everything from newspapers to legal documents, which would have created an impossible drain on hard currency in the colonies.

Stamp Act Congress the 1765 meeting of delegates from nine colonies in which moderate resolutions against the Stamp Act were passed, asserting that Americans could not be taxed without their consent, given by their representatives.

"Star Spangled Banner" the song by Francis Scott Key that was inspired by Fort McHenry's holding firm throughout British bombardment, after the British had sacked and burned Washington, D.C.

state constitutions documents that governed the formation of American state governments after the collapse of British authority in 1775.

steamboats built by Robert Fulton in 1807 and 1811, innovations that transformed river transport in the United States, causing shipment times

and freight rates to plummet and establishing regular steamboat service on all the major river systems.

steel plow an invention of John Deere, patented in 1837, that was a durable tool to break heavy prairie sod.

strengthened Quartering Act one of the Coercive Acts, it allowed the new governor of Massachusetts, General Thomas Gage, to quarter his troops anywhere, including unoccupied private homes.

Suffolk Resolves acts passed by the First Continental Congress in 1774 denouncing the Intolerable Acts.

Sugar Act (also known as the *Revenue Act)* a 1764 law, pushed through the British Parliament by Prime Minister George Greenville, aimed at raising revenue by taxes on goods imported by the Americans.

Surrender of Fort Sumter under fire from Confederates, the fort surrendered within a day, after which President Lincoln declared the existence of an insurrection and called for the states to provide 75,000 volunteers to put it down; in response, Virginia, Tennessee, North Carolina, and Arkansas declared their secession.

Sutter's Mill the site at which gold was discovered in 1848, resulting in the flow of gold-seekers the following year, thus increasing California's population from 14,000 to 100,000.

Tariff of Abominations a bill passed by Congress in 1828 that was so named by bitter Southerners because it originally was supported by Southern congressmen so as to embarrass the Adams administration, but in its final form, it included higher import duties for many goods that were bought by Southern planters.

Taylor, General Zachary (nicknamed "Old Rough and Ready") the commander of American forces that took up a position in the territory disputed by Mexico and the United States, in southern Texas.

Tea Act of 1773 a law passed by the British Parliament granting the British East India Company concessions, allowing it to ship tea directly to the colonies rather than only by way of Britain.

Tecumseh the Shawnee chief who set out with a sizeable force of warriors to unite the Mississippi Valley tribes and reestablish Indian dominance in the Old Northwest.

Ten Percent Plan part of President Lincoln's plan for Reconstruction; included the stipulation that Southerners, except for high-ranking rebel officials, could take an oath promising future loyalty to the Union and acceptance of the end of slavery; when the number of those who had taken this oath within any one state reached 10 percent of the number who had been registered to vote in that state in 1860, a loyal state government could be formed.

Tennessee admitted as a state in the Union in 1796.

Tenure of Office Act an 1867 law forbidding President Andrew Johnson to dismiss cabinet members without the Senate's permission, which Johnson violated that same year, with the result that he was impeached by the House of Representatives and came within one vote of being removed by the Senate.

Texas a state that became part of the Republic of Mexico in 1822; by 1835, it had been settled by approximately 35,000 Americans, and in 1836, it proclaimed independence from Mexico and declared itself a republic; along with New Mexico and California, its status in relation to American expansion and the issue of slavery became an ongoing source of concern to American politicians.

Thirteenth Amendment the 1865 amendment to the Constitution that officially abolished slavery.

Thoreau, Henry David a mid-nineteenth-century American writer best known for *Walden*, which repudiated the repression of society and preached civil disobedience to protest unjust laws.

Three-Fifths Compromise a plan that reconciled the North–South disagreement over the issue of slavery by having the Constitution neither endorse nor condemn slavery and by counting each slave as three-fifths of a person for purposes of apportioning representation and direct taxation on the states.

three-pronged attack the U.S. strategy in the Mexican-American War that involved a land movement westward through New Mexico into California, a sea movement against California, and a land movement southward into Mexico; despite the success of all three parts of this strategy, Mexico refused to negotiate.

threshing machine an invention of Jerome Case in 1842 that multiplied the bushels of grain that could be separated from the stalk in a day's time.

Townshend Acts laws by the British Parliament in 1766 that included taxes on items imported into the American colonies and the use of admiralty courts to try those accused of violations, the use of writs of assistance, and the paying of customs officials from the fines they levied; repealed in 1780, except for taxes on tea.

Townshend Duties taxes imposed by the British Parliament in 1776 on items imported into the American colonies.

Trail of Tears resulting from President Jackson's policies, the forced march, under U.S. Army escort, of thousands of Cherokees to the West, during which a quarter or more of the Indians, mostly women and children, perished.

Transcendentalism a branch of European Romanticism whose advocates wanted to transcend the bounds of the intellect and strive for emotional understanding, to attain unity with God, without the help of the institutional church, which they saw as reactionary and stifling to self-expression; in the United States, the movement began in Concord, Massachusetts, in the mid-nineteenth century.

Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle the 1748 agreement in which the British gave Louisbourg, which had been captured by an all-New-England army in 1745, back to France in exchange for lands in India.

Treaty of Ghent the 1814 agreement that ended the European wars and provided for the acceptance of the status quo at the beginning of hostilities; thus, both sides restored their wartime conquests to the other.

Treaty of Greenville an agreement that cleared the Ohio territory of Indian tribes after General Anthony Wayne decisively defeated the Indians at the

Battle of Fallen Timbers in 1794.

Treaty of Guadalupe–Hidalgo the 1848 agreement that ended the Mexican-American War whereby Mexico ceded to the United States the territory that Polk had originally sought to buy, called the *Mexican Cession*, which included the natural harbors at San Francisco and San Diego, thus giving the United States all three of the major west-coast natural harbors.

Treaty of Paris of 1763 the agreement that officially ended hostilities in the French and Indian War by which Britain gained all of Canada and all of what is now the United States east of the Mississippi River, with France losing all of its North American holdings.

Treaty of Paris of 1783 the final agreement to the War of Independence, in which, among other terms, the United States was recognized as an independent nation by the major European powers, including Britain.

Treaty of Tordesillas the 1494 treaty between Spain and Portugal by which the Line of Demarcation was moved farther west, resulting in Brazil eventually becoming a Portuguese colony, while Spain maintained claims to the rest of the Americas.

Treaty of Utrecht the agreement that ended Queen Anne's War and whose terms gave Britain major territorial gains and trade advantages.

Troy Female Seminary the first state-supported school for women, founded in 1839 in Troy, New York.

Tubman, Harriet a member of the underground railroad who led over 300 members of her family and friends to freedom after she herself had escaped.

Turner, Nat an educated slave and minister who led a bloody slave uprising in 1831; after being captured, he confessed, was tried and executed.

turnpikes a network of privately-owned toll roads that began around 1818 and reached out from every sizeable city in the United States.

Twelfth Amendment adopted and ratified in 1804, a plan ensuring that a tie vote between candidates of the same party could not again cause the confusion of the Jefferson–Burr affair.

Tyler, John the vice president under William Henry Harrison who became president when Harrison died after serving just one month of his term; he was a states' rights Southerner and a strict constitutionalist who had been placed on the Whig ticket to draw Southern votes; upon becoming president, Tyler rejected the entire Whig program of a national bank, high protective tariff s, and federally funded internal improvements.

Uncle Tom's Cabin a fictional book written by Harriet Beecher Stowe depicting what she perceived as the evils of slavery; furiously denounced in the South, the book became an overnight bestseller in the North, where it turned many toward active opposition to slavery.

underground railroad a loosely organized system to help fugitive slaves flee from their masters in the South to freedom in the North.

Union League an organization used by Southern Republicans to control the black vote; by the following year, six more states (Alabama, Georgia, Florida, Mississippi, Louisiana, and Texas) had followed suit.

unions groups of workers organized to fight for benefits, an early example of which occurred in 1835 when Boston construction craftsmen struck for seven months to win a ten-hour workday.

unstable pluralism a term used by historians to describe the population of New Netherlands, which was a mixture of people from all over Europe, as well as many African slaves.

urban slaves black slaves who worked in Southern towns, serving as factory hands, domestics, artisans, and construction workers and who lived fairly independent lives.

Utopians people who established cooperative communities in the mid-nineteenth century in an attempt to improve the life of the common man in the face of increasing impersonal industrialism in the United States.

vagabond profession the name given to the popular theater in the mid-nineteenth-century by churches and conservatives who condemned it.

Valley Forge the site of the 1778 defeat of the British by American forces.

Van Buren, Martin (known as *Old Kinderhook)* the president elected in 1836 whose main accomplishment was to eventually persuade Congress to establish an Independent Treasury to handle government funds, which began functioning in 1840.

Vermont admitted as a state in the Union in 1791.

Virginia Company of London an English joint-stock company that, having gained a charter to colonize in North America from the king of England, sent an expedition in 1607 to settle in Jamestown, Virginia, which became the first permanent English settlement in North America.

Virginia Company of Plymouth an English joint-stock company that, having gained a charter to colonize in North America from the king of England, sent an unsuccessful expedition in 1607 to settle in Maine.

Virginia Plan a plan devised by James Madison and introduced by fellow Virginian Edmund Randolf that called for an executive branch and two houses of Congress, each based on population.

vulcanizing rubber a process invented by Charles Goodyear in 1843 that was put to 500 different uses and formed the basis for an entire new industry.

Wade–Davis Bill introduced by Radical Republicans in Congress, a bill under whose stringent terms a majority of the number of people in Southern states who had been alive and registered to vote in 1860 would have to swear an "ironclad" oath stating that they were now loyal and had never been disloyal; President Lincoln killed the bill with a pocket veto.

Walker Tariff an 1846 law supported by President Polk that established a low, revenue-only tariff rather than a high, protective tariff.

War Hawks a strong pro-war group, led by Henry Clay and John C. Calhoun, that gained control of both houses of Congress and successfully agitated for war with the British, resulting in a declaration of war approved by Congress and President Madison in 1812.

War of 1812 a conflict between the United States and Britain, along with its colonists in Canada and Indian allies.

Washington, George first, the commander of the New England army, then the commander of the American army, and later, in 1789, the first president of the United States.

Webster, Daniel a Massachusetts representative in the House from 1822 to 1826, a Massachusetts senator from 1827 to 1841, and Secretary of State under Presidents William Henry Harrison and John Tyler until he resigned this last post after negotiating the Webster–Ashburton Treaty.

Webster, Noah the writer of *Blue Backed Speller,* and a dictionary of the "American" language, which reflected the intense desire to promote American patriotism and a feeling of national identity during the post-revolutionary years.

Webster–Ashburton Treaty the 1842 agreement between the United States and Britain, negotiated by Secretary of State Daniel Webster, that resolved several sources of tension between the two nations and established a relationship of mutual compromise.

Webster–Hayne debate the 1830 argument in which Senator Robert Hayne of South Carolina supported lands in the West being made cheaply available to the masses; Senator Daniel Webster, took the side of Northeasterners who opposed this policy because it would lure away their labor supply and drive up wages, moved the debate from the issue of land policy to the nature of the Union's rights as indissoluble and sovereign over the individual states.

Weems, Parson Mason the writer of the best seller *Life of Washington* in 1806, which was short on historical accuracy but long on nationalistic hero worship.

Whig Party the party that emerged from the ruins of the National Republicans and other groups who opposed President Jackson's policies.

Whiskey Rebellion the terrorization of collectors of federal excise taxes on whiskey by a group of Pennsylvania farmers, in response to which President Washington sent a federal militia force of some 15,000 men, and the rebellion evaporated.

Whiskey Ring fraud a scheme in which distillers and treasury officials conspired to defraud the government of large amounts of money from the excise tax on whiskey; President Grant's personal secretary was in on the plot, and Grant himself naively accepted gifts of a questionable nature.

Whitney, Eli an American inventor who, in 1798, developed and applied the principle of interchangeable parts, first used in his firearms factories; best known for the invention of the cotton gin.

Wilderness Road a path made by Daniel Boone in 1775 through the Cumberland Gap and on to the Bluegrass region of Kentucky.

Williams, Roger a Puritan preacher but a dissident whose activities were thought by the Puritans to be so disruptive that they asked him to leave the Massachusetts Bay Colony, whereupon in 1636 he founded the settlement of Providence near Narragansett Bay, which was soon populated by his many followers.

Wilmot Proviso a proposed amendment to a war appropriations bill stipulating that "neither slavery nor involuntary servitude shall ever exist" in any territory to be acquired from Mexico; the proposal was passed by the

House, and though rejected by the Senate, it was reintroduced again and again amid increasingly acrimonious debate.

Worcester v. Georgia a case in which the U.S. Supreme Court supported the claim of the Cherokee Nation (which occupied northern Georgia) that it was a sovereign political entity within the boundaries of that state, with President Jackson refusing to enforce the court's decision.

Writs of Assistance general search warrants issued to help British royal officials stop the colonists' evasion of Britain's mercantilist trade restrictions.

XYZ Affair the 1798 incident in which a three-man delegation from the United States that had been sent to France to persuade the French to stop harassing American shipping were solicited for—and indignantly refused—a bribe by three unnamed subordinates of the French Minister Talleyrand.

yeoman farmers in the second half of the nineteenth century, the largest group of Southern whites, who were independent small farmers working their land with their family, sometimes side-by-side with one or two slaves, to produce their own food, with sometimes enough surplus to sell for a little extra cash.

Yorktown the site in Virginia at which General George Washington, with the help of French army and naval forces, trapped British General Cornwallis and forced him to surrender in 1781.

Young America after being elected in 1852, President Franklin Pierce's aggressive program of foreign economic and territorial expansion, which he pursued in part to express the nation's hope that a new era of sectional peace was beginning and to distract the nation's attention from the slavery issue.

Young, Brigham the founder of the Mormon republic of Deseret who openly preached and practiced polygamy; he was made territorial governor of Utah after Deseret's annexation by the United States as part of the Mexican Cession.

A

abolitionist movement, 104, 116, 127
abortion, 105–106
Act of Religious Toleration, 25
Adams, Charles Francis, 153
Adams, John, 51, 58, 65
  1800 election, 71
  administration of, 69–70
Adams, John Quincy, 91
  administration of, 91–92
Adams, Samuel, 39, 42
Adams-Onis Treaty, 79, 117
Administration of Justice Act, 43
African Americans. *See* black Americans
African indentured servants, 20
African slaves. *See also* slavery/slaves
  importation of, ending of, 73
  New Netherlands, 22
  New Spain, 15
age of exploration, 14–18
  English and French beginnings, 16–17
  Gilbert, Raleigh, and Roanoke settlers, 17–18
  New Spain, 15
  Spanish conquistadores, 14–15
  Treaty of Tordesillas, 14
Age of Reason, The (Paine), 89
agriculture
  1789–1824, 83
  cotton cultivation, 83, 110, 136
  inventions and technology, 109
  market economy and, 109
  mid-nineteenth century, 135–136
  in the Midwest, 136
  plantation system, opposition to, 114–115
  revolution in, 108
  in South, 135–136
Alabama, secession of, 146
Alaska, purchase of, 162–163
Algiers, 78
Alien Act, 70, 72
Allen, Ethan, 46
Amana Community, 101
amendment process, U.S. Constitution, 60
amendments, U.S. Constitution, 61–62
American Anti-slavery Society, 104
American artists, 100
American authors, 88
  of the North, 99
  of the South, 100
  transcendentalist movement, 101
American Colonization Society, 104
American Fur Company, 117
American history American Revolution, 38–55
  Civil War and Reconstruction, 148–170
  colonial period, 14–37

the United States, 1789–1824, 65–89
the United States, 1824–1850, 90–129
the United States, 1850–1860, 130–147
U.S. Constitution, 56–64
American Revolution
beginnings of, 38–44
creation of new governments, 52–55
war for independence, 44–52. *See also* Revolutionary War
American Revolution, beginnings of
Grenville and the Stamp Act, 38–40
Intolerable Acts, 43–44
relative peace, return of, 42
Tea Act, 43
Townshend Acts, 40–42
Writs of Assistance, 38
American Revolution, government creation
Articles of Confederation, 53
Jay-Gardoqui negotiations, 54–55
Shays' Rebellion, 55
state constitutions, 52
trans-Appalachian West and the Northwest Ordinance, 54
American Society for Promotion of Temperance, 102
American System, 91
Anaconda Plan, 150
Anderson, Robert, 148
Andros, Sir Edmond, 31
Anglican church, 22
Annapolis Convention, 56
Antebellum culture, 98–99
anti-Catholic sentiment, 102, 106, 136
Antietam, Battle of, 156, 157
Antifederalists, 58, 65
antislavery movement, 104, 116, 139
antislavery parties, 131
Arizona, 135
Arkwright, Richard, 85
Army Act, 164
Army of the Potomac, 156–157
Arnold, Benedict, 46, 50
Aroostook War, 120
articles, U.S. Constitution, 59–61
Articles of Confederation, 53, 56
artists, American, 100
Astor, John Jacob, 84, 117
asylum movement, 103
Atchison, David, 138
Audubon, John James, 100
Austin, Stephen, 118
authors, American. *See* American authors
Aztecs, 14–15

B

Bacon, Nathaniel, 29
Bacon's Rebellion, 30
Baltimore, Lord, 25
Bank of the United States, 81, 95
Barbary Wars 74–75, 78–79
Barnard, Henry, 103
Barnburner Democrats, 131

battles, war. *See location, e. g.,* Valley Forge, Battle of
Bear Flag Revolt, 127
Beauregard, P. G. T., 148, 150, 152
Belknap, W. W., 167
Bell, John, 145–146
Berkeley, John Lord, 26
Berkeley, Sir William, 29–40
Biddle, Nicholas, 95
Bigelow Papers (Lowell), 99
Bill of Rights, 61–62, 65
bill of rights, state constitutions, 52
Billy Budd (Melville), 99
Birney, James G., 122
birth control, 105
birth rates, 105–106
black Americans. *See also* slavery/slaves
  churches and, 107
  economic security of, 107
  in North, 107
  prejudice against, 107, 116
  public school education and, 103
  Reconstruction and, 160–161, 166
  religious revivals and, 89
  violence against, 107, 166
  voting rights, 90, 162, 163
  in West, 107
black codes, 162, 163
"Black Friday" scandal, 166–167
black slaves. *See* slavery/slaves
blackface minstrel shows, 100
Blair, Francis P., 164
Bleeding Kansas, 139–140
Blithedale Romance (Hawthorne), 101
"Blue Backed Speller" (Webster), 88
Boone, Daniel, 54
"booster" colleges, 105
Booth, John Wilkes, 160
Boston Massacre, 42
Braddock, General Edward, 36–37
Bradford, William, 22
Bragg, Braxton, 158
Breckinridge, John C., 145–146
"Brer Rabbit" tales, 113
bribery, 167
Bridges, Jim, 117
British goods
  boycott of, 40
  depression of 1819 and, 80
  protective tariffs and, 78
  trade restrictions on, 117
Brook Farm community, 101
Brooks, Preston, 139–140
Brown, John, 139, 144
Buchanan, James, 125, 140
  Kansas and, 141–142
Buell, Don Carlos, 152
Buena Vista, Battle of, 128
Bull Run, First Battle of, 150

Bull Run, Second Battle of, 152
Bunker Hill, Battle of, 45–46
Burgoyne, General, 48, 49
Burnside, Ambrose E., 157
Burr, Aaron, 71, 74
Burr conspiracy, 74
Butler, Andrew, 139

C

Cabot, John (Giovanni), 16
Caitlin, George, 100
Calhoun, John C., 76, 92, 94, 98, 116, 130, 133
California, 118–119
  admission to Union, 132, 133
  gold in, 131–132
California Trail, 125
"called nation," 89
Calvert, Cecilius, 25
Calvert, George, 25
camp meetings, 89
Canada
  boundaries of, 120, 124
  invasion of, 1812, 76
  Revolutionary War and, 46, 52
  trade with, 135
canal era, 85
canal systems, 85, 109
Carolinas, colonization of, 25–26
Caroline (ship), 120, 121
Caroline Affair, 120
carpetbaggers, 165
Carteret, Sir George, 26
Cartier, Jacques, 16, 20
Case, Jerome, 109
Cass, Lewis, 131, 134
Catholicism/Catholics, 22
  anti-Catholic sentiment, 102, 106, 136
  discrimination against, 106
  immigrants, 102, 106, 136
  in Maryland colonization, 25
Chase, Salmon P., 155, 164
Chase, Samuel, 72
Chattanooga, Battle of, 158
Cherokee Nation, 93
Chesapeake colonies, quality of life, 27
Chickamauga, Battle of, 158
Christianity/Christians, 25, 30
Church of England, 22, 31, 44
Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints, 102
cities, growth in. *See* urbanization
"Civil Disobedience" (Thoreau), 129
Civil Rights Act, 163
Civil War. *See* U.S. Civil War
Clark, George Rogers, 50
classes, Southern, 111
Clay, Henry, 76, 82, 91, 95, 98, 119–120, 122
  Compromise of 1850 and, 133–134
Clermont (steamship), 84

Clinton, Henry, 45, 50, 51
Coercive Acts, 43
Cold Harbor, Battle of, 158
Colfax, Schuyler, 164
colleges. *See* higher education
colonial period, 14–37
  age of exploration, 14–18
  colonial world, 26–32
  colonization, beginnings of, 18–26
  eighteenth century, 33–37
colonial period, eighteenth century
  early wars of the empire, 33–34
  economy and population, 33
  Enlightenment, 35
  French and Indian War, 36–37
  Georgia, 34
  Great Awakening, 35–36
colonial world
  colonial life, 26–28
  dominion of New England, 31
  Half-Way Covenant, 30
  King Philip's War, 20–31
  mercantilism and the Navigation Acts, 28–30
  Pennsylvania and Delaware, 32
  Salem witch trials, 31–32
colonization, beginnings of, 18–26
  Carolinas, 25–26
  Maryland, 25
  Massachusetts Bay Colony, 22–23
  New France, 20–21
  New Netherlands, 21–22
  New York and New Jersey, 26
  Pilgrims at Plymouth, 22
  Rhode Island, Connecticut, and New Hampshire, 23–24
  Virginia, 18–20
Columbus, Christopher, 14
Commemoration Ode (Lowell), 99
commerce. *See also* economy
  revolution in, 109
  in South, 114
Committee of the Whole, 59
Common Sense (Paine), 46
compact theory, 70
Compromise of 1850, 132–134
Compromise of 1877, 170
Concord, Battle of, 44–45
concurrent majority, 116
Confederate States of America, 146–147. See also the South
  defeat of, 159–160
  home front, 154–156
  naval strategy, 153–154
  paper money of, 155
  strategies of, 150–151
  strengths of, 149–150
Congregationalists/Congregationalism, 35
Congress
  amendment process and, 60

government structure and, 65
impeachment powers of, 58
Reconstruction and, 163–164
Connecticut
colonization of, 23–24
state constitutions and, 52
conquistadores, 14–15
Conscience Whigs, 131
conscription, 154
constitution, Confederate states, 146–147
Constitution, U.S. *See* U.S. Constitution
Constitutional Convention, 56–58
Constitutional Union Party, 145
constitutions, state, 52
Continental Congress, 53
Continental System, 75
Continentals, 53
Cooper, James Fennimore, 99
Cooper, Peter, 169
Copperheads, 156
Cornwallis, Lord, 48, 50, 51
corporations, early nineteenth century, 86
Corps of Topographical Engineers, 140
corruption, 165, 166–167
Cortes, Hernando, 14
cotton cultivation
1789–1824, 83
in the South, 110, 136
cotton gin, 83, 110
court system, federal, 65–66
Crawford, William H., 91
Credit Mobilier scandal, 167
Creeks, 77, 92
Creole (ship), 120, 121
Creole Incident, 120
creoles, 15
Crime of '73, 169
Crimean War, 142
crisis of 1850, 130–136
Crittenden, John J., 147
C.S.S. *Alabama*, 153
C.S.S. *Virginia*, 153
Cuba, 135
cult of domesticity, 105
cultural nationalism, 88
Cumberland Presbyterians, 102
Currency Act of 1764, 39

D

da Verrazzano, Giovannia, 16
daily life
in the North, 109–110
of slaves, 113
in the South, 115–116, 165–166
Dale, Sir Thomas, 20
Dare, Virginia, 17
Dartmouth College v. Woodward, 81
Davenport, John, 24
Davis, Jefferson, 133, 135, 146, 148, 159

as Confederate president, 150, 156
Dawes, William, 45
de Balboa, Vasco Nunez, 14
de Champlain, Samuel, 21
de Coronado, Francisco Vasquez, 15
De La Warr, Lord, 20
de Leon, Juan Ponce, 14
de Narvaez, Panfilio, 15
de Soto, Hernando, 15
de Vaca, Cabeza, 15
DeBow, James B. D., 114
Decatur, Stephen, 78–79
Declaration of Independence, 47
"Declaration of Sentiments and Resolutions," 103
"Declaration of the Causes and Necessity for Taking up Arms," 46
Declaratory Act, 40
Delaware, colonial, 32
Democracy in America (Tocqueville), 98
Democrats
antislavery, 131
elections and. *See* elections
Kansas-Nebraska Act and, 138
party philosophy, 97
violence of 1834, 106
western expansion and, 119
Department of the Navy, 70
depressions
1819, 80
1837, 87
Panic of 1857, 142
Dickinson, John, 41, 46, 47, 53, 56, 57
discrimination
against free blacks, 107, 116
against immigrants, 106
District of Columbia, 133
Dix, Dorothea, 103
domestic affairs
1789–1824, 72–74
Burr conspiracy, 74
Essex Junto, 74
exploration of the West, 73
Louisiana Purchase, 73
Randolph and Yazoo claims, 74
domesticity, cult of, 105
Dominion of New England, 31
Doniphan, Alexander W., 127
Dorr, Thomas, 90
Douglas, Stephen A., 131, 134, 138, 142–143, 145–146
Douglass, Frederick, 104
draft riots, 154
Drake, Francis, 17
Dred Scott v. Sandford, 141
Dutch, in Revolutionary War, 49
Dutch tea, 43
Dutch West India Company, 21

E

East India Company, 43

Eaton, John, 94
Eaton, Peggy, 94
economy
  1789–1824, 83–84
  in Civil War, 154–155
  commerce revolution, 109
  depression of 1819, 80
  depression of 1837, 87
  eighteenth century, colonial era, 33
  under Grant, 168–169
  market, 109
  mid-nineteenth century, 135–136
  Panic of 1837, 95–96
  Panic of 1857, 142
  Panic of 1873, 168–169
  post–Civil War South, 165–166
  post–Revolutionary War, 53, 54–55
  post–War of 1812, 79, 80
  railroads and, 135
  Reconstruction, 168–169
  Southern, slavery and, 144–145
education. *See* higher education; public education; public schools
educational literature, 88
educational system, 87–88
Edwards, Jonathan, 35
eighteenth century, colonial period. *See* colonial period, eighteenth century
Eighteenth Amendment, 62
Eighth Amendment, 61
elections
  1796, 69
  1800, 71
  1808, 75
  1824, 90–92
  1828, 92–93
  1832, 95
  1840, 96–97
  1844, 122–123
  1848, 131
  1852, 134
  1856, 140
  1860, 145–146
  1862, 156
  1864, 159–160
  1868, 164–165
  1872, 168
  1876, 169–170
Electoral College, 58, 91
electorate expansion, 1824, 90–91
electric telegraph, 108
Eleventh Amendment, 62
Emancipation Proclamation, 156
embargo of 1807, 75
Emerson, Ralph Waldo, 101
encomienda system, 15
England
  age of exploration and, 16–17
  American Revolution and. *See* American Revolution
  boycott of British goods, 40
  civil war in, 32

colonial control and, 28–31, 33
colonization and, 18–20, 22–26
early wars, 33–34, 36–37
French and Indian War, 36–37
French Revolution and, 68
Glorious Revolution, 31, 35
Grenville and the Stamp Act, 38–40
Intolerable Acts, 43–44
Jay's treaty with, 68
mercantilism and, 28–30
Navigation Acts, 28–30
Oregon and, 123–124
Prohibitory Act, 46–47
Revolutionary War and. *See* Revolutionary War
taxation by. *See* taxation
Tea Act, 43
Townshend Acts, 40–42
U.S. Civil War and, 152–153
War of 1812, 76–78
Webster-Asburton Treaty, 120–121
Writs of Assistance, 38
Enlightenment, 35, 71, 88–89, 99
Era of Good Feelings, 79
Erie Canal, 85
Essex Junto, 74
Europe
Enlightenment, 35
Napoleonic Wars, 75
evangelicalism, 89, 102
Evangeline (Longfellow), 99
ex Parte Merryman, 155
executive branch
departments of, 66
Jacksonian politics and, 97
U.S. Constitution, 60
expansionism, 89

F

factory system, 85–86
Fallen Timbers, Battle of, 68
families
colonial era, 27–28
slave trade and, 113
farming. *See* agriculture
Farragut, David G., 150, 152
federal court system, 65–66
federal government
court cases strengthening, Marshall Court, 80–82
powers reserved for, 63
powers shared by, 64
restrictions on, 64
structure of, Congress and, 65
Federalist era, 65–66
Congress and government structure, 65
federal court system establishment, 65–66
new executive, 65
Federalist Papers, 58, 59

Federalists, 58
1800 election, 71
1808 election, 75
beginnings of, 67
decline of, 78
Essex Junto, 74
Hamilton and, 67
as justices, impeachment of, 72
support of, 67
feminism, 103–104
Ferdinand of Spain, 14
Ferguson, Major Patrick, 50
Fifteenth Amendment, 62, 164–165
Fifth Amendment, 61
Fillmore, Millard, 133–134
fine arts, 100
Finney, Charles G., 102
First Amendment, 61
First Battle of Bull Run, 150
First Continental Congress, 44
First Manassas, 150
fishing, 1789–1824, 83
Fiske, Jim, 166–167
Fletcher v. Peck, 81
Florida
Adams-Onis Treaty, 79
Jackson's invasion of, 78
Pinckney Treaty, 68
secession of, 146
Spanish, 52, 76
Force Bill, 94
foreign affairs
1789–1824, 67–68, 74–75
Barbary War, 74–75
Chesapeake-Leopard affair, 75
embargo of 1807, 75
French Revolution, 67–68
under Johnson, 162–163
Napoleonic Wars, 75
treaty with Britain, 68
treaty with Spain, 68
Fort Sumter, 148
"forty-niners," 132
Fourteenth Amendment, 62
Fourth Amendment, 61
France
age of exploration and, 16–17
French and Indian War, 36–37
French Revolution, 67–68
Louisiana Purchase, 73
Mexico and, 1860s, 162
New France, 20–21
quasi-war, 70
in Revolutionary War, 49, 51–52
U.S. Civil War and, 152–153
wars against, colonial era, 34, 36–37
XYZ Affair, 69
Franklin, Benjamin, 35, 36, 51, 57
free blacks. *See* Black Americans

free-soil issues, 143
Free Soil Party, 131, 134
free states, Compromise of 1850 and, 132–134
Freedman's Bureau, 160, 163
Freeport Doctrine, 143
Frelinghuysen, Theodore, 35
Frémont, John C., 127, 140
French and Indian War, 36–37
French Revolution, 67–68
Frobisher, Martin, 17
frontier problems, 1789–1824, 68
Fugitive Slave Law, 133, 137
Fulton, Robert, 84
Fundamental Orders of Connecticut, 24
fur trade, 20, 21, 84, 117, 125

G

gag rule, 116
Gage, Thomas, 43, 44–45, 47
Gallatin, Albert, 72
Galloway, Joseph, 44
Garrison, William Lloyd, 104
Gasden Purchase, 135
Gaspee (ship), 42
Gates, Horatio, 49, 53
Gates, Sir Thomas, 20
General Court, 23, 24
Genet, Citizen, 67–68
Georgia
  Cherokee Nation and, 92, 93
  Fletcher v. Peck, 81
  founding of, 34
  land cession and, 92
  in Revolutionary War, 50
  secession of, 146
Georgia Assembly, 81
Germany
  immigrants from, 33, 102, 136
  soldiers from, Revolutionary War, 47
Gettysburg, Battle of, 157
Gibbons v. Ogden, 81–82
Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, 17–18
Glorious Revolution, 31, 35
Godey's Ladies Book (periodical), 105
gold rush, 131–132
gold standard, 1 68–169
Goodyear, Charles, 108
Gould, Jay, 166–167
government. *See* federal government; state government
governments, creation of. *See* American Revolution, government creation
Grant, Ulysses S., 149, 152, 157–158, 159
  corruption under, 166–167
  election of 1868, 164–165
Great Awakening, 35–36
Great Britain. *See* England
Great Compromise, 57
Great Migration, 23

Greeley, Horace, 147, 168
Greenback party, 169
greenbacks, 155, 168–169
Greene, Nathaniel, 51
Grenville, George, 38–40
Grimke sisters, 104

H

habeas corpus, Lincoln's suspension of, 155–156
hacienda system, 15
Hakluyt, Richard, 18
Hale, John P., 134
Half-Way Covenant, 30
Halleck, Henry W., 152
Hamilton, Alexander, 56–57, 58, 59, 66, 69
  1800 election, 71
  death of, 74
  Federalists and, 67
  financial program of, 66–67
Hancock, John, 41, 58
Harper's Ferry raid, 144
Harrison, William Henry, 76, 96–97, 119–120
Hartford Convention, 77–78
Hawaii, annexation of, 135
Hawthorne, Nathaniel, 99, 101
Hayes, Rutherford B., 169–170
Hayne, Robert, 94
health
  in the South, 115
  urbanization and, 106
Helper, Hinton Rowan, 144–145
Henry, Patrick, 39–40, 59
Herkimer, General Nicholas, 49
Hessians, 47, 48
Hiawatha (Longfellow), 99
higher education
  "booster" colleges, 105
  colonial era, 36
  early nineteenth century, 87
  land-grant colleges, 109, 154
  reform movement, 103, 105
  in the South, 115
History of the Revolution (Warren), 88
H.M.S. *Leopard*, 75
Holland, 21–22, 49
Homestead Act, 109, 154
Hood, John B., 158
Hooker, Joseph "Fighting Joe," 157
Hooker, Thomas, 24
House of Burgesses, 20, 40
House of Representatives
  creation of, 57
  election of 1876, 170
  president election and, 58
  in U.S. Constitution, 59–60
  voting percentages required, 64
Houston, Sam, 118, 121
Howe, Elias, 108, 135

Howe, Richard, 47, 48–49
Howe, William, 45, 47
Hudson, Henry, 21
Hudson River School, 100
Hudson's Bay Company, 117
Huguenots, 16
Hutchinson, Anne, 24
Hutchinson, Thomas, 43

I

immigrants
  from Britain, 106
  discrimination against, 106
  from Germany, 33, 102, 106
  from Ireland, 33, 102, 106
  Know-Nothing party and, 136
  in Northern population, 149
  public school socialization of, 103
  unions and, 108
immigration
  eighteenth century, 33
  to Mexico, 118, 119
  nineteenth century, 83, 106
impeachment, of Federalist judges, 72
Impending Crisis in the South, The (Helper), 144–145
implied powers, 67, 81
impressment, 75
indenture system, 19
indentured servants, 19, 20, 27
Independent Sub-Treasury, 123
Independent Treasury, 96
Indian policy. *See* Native Americans; removal policy
Indian Removal Act, 93
Indiana, New Harmony community, 101
Indians. *See* Native Americans
indigo cultivation, 28
industrialization
  agricultural revolution, 107–108
  commerce revolution and, 109
  corporations, 86
  factory system, 85–86
  inventions and technology and, 108, 109
  labor supply, 86
  manufacturing, 114
  market economy and, 109
  in Northeast, 107
  in South, 114
  unions, 86–87, 108
interchangeable parts, 108
internal problems, 1789–1824
  land policy, 69
  Whiskey Rebellion, 69
international affairs. *See* foreign affairs
interstate relations, U.S. Constitution, 60
Intolerable Acts, 43–44
inventions, technology and, 108, 109
Iowa, Amana Community, 101

Ireland, immigrants from, 33, 102, 106, 136
iron, mass production of, 108
ironclad oath, 161
Iroquois, 21, 49
Irving, Washington, 88
Isabella of Spain, 14
Ivy League colleges, 36

J

Jackson, Andrew, 77, 78, 90, 91, 92
  election of 1832, 95
  Native American policy of, 93
  nullification crisis, 94
  presidency of, 93, 118
Jackson, Thomas J. "Stonewall," 151, 157
Jacksonian democracy/politics, 90
  party philosophies, 97–98
  party system, 97
  states' rights, 97
  strong executive, 97
  Tocqueville and, 98
James, Duke of York, 26
Jamestown colony, 18–19
Japan, trade with, 134
Jay, John, 51, 54–55, 58
  treaty with Britain, 68
Jay Cooke and Company, 169
Jay-Gardoqui negotiations, 54–55
Jefferson, Thomas, 47, 66, 70, 82
  1800 election, 71
  embargo of 1807, 75
  as president, 72
  Republicans and, 67, 69
Jeffersonian era, 71–72
jeremiads, 30
John Brown's Raid, 144
John Deere's steel plow, 109
Johnson, Andrew, 159, 160, 161
  congressional Reconstruction and, 163–164
  Reconstruction plan, 161–162
Johnston, Albert Sidney, 149, 152
Johnston, Joseph E., 149, 150, 151, 158
Jones, John Paul, 51
Jones, Thomas Catesby, 126
Juarez, Benito, 162
Judiciary Act of 1789, 60, 65–66
Judiciary Act of 1801, 71
judiciary branch, U.S. Constitution, 60

K

Kansas
  Bleeding Kansas, 139–140
  Buchanan and, 141–142
Kansas-Nebraska Act, 138
Kearney, Stephen W., 127

King Charles I, 20, 22
King Charles II, 24, 25, 26, 29
King George III, 40, 46
King George's War, 34, 36
King James I, 18, 20, 22, 31
King Philip II, 17
King Philip's War, 30–31
King William's War, 34
King's Mountain, Battle of, 50
kinship ties, 113
Knox, Henry, 66
Know-Nothing party, 136, 138, 140
Ku Klux Klan, 166

L

labor supply, early nineteenth century, 86
labor system, slavery as, 112
Lancastrian system, 87
land-grant colleges, 109, 154
Land Ordinance of 1784, 54
Land Ordinance of 1785, 54
land policy, 69
  constitutional dilemma, 73
  federal, 1830s, 93–94
  Louisiana purchase, 73
  Yazoo claims, 74
Latin America, revolutions in, 79
Leatherstocking Tales (Cooper), 99
Leaves of Grass (Whitman), 99
Lecompton constitution, 141–142, 143
Lee, Henry, 47
Lee, Jason, 123
Lee, Mother Ann, 101
Lee, Robert E., 149, 151, 156–157, 159
legislative branch, U.S. Constitution, 59–60
Leisler, Jacob, 31
Leisler's Rebellion, 31
L'Enfant, Pierre, 71
"Letters from a Framer in Pennsylvania" (Dickinson), 41
Lewis and Clark expedition, 73, 117, 123
Lexington, Battle of, 44–45
Liberal Republicans, 168
Liberator, The (paper), 104
Liberia colony, 104
Liberty (ship), 41
Liberty Party, 104, 122
life expectancy, colonial era, 27
Life of Washington (Weems), 88
limitation of powers, U.S. Constitution, 63–64
Lincoln, Abraham, 129
  assassination of, 160
  Civil War and, 148–160
  election of 1860, 146
  election of 1864, 159
  Emancipation Proclamation, 156
  Fort Sumter, 148
  Lincoln-Douglas debates, 142–143

as president, 150
Reconstruction plan, 160–161
suspension of *habeas corpus*, 155–156
Lincoln, Benjamin, 50
Lincoln-Douglas debates, 142–143
Line of Demarcation, 14
literary nationalism, 88
literature
educational, 88
Northern writers and themes, 99
oral, of slaves, 113
Southern writers and themes, 100
Locke, John, 35, 70
Long Island, Battle of, 47
Longfellow, Henry Wadsworth, 99
Longstreet, Augustus, 100
Louisiana
fur trade, 117
secession of, 146
Louisiana Purchase, 73
Louisiana Territory, 117
Lovejoy, Elijah, 104
Lowell, James Russell, 99
Lowell System, 86
lumbering, 1789–1824, 83
lyceums, 105

M

Macon's Bill No. 2, 75–76
Madison, Dolly, 75
Madison, James, 56–57, 58, 67, 70, 72
administration of, 75–78
Madison, Steve, 72
magazines, 105
Magellan, Ferdinand, 16
Maine, 82
Manifest Destiny, 89, 116–117, 119. *See also* westward expansion
Mann, Horace, 103
manufacturing, Southern, 114
Marbury, William, 72
Marbury v. Madison, 72, 80–81
Marion, Francis, 50
market economy, 109
Marquette, Jacques, 21
Marshall, John, 71, 72, 74
Marshall Court, 80–82
Maryland
Articles of Confederation and, 53
colonization of, 25
McCulloch v. Maryland, 81
state constitution, 52
Mason, George, 59
Mason, James J., 153
Massachusetts
Boston Massacre, 42
Brook Farm community, 101
charter of, 31
Salem witch trials, 31–32

Shays' Rebellion, 55
state constitution, 52
taxation resistance in, 39
tea harbor, 43
transcendentalist movement, 100–101
Massachusetts Bay Colony, 22–23
Massachusetts Board of Education, 103
Massachusetts Circular Letter, 41
Massachusetts Government Act, 43
Mather, Cotton, 31–32
Maximilian, 162
Mayflower, 22
Mayflower Compact, 22
Maysville Road project, 93
McClellan, George B., 151–152, 156–157, 159
McCormick, Cyrus, 109, 136
McCulloch v. Maryland, 81
McDowell, Irvin, 150
Meade, George G., 157
mechanical reaper, 109, 136
mechanical thresher, 136
Melville, Herman, 99
mentally ill, asylum movement, 103
mercantilism, 28–30, 33
Merrimac (ship), 153
Mestizos, 15
Mexican Cession, 125, 128, 132
slavery in, 130–131, 133
Mexican War, 127–129
Mexico
Adams-Onis Treaty and, 79, 118
beginnings of war with, 125–127
France and, 1860s, 162
Gasden Purchase, 135
revolution in, 118
Texas and, 118
war with, 127–129
Middle Colonies, Revolutionary War, 46
Midwest, agriculture in, 136
Military Reconstruction Act, 163
minstrel shows, 100
Minutemen, 45
Mississippi, secession of, 146
Missouri Compromise, 82, 119, 130–131, 138, 141, 147
Missouri Territory, 82
Moby Dick (Melville), 99
Molasses Act of 1733, 33, 39
Monmouth, Battle of, 50
Monroe, James, 79, 80
Monroe Doctrine, 79, 162
Montcalm and Wolfe (Parkman), 99
Monterey, Battle of, 128
Montgomery Bell, 114
Morgan, Daniel, 51
Mormon War, 125
Mormons, 102, 124–125
Morrill Land Grant Act, 109, 154
Morris, Gouverneur, 57
Morris, Robert, 57

Morse, Samuel B., 108
Mott, Lucretia, 107
"mountain men," 84, 117, 125
music, early eighteenth century, 100

N

Napoleon, 70, 73, 75, 79
Napoleon III, 162
Napoleonic Wars, 75
Nashoba community, 101
nation, new. *See* United States, 1789–1824
National Banking Act, 155
National Republicans, 92
National Road, 84
National Union party, 159
nationalism, 89
Native Americans
  Christianity and, 30
  Florida invasion, 78
  French and Indian War, 36–37
  frontier problems, 1789–1824
  fur trade, 20, 21
  King Philip's War, 30–31
  King William's War, 34
  land cession, 92
  Northwest Ordinance and, 54
  rebellions, Revolutionary War era, 38
  removal policy, 76, 78, 93
  as soldiers in Revolutionary War, 49
  Trail of Tears, 93
  Treaty of Greenville, 68
  Virginia colonization and, 19, 20
  War of 1812, 76, 77
"Nature" (Emerson), 101
naval strategy
  Civil War, 150, 153–154
  Revolutionary War, 51
Navigation Acts, 28–30, 31, 38
New Amsterdam, 26
New England Anti-Slavery Society, 104
New England colonies
  Dominion of, 31
  King Philip's War and, 30–31
  quality of life, 27
  Revolutionary War, 46
New England Emigrant Aid Company, 139
New France, 20–21
New Hampshire, colonization of, 23–24
New Harmony community, 101
New Jersey, colonization of, 26
New Jersey Plan, 57
New Lanark, 101
"New Lights," 36
New Mexico, 118–119, 133, 135
New Mexico Territory, 132, 133
new nation. *See* United States, 1789–1824
New Netherlands, 21–22, 26

New Orleans, Battle of, 77
New Orleans (steamboat), 84
New Spain, 15
New York
  colonization of, 26
  cotton demand in, 85
  Gibbons v. Ogden, 81–82
  Leisler's Rebellion, 31
  Oneida Community, 101
  ratification of U.S. Constitution, 59
  Tammany Hall, 165
New York City, rise of, early nineteenth century, 85
New York Free School, 87
New York Tribune, 147, 168
Newburgh Conspiracy, 53
newspapers, 105
Newton, Isaac, 35
Nicols, Richard, 26
Nineteenth Amendment, 62
Ninth Amendment, 61
Non-Intercourse Act, 75–76
North. *See also* Union
  Compromise of 1850 and, 133
  daily life in, 105–110
  free blacks in, 107
  Fugitive Slave Law and, 137
  industry growth in, 107–109
  minorities in, 107
  population, 105–106, 149
  reform culture in, 98–99
  social unrest in, 106–107
  strengths of, Civil War, 149–150
  urbanization and, 106
  writers of, 99
North, Frederick Lord, 42, 51
North Africa, Barbary Wars, 74–75, 78–79
North Carolina
  colonization of, 25–26
  ratification of U.S. Constitution, 59
North Star (newspaper), 104
Northwest Ordinance, 54, 130
Northwest Passage, 16, 17, 21
Nova Albion, 17
nullification crisis, 70, 92, 94, 97

O

Oberlin College, 103
Ogelthorpe, James, 34
"Old Ironsides," 76
"Old Lights," 36
"Olive Branch Petition," 46
Oneida Community, 101
oratory, 104
Orders in Council, 75
Ordinance of Nullification, 94
Oregon, settlement of, 123–124
Oregon country, 117–118
Oregon Fever, 118
Oregon Trail, 123, 124

Oregon Trail, The (Parkman), 99
Oregon Treaty, 124
Oriskany, Battle of, 49
Ostend Manifesto, 135
O'Sullivan, John L., 122
Otis, James, 38, 39
Ottawas, 38
Owen, Robert, 101

P

Paine, Thomas, 46, 89
Palo Alto, Battle of, 128
Panic of 1837, 95–96
Panic of 1857, 142
Panic of 1873, 168–169
Parker, John, 45
Parkman, Francis, 99
party system, 97, 136
patents, 108
Paterson, William, 57
"Peculiar Institution," 112, 119
Pemberton, John C., 157
Peninsula Campaign, 151
peninsulares, 15
Penn, William, 32
Pennsylvania
  colonial, 32
  state constitution, 52
Pennsylvania Dutch, 33
penny press, 118
Pepperell, William, 34
periodicals, 105
Perkins School for the Blind, 103
Perry, Matthew, 134
Perry, Oliver Hazard, 76
Philadelphia Convention, 65
Pierce, Franklin, 134
  presidency of, 134–135
Pike, Zebulon, 73
pilgrims, at Plymouth, 22
Pinckney, Charles, 71, 75
Pinckney Treaty, 68
piracy, 78–79
Pitt, William, 37
plantation system, opposition to, 114–115
planter class, Southern, 111, 144–145
Plymouth, pilgrims at, 22
Plymouth Company, 18
pocket veto, 161
Poe, Edgar Allan, 100
political machines, 165
political parties
  beginnings of, 67
  party system, 97, 136
  slavery and, 122, 138
Polk, James K., 122–123
  Mexican War and, 127–129

presidency of, 123, 130
polygamy, 102, 125
Pontiac, 38
Poor Richard's Almanac (Franklin), 35
poor white class, Southern, 111
Pope, John, 152
popular sovereignty, 131
population
birth rate and, 105–106
early nineteenth century, 83
eighteenth century, 33
growth, 1790–1860, 105
immigration and, 106
natural increase in, 105–106
of North, 105–106, 149
of South, 149
poverty, in South, 111
powers, separation and limitation of, U.S. Constitution, 63–64
Powhatan, 18
Preamble, U.S. Constitution, 59
Preemption Act, 120
prejudice, 107. *See also* discrimination
Presbyterians, 33, 35
presidency
Confederate constitution and, 147
U.S. Constitution and, 58, 60
president, responsibilities of, 60
prisons, reform movement, 103
Proclamation of 1763, 38
Proclamation of Neutrality, 67
Prohibitory Act, 46–47
Prophet, the, 76
Prosser, Gabriel, 113
protective tariff s, 78, 147
protest(s)
1789–1824, 70
Alien and Sedition Acts, 70
Kentucky and Virginia Resolves, 70
urbanization and social unrest, 106–107
Protestant Revivalism, 102
Protestantism/Protestants
in Maryland colonization, 25
in Second Great Awakening, 89
public education, 87–88, 104–105. *See also* higher education
in the South, 115
women and, 103, 115
public schools
early nineteenth century, 87
reform movement, 103
Puritans, 22–24
Half-Way Covenant, 30
literacy of, 27
Native Americans and, 30
values of, 27

Q

Quakers, 32

Quartering Act, 39, 41, 43
quasi-war, with France, 70
Quebec Act, 44
Queen Anne's War, 34
Queen Elizabeth, 17
Queen Mary, 17

R

race riots, 106
Radical Reconstruction, 164–165
Radical Republicans, 156, 161, 163–164, 168
railroads, 109, 135, 149
Raleigh, Sir Walter, 17–18
Randolph, Edmund, 57, 66
Randolph, John, 74
ratification, U.S. Constitution, 58–59
rationalism, 35, 89
Raven, The (Poe), 100
Reconstruction
  congressional, 163–164
  economic issues, 168–169
  election of 1868 and Fifteenth Amendment, 164–165
  election of 1876, 169–170
  foreign policy and, 162–163
  Grant and corruption, 166–167
  Johnson's plan, 161–162
  liberal Republicans, 168
  Lincoln's plan, 160–161
  slavery and, 160–161
  in the South, 165–166
reform/reform movements
  abolitionist, 104, 116, 127
  asylums, 103
  early eighteenth century, 98–99
  education, 104–105
  feminism, 103–104
  higher education, 103
  inspirational sources, 102
  organized, 102–105
  prisons, 103
  public schools, 103
  in the South, 1114–115
  temperance, 102
religious life
  Great Awakening, 35–36
  post–Revolutionary War, 88–89
  Second Great Awakening, 89
religious revivals, 35–36, 89
removal policy, 76, 78
"Report on the Public Credit" (Hamilton), 66
Republic of Texas. *See* Texas
Republicans
  elections and. *See* elections
  Alien and Sedition Acts, 70
  beginnings of, 67
  foundational beliefs of, 138
  Helper's book and, 145

Jefferson and, 67, 69, 74
Kansas-Nebraska Act and, 138
Ku Klux Klan and, 166
support of, 67
Yazoo land claims, 74
Resaca de la Palma, Battle of, 128
Revenue Act, 39
Revere, Paul, 45
Review (DeBow), 114
revolution of 1800, 71
Revolutionary War, 44–52
British move South, 49–51
Bunker Hill, 45–46
Lexington and Concord, 44–45
Saratoga and Valley Forge, 48–49
Second Continental Congress, 46–47
Treaty of Paris of 1783, 51–52
war at sea, 51
Washington takes command, 47–48
Yorktown, 51
Rhode Island
Articles of Confederation and, 53
colonization of, 23–24
ratification of U.S. Constitution, 59
state constitutions and, 52
rice cultivation, 28
river transportation, 84, 135
roadbuilding, early nineteenth century, 84
Roanoke colony, 17–18
Rockingham, Charles Lord, 40
Rolfe, John, 19
Roman Catholicism, 22, 44
romanticism, 98–99, 102
Rosecrans, William, 158
rubber, vulcanized, 108
Rush-Bagot Treaty, 78
Russia, Alaska purchase, 162–163

S

Sacramento, Battle of, 127–128
Salary Grab Act, 167
Salem witch trials, 31–32
San Gabriel, Battle of, 127
Sanborn Contract fraud, 167
Sandys, Edwin, 20
Santa Anna, Antonia Lopez de, 118, 128
Santa Fe Trail, 84, 118–119, 125
Saratoga, Battle of, 48–49
scalawags, 165
Scarlet Letter, The (Hawthorne), 99, 101
Scotch-Irish immigrants, 33
Scott, Dred, 141
Scott, Winfield, 128, 134, 149, 150
secession, 132–134, 146–147
Second Amendment, 61
Second Battle of Bull Run, 152
Second Continental Congress, 44, 46–47
Second Great Awakening, 89
Second National Bank, 80

sectional conflict
Bleeding Kansas, 139–140
Buchanan and Kansas, 141–142
Dred Scott case, 141
election of 1856, 140
Fugitive Slave Law and, 137
Kansas-Nebraska Act, 138
Lincoln-Douglas debates, 142–143
Panic of 1857, 142
Republican party and, 138
sources of tension, 137
Uncle Tom's Cabin and, 137
Sedition Act, 70, 72
"Self-Reliance" (Emerson), 101
Senate
creation of, 57
election of 1876, 170
in U.S. Constitution, 59–60
voting percentages required, 64
Seneca Falls feminist convention, 103–104
separation of powers, U.S. Constitution, 63–64
Separatists, 22
Seven Pines, Battle of, 151
Seven Years' War, 36–37
Seventeenth Amendment, 62
Seventh Amendment, 61
Seward, William, 133, 146, 153, 160, 162–163
sewing machines, 108, 135
Seymour, Horatio, 164–165
Shakers, 101
Shawnees, 76
Shays, Daniel, 55
Shays' Rebellion, 55
Sheridan, Philip, 162
Sherman, John, 169
Sherman, William T., 149, 158, 159
ship transportation, 109
shipbuilding, early nineteenth century, 83
silver, 169
Simms, William Gilmore, 100
Singer, Isaac, 135
"Sinners in the Hands of an Angry God" (Edwards), 35
Sixteenth Amendment, 62
Sixth Amendment, 61
Slater, Samuel, 85
slaveowners, Southern, 111
slavery/ slaves
abolitionist movement, 104, 116, 127
in Chesapeake colonies, 28
Compromise of 1850 and, 132–134
Confederate constitution, 147
Emancipation Proclamation, 156
families and, 113
Fugitive Slave Law, 133, 137
importation of, ending of, 73, 113
institution of, 112
in Kansas, 141–142
as labor system, 112
Lincoln-Douglas debates, 142–143

in Mexican Cession, 130–131, 133
Mexican War and, 127
Missouri Compromise and, 82, 119, 130, 138, 141, 147
Nashoba community, 101
in New Netherlands, 22
in New Spain, 15
Northwest Ordinance and, 130
political parties and, 122, 138
Reconstruction and, 160–161
slave trade, 112–113
slaves' reaction to, 113
smuggling of slaves, 113, 121
in South, 112–113, 144–145
in South Carolina, 28
Southern planter class and, 111
in the territories, 130–134, 137, 139–140, 141, 142–143, 147
in Texas, 121
Three-Fifths Compromise, 58
underground railroad, 113, 132
urban, 112
U.S. constitution and, 57–58
western expansion and, 119
Wilmot Proviso and, 130–131
Slidell, John, 126, 153
Sloat, John D., 127
Smith, Jedediah, 117
Smith, John, 19
Smith, Joseph, 102, 124
smuggling of slaves, 113, 121
social classes, Southern, 111–112
social programs, 165
social unrest, urbanization and, 106–107
Sons of Liberty, 39
South. *See also* Confederate States of America
agriculture in, 135–136
antislavery movement and, 116
classes in, 111
commerce and industry in, 114
Compromise of 1850 and, 133
cotton cultivation, 83, 110, 136
economy, slavery and, 144–145
education in, 115
life in, 110–116, 165–166
Missouri Compromise and, 82
population, 149
post–Civil War, 165–166
poverty in, 111
public school education in, 103
reform movements, 114–115
slavery in, 112–113, 144–145
strengths of, Civil War, 149–150
women in, 115
writers of, 100
South Carolina
colonization of, 25–26
secession of, 146
"South Carolina Exposition and Protest" (Calhoun), 92
Southern campaign, Revolutionary War, 49–51
Southwest

cotton cultivation, 83
war in, 77
Spain
Adams-Onis Treaty, 79
conquistadores from, 14–15
Cuba and, 135
France and England and, 16–17
Jay-Gardoqui negotiations, 54–55
New Spain, 15
Ostend Manifesto, 135
in Revolutionary War, 49, 51–52
trade with, 84
treaty with (Pinckney Treaty), 68
war against, colonial era, 34
Spanish Armada, 17
Spanish conquistadores, 14–15
Speaker of the House, 59
Specie Circular, 95
Specie Resumption Act, 169
speechmaking, 104
spoils system, 93
Spotsylvania, Battle of, 158
squatter sovereignty, 131
St. Leger, Barry, 49
Stamp Act, 38–40
Stamp Act Congress, 40
standard of living
in the North, 109–110
of slaves, 111
in the South, 115–116, 165–166
Stanton, Edward M., 164
Stanton, Elizabeth Cady, 104
Stark, General John, 49
state constitutions, 52
state government
court cases restricting, Marshall Court, 80–82
powers reserved for, 63
powers shared by, 64
restrictions on, 64
states' rights, 97
steamboats, 84, 135
steel plow, 109
Stephens, Alexander, 146
Stevens, Thaddeus, 161, 166
Stockton, Robert, 127
Stowe, Harriet Beecher, 104, 137
strikes, worker, 108
Stuart, J. E. B., 157
Suffolk Resolves, 44
Sugar Act, 39
Sumner, Charles, 139–140, 166
supremacy clause, U.S. Constitution, 61
Supreme Court, 60, 65–66
election of 1876, 170
in Jeffersonian era, 72
Marshall Court, 80–82
"packing," 1800, 71
slavery cases, 141

states' rights cases, 97

T

Talleyrand, Minister, 69
Tamerlane (Poe), 100
Tammany Hall, 165
Taney, Roger B., 97, 141, 155
Tariff of 1832, 94
tariff s, protective, 78, 147
taxation, colonial
  in colonial Virginia, 29
  Declaratory Act, 40
  resistance to, 39–40, 41–42, 43
  Stamp Act, 39–40
  Sugar Act, 39 on tea, 42, 43
  Tea Act, 43
  Townshend Acts, 40–42
taxation, U.S., 69
Taylor, Zachary, 126–127, 128, 131
  Compromise of 1850, 132–134
Tea Act of, 1773
tea taxes, 42, 43
technology, inventions and, 108, 109
Tecumseh, 76
telegraph, 108
temperance movement, 102
Ten Percent Plan, 160–161
Tennessee, Nashoba community, 101
Tennett, Gilbert, 35
Tennett, William, 35
Tenth Amendment, 62, 65
Tenure of Office Act, 164
territories, slavery in, 130–134, 138, 139–140, 141, 142–143, 147
Texas
  admission to Union, 123
  annexation question, 118, 121–122
  boundaries of, disputed, 126
  Compromise of 1850 and, 133
  secession of, 146
  slavery and, 121
textile industry, 135
Thames, Battle of, 76
theatre, early eighteenth century, 100
Third Amendment, 61
Thirteenth Amendment, 62, 161–162, 163
Thoreau, Henry David, 101, 129
Three-Fifths Compromise, 58
threshing machine, 109
Tilden, Samuel, 169–170
tobacco cultivation, 19, 20, 27
Tocqueville, Alexis de, 90, 98
Townshend, Charles, 40–41
Townshend Acts, 40–42
Townshend Duties, 41, 42
Trail of Tears, 93
trans-Appalachian West, Northwest Ordinance and, 54
transcendentalist movement, 100–101, 102
transportation, nineteenth century, 84–85, 109

Treasury Department, 155
Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, 34, 36
Treaty of Ghent, 77
Treaty of Greenville, 68
Treaty of Guadalupe-Hidalgo, 128
Treaty of Paris, 37
Treaty of Paris of 1783, 51–52, 56
Treaty of Ryswick, 34
Treaty of Tordesillas, 14
Treaty of Utrecht, 34
Tredegar Iron Works, 114
Trent (ship), 153
Trist, Nicholas, 128
Troy Female Seminary, 103
Truth, Sojourner, 107
Tubman, Harriet, 113
Turner, Nat, 113
Tweed, William Marcy "Boss," 165
Twelfth Amendment, 62, 73, 91
Twentieth Amendment, 62
Twenty-fifth Amendment, 62
Twenty-first Amendment, 62
Twenty-fourth Amendment, 62
Twenty-second Amendment, 62
Twenty-seventh Amendment, 62
Twenty-sixth Amendment, 62
Twenty-third Amendment, 62
two-party system, 97, 136
Tyler, John, 96, 119–120, 121–122
Typee (Melville), 99

U

Uncle Tom's Cabin (Stowe), 104, 137
underground railroad, 113, 132
Union. *See also* North
  diplomacy of, 152–153
  home front, 154–156
  Lincoln and McClellan, 151–152
  naval strategy, 150, 153–154
  strategies of, 150–151
  strengths of, 149–150
  victories in the West, 152
  victory of, 159–160
Union League, 166
Union Pacific Railroad, 167
unions, 86–87, 108
Unitarianism, 89
United States, 1789–1824
  Adams' (John) administration, 69–70
  conflict with judges, 72
  domestic affairs, 72–74
  educational development, 87–88
  elections of. *See* elections
  executive department establishment, 66
  expanding economy, 83–84
  Federalist era, 65–66
  foreign and frontier affairs, 67–68

industrialization, 85–87
internal development, 79–80
internal problems, 69
international involvement, 74–75
Jeffersonian era, 71–72
Madison's administration, 75–78
Marshall Court, 80–82
Missouri Compromise, 82
post-war developments, 78–89
religious life, 88–89
repression and protest, 70
revolution of 1800
transportation revolution, 84–85
Washington's administration, 66–67
United States, 1824–1850
Antebellum culture, 98–99
commerce and industry, Southern, 114–115
elections of. *See* elections
fine arts, 100
industrial growth, Northern, 107–109
Jacksonian democracy, 90
Jacksonian politics, 97–98
life in the North, 105–110
life in the South, 110–116
literature, 99–100
Manifest Destiny and westward expansion, 116–129
minorities, role of, 107
Mormons, 102
societal reforms, 102–105
transcendentalists, 100–101
utopians, 101
war on the Bank, 95–96
Webster-Hayne debate, 93–94
United States, 1850–1860
beginnings of Civil War, 144–147
crisis of 1850 and mid-century America, 130–136
elections of. *See* elections
sectional conflict, 137–143
Universalism, 89
University of Pennsylvania, 87
urban slavery, 112
urbanization, 106
U.S. Army, 149
U.S. Bank, 80
U.S. Civil War
Fort Sumter, 148
home front, 154–156
hostilities begin, 148–151
Lincoln finds Grant, 157–158
Lincoln tries McClellan, 151–152
naval strategy, 153–154
Northern diplomacy, 152–153
Northern victory, 159–160
Reconstruction, 160–170
strategies, 150–151
strengths of North and South, 149–150
turning point in the East, 156–157
Union preserved, 151–160
Union victories in West, 152

U.S. Civil War, beginnings of. *See also* sectional conflict
  election of 1860, 145–146
  Hinton Rowan's Helper's Book, 144–145
  John Brown's Raid, 144
  secession crisis, 146–147
U.S. Constitution
  amendment process, 60
  amendments to, 61–62
  articles of, 59–61
  broad vs. strict interpretation, 67, 73
  Constitutional Convention, 56–58
  development and ratification, 56–59
  land purchase and, 73
  outline of, 59–62
  separation and limitation of powers, 63–64
U.S. Navy, 51, 149
U.S.S. *Chesapeake*, 75
U.S.S. *Monitor*, 154
U.S.S. *San Jacinto*, 153
Utah Territory, 133
utopian communities, 101

V

Vallandigham, Clement L., 156
Valley Forge, Battle of, 48–49
Van Buren, Martin, 96, 122, 131
Vesey, Denmark, 113
Vespucci, Amerigo, 14
vice-president, election of, 58
violence
  Bleeding Kansas, 139–140
  bread riots, 155
  draft riots, 154
  racial, 107
  Reconstruction, 166
  slave uprisings, 113
  in Southern life, 116
  urbanization and, 106–107
Virginia
  Articles of Confederation and, 53
  Bacon's Rebellion, 30
  colonization of, 18–20
  founding of, 17
  ratification of U.S. Constitution, 59
  state constitution, 52
  taxation in, 29
  taxation resistance in, 39–40
Virginia Company of London, 18, 20
Virginia Company of Plymouth, 18
Virginia Plan, 57
von Steuben, Baron, 50
voting
  electorate expansion, 1824, 90–91
  free blacks, 90, 162, 163
  required percentages, U.S. Constitution, 64
vulcanized rubber, 108

W

Wade-Davis Bill, 161
Walden (Thoreau), 101
Walker Tariff, 123
Wampanoags, 30
War Democrats, 159
war for independence. *See* Revolutionary War
War Hawks, 76
War of 1812, 75–78
  Battle of New Orleans, 77
  British strategy, 77
  Hartford Convention, 77–78
  in the Southwest, 77
  Treaty of Ghent, 77
War of Austrian Succession, 34
War of Jenkins' Ear, 34
War of the League of Augsburg, 34
War of the Spanish Succession, 34
Warren, Mercy Otis, 88
Washington, D.C., 71–72
Washington, George, 36, 46, 53
  administration of, 66–67
  as commander in Revolutionary War, 47–48, 51
  as president, 58, 59, 65
Washington Heights, Battle of, 48
water transportation, 84, 135
Wayne, Anthony, 68
Webster, Daniel, 77, 94, 95, 98, 120–121, 133
Webster, Noah, 88
Webster-Ashburton Treaty, 120–121
Webster-Hayne debate, 93–94
Weems, "Parson" Mason, 88
Welles, Gideon, 150
West
  in Civil War, 152
  Essex Junto, 74
  exploring, 1789–1824, 73
  free blacks in, 107
  Louisiana Purchase, 73
  population growth in, 105
  public school education in, 103
  Revolutionary War in, 50
  trans-Appalachian, Northwest Ordinance and, 54
  Yazoo claims, 74
westward expansion
  election of 1844 and, 122–123
  Louisiana and the fur trade, 117
  Manifest Destiny and, 89, 116–117, 119
  Mexican War, 127–129
  Mexico, beginnings of war with, 125–127
  Mormon migration, 124–125
  New Mexico and California, 118–119
  Oregon country, 117–118
  Oregon settlement, 123–124
  slavery and, 119
  Texas question/issue, 118, 121–122
  Tyler and the Whigs and, 119–120
  Webster-Ashburton Treaty, 120–121
Whigs

antislavery, 131
disintegration of, 136, 138
election of 1836, 96
election of 1840, 96–97
election of 1844, 122–123
election of 1848, 131
election of 1852, 134
Mexican War and, 127
party philosophy, 98
Tyler and, 119–120
violence of 1834, 106
western expansion and, 119–120
Whiskey Rebellion, 69
Whiskey Ring fraud, 167
White, John, 17–18
white Americans, Southern classes of, 111
Whitfield, George, 35
Whitman, Marcus, 123
Whitney, Eli, 85, 108
Wilderness, Battle of, 158
Wilderness Road, 54
Wilkes, Charles, 153
William of Orange, 31
Williams, Roger, 23–24
Wilmot, David, 130–131
Wilmot Proviso, 130–131, 132
Winthrop, John, 23, 24
witch trials, Salem, 31–32
women
education and, 103, 115
employment of, 107
in labor supply, early nineteenth century, 86
political activity of, 107
public education, early nineteenth century, 87
religious revivals and, 89
role of, nineteenth century, 107
role of, in South, 115
women's rights movement, 107
Worcester v. Georgia, 93
Wright, Frances, 101
Writs of Assistance, 38

X

XYZ Affair, 69

Y

Yancey, William L., 145
Yazoo land claims, 74
Yeoman farmers, 111, 144–145
Yorktown, Battle of, 51
Young, Brigham, 102, 124–125
"Young America," 134–135

Welcome to the REA Study Center for CLEP* History of the United States I

Our book and exclusive online tools pinpoint where you're strongest and where you need to focus–so you can pass the CLEP and get the college credits you deserve.

To unlock your online tools at the REA Study Center:

CLEP • History of the United States I
Question #76 is based on the following passage:
This map represents European powers in North America as of
A 1600.
B 1682.
C 1713.
D 1763.
E 1783.
English
French
Spanish
(D) This map represents European powers in North America after the French and Indian War (or Seven Years' War), 1754–63, transferred Canada from France to Great Britain.
Mark this question
CLEP

- Visit www.rea.com/studycenter
- Follow the on-screen instructions
- Enter the Access Code below, pay $1.99, and get your:
  - Diagnostic Test
  - 2 Full-Length Exams

$1.99 unlocks the CLEP online tools. Use access code 1912-SUU-8228
This access code may only be used by the original purchaser.

www.rea.com/studycenter